# Hello!
## BEYOND WORDS

By a group of supervisors

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان



FREE GIFT
NOT FOR SALE

English

1st PREP.
2025

FIRST TERM

الصف الأول الإعدادى
الفصل الدراسى الأول

# تطبيق GPS التفاعلى




التطبيق التفاعلى من سلسلة كتب ...

**الامتحان المعاصر**

**كيفية الاستخدام:** 1. نزل التطبيق. 2. أنشئ حسابك. 3. أدخل الكود الموجود على ظهر الغلاف.

**استمتع بجميع مزايا التطبيق**
لجميع المواد الدراسية

- شرح
- فيديوهات
- ألعاب تعليمية
- امتحانات تفاعلية
- تدريبات
- تواصل مع معلمك
- تقارير متابعة
- إشعارات
- أخبار

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

# تصنيف بلوم للمستويات المعرفية

المستويات العليا من التفكير

**إنتاج أفكار جديدة**
صمم - أنشئ - نمذج

**الحكم على المعلومات لاتخاذ القرارات**
صوّب الخطأ - قرّر - تحقق

**تجزئة الفكرة إلى عناصرها وتحديد العلاقات بينها**
برهن - استدل - حلل

المستويات الدنيا من التفكير

**استخدام المعلومات فى مواقف مشابهة جديدة**
أوجد - حل - احسب

**إدراك معنى المعلومات وشرحها**
قارن - استنتج - وضح بمثال

**استرجاع المعلومات السابق دراستها**
اذكر - عرّف - حدّد - عيّن




**ملاحظة:** تم تصنيف الأسئلة بداخل كل تمرين طبقًا لمستويات هرم بلوم والإشارة لها كالتالى:

● تذكر ● فهم ○ تطبيق ● حل مشكلات ( تحليل أو تقويم أو ابتكار )

# HOW TO USE THIS GUIDE ?






## 1 Vocabulary

• عرض للمفردات اللغوية.
• عرض شامل لنصوص القراءة والاستماع.
• تدريبات متنوعة على المفردات اللغوية.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان



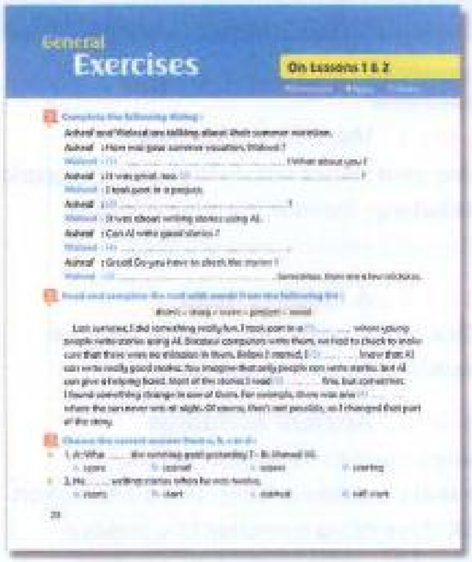

## 2 Language

عرض شامل للقواعد اللغوية مع أمثلة متنوعة عليها تساعدك على دراسة القواعد اللغوية، مع تدريبات متنوعة على القواعد اللغوية.




# 3 Main points on Reading & Listening texts

نقاط هامة تساعدك على فهم موضوعات القراءة والاستماع والتعامل مع كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية.




# 4 General Exercises

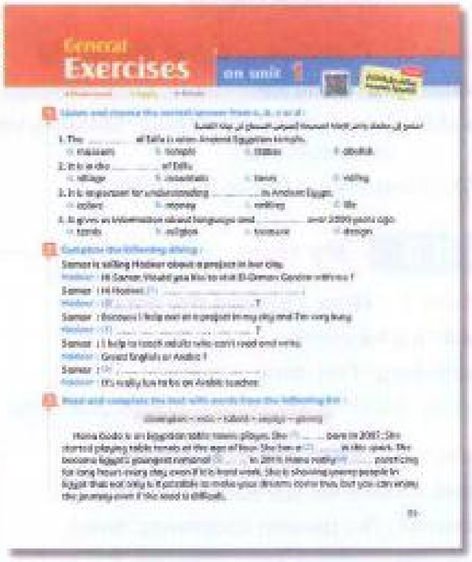
تدريبات على كل درسين.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان




# 5 Skills

- معالجة جديدة للتدرب على مهارة التحدث.
- معالجة جديدة للتدرب على كتابة الجمل للفقرة الإنشائية.
- إجابات كل الموضوعات الإنشائية فى نهاية الكتاب.




# 6 General Exercises on unit

تدريبات على الوحدة

# Scope and sequence

## Unit 1 A great summer

- **Lesson 1 : Vacation activities**
  - **A blog post :** What I did in the summer vacation
  - **Vocabulary :** Summer vacation activities
  
  Guessing the meaning of new words
- **Lesson 2 : A helping hand**
  - **Online forum posts :** My summer vacation
  - **Grammar :** The past simple tense
- **Lesson 3 : Ancient buildings**
  - **Dialog :** A visit to the temple of Edfu
  - **Life skill :** Problem-solving : using a flow chart
  - **TASK :** Presenting a solution to a problem
- **Lesson 4 : Summer well spent**
  - **Dialog :** How did you spend your summer ?
  - **Grammar :** Adverbs of frequency with the past simple
- **Lesson 5 : Literature :**
  - **Hana Goda** (biography)
  
  Predicting the topic of a text from visual clues
- **Lesson 6 : My new school**
  - **Email :** My new school
  
  Making your language informal in emails

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Unit 2 My network

- **Lesson 1 : My cousin's wedding**
  - **Social media post :** My friend's wedding
  - **Vocabulary :** Wedding celebrations
  
  Matching pictures to text
- **Lesson 2 : An email to a friend**
  - **Email :** Some family photos
  - **Grammar :** Determiners (my, your, her, his, its, their, our) and the possessive 's/s'
- **Lesson 3 : Families around the world**
  - **Profiles :** My family life
  - **Life skill :** Intercultural awareness : showing interest in other countries
  - **TASK :** Presenting a family life profile
- **Lesson 4 : Selling things online**
  - **Dialog :** How to sell something safely online
  - **Grammar :** Can and will for requests
- **Lesson 5 : Literature :**
  - **Friends Online** (short story)
  
  Matching speakers to what they say
- **Lesson 6 : Birthday celebrations**
  - **Social media post :** My brother's birthday
  
  Using Wh- questions to help generate ideas

## Unit 3 My time

- **Lesson 1 : How I spend my time**
  - **Email :** My free time
  - **Vocabulary :** Free-time activities
  
  Scanning a text for key words : nouns and verbs
- **Lesson 2 : What are you doing ?**
  - **Dialog :** Where we spend our free time
  - **Grammar :** The present continuous tense
- **Lesson 3 : Our school bazaar**
  - **Dialog :** Deciding what to sell at the school bazaar
  - **Life skill :** Collaboration : respecting others' opinions and input
  - **TASK :** Presenting an idea for a school bazaar
- **Lesson 4 : Giving advice Problem page**
  - **letter :** Advice to help a friend
  - **Grammar :** Subject and object pronouns
- **Lesson 5 : Literature :**
  - **An Unusual Hobby** (short story)
  
  Using key words to summarise a story
- **Lesson 6 : Shared interests**
  - **Forum post :** Finding friends with similar interests
  
  Using punctuation correctly

## Review A

## Unit 4 Digital life

- Lesson 1 : **Green technology**
  - **Infographic :** Inventions for a sustainable future
  - **Vocabulary :** Technology
  - Using visual clues to identify text type
- Lesson 2 : **A new app**
  - **Dialog :** A new app
  - **Grammar :** Imperatives
- Lesson 3 : **Online safety**
  - **Article :** Tips for staying safe online
  - **Life skill :** Digital literacy : staying safe online
  - **TASK :** Presenting ways to stay safe online
- Lesson 4 : **Science and technology**
  - **A talk :** The difference between science and technology
  - **Grammar :** The zero conditional
- Lesson 5 : **Literature :**
  - **Scammed !** (short story)
  - Finding specific information: numbers, dates, and times
- Lesson 6 : **Problem-solving tech**
  - **Blog post :** Solve it with tech!
  - Using features of a blog to organize your ideas

## Unit 5 In nature

- Lesson 1 : **Climate change**
  - **Article :** How climate change is affecting me
  - **Vocabulary :** Problems that climate change causes
  - Using punctuation correctly: capital letters
- Lesson 2 : **Water scarcity**
  - **Article :** Thirsty planet
  - **Grammar :** Comparatives & superlatives
- Lesson 3 : **Saving energy**
  - **Poster :** Tips to be more eco-friendly at home
  - **Life skill :** Collaboration: mind mapping ideas in a group
  - **TASK :** Designing a poster of tips for being eco-friendly
- Lesson 4 : **Geology**
  - **A talk :** Rock types
  - **Grammar :** Articles a, an, and the
- Lesson 5 : **Literature :**
  - **Helping the Earth** (poem)
  - Identifying the structure of a poem
- Lesson 6 : **Eco me!**
  - **Blog post :** Rami's eco blog
  - Using conjunctions and, but, and because

## Unit 6 Food for thought

- Lesson 1 : **Traditional food**
  - **Article :** Food on the go
  - **Vocabulary :** Traditional food
  - Finding information in different parts of a text
- Lesson 2 : **At a restaurant**
  - **Menu :** Nile View Café
  - **Grammar :** Wh- questions in the past simple
- Lesson 3 : **A new recipe**
  - **Life skill :** Personal development: using research to learn
  - **TASK :** Making a recipe card about a dish from another country
- Lesson 4 : **Celebration food**
  - **Descriptions :** Celebration food around the world
  - **Grammar :** Adverbials of time and place
- Lesson 5 : **Literature :**
  - **The Living Café** (short story)
  - Summarizing a story in your own words
- Lesson 6 : **My favorite food**
  - **Email :** My favorite food
  - Using paragraphs correctly

## Review B


Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

# Lessons Objectives

## Unit 1 A great summer

**Lesson 1 : Vacation activities**
- Read and understand a blog post about summer vacation activities
- Learn vocabulary for summer vacation activities
- Guess the meaning of new words

**Lesson 2 : A helping hand**
- Use the past simple tense
- Read and understand forum posts about summer vacation activities

**Lesson 3 : Ancient buildings**
- Learn about ancient buildings in Egypt
- Present a solution to a problem
- Problem solving : use a flow chart for solving problems

**Lesson 4 : Summer well spent**
- Use adverbs of frequency to talk about the past
- Read and understand a quiz about how you spent your summer

**Lesson 5 : Literature**
- Read and understand a short biographical story
- Predict the topic of a text from visual clues

**Lesson 6 : Writing**
- Use informal language in an email
- Write an informal email

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Unit 2 My network

**Lesson 1 : My cousin's wedding**
- Read and understand a social media post about a friend's wedding
- Learn vocabulary for wedding celebrations
- Match pictures to text

**Lesson 2 : An email to a friend**
- Use determiners and possessive 's / s'
- Read and understand an email to a friend about making arrangements

**Lesson 3 : Families around the world**
- Learn about family life around the world
- Present a family life profile
- Intercultural awareness: showing interest in other cultures

**Lesson 4 : Selling things online**
- Make and answer requests with can and will
- Listen to and understand a dialog about selling things online

**Lesson 5 : Literature**
- Read and understand a short story about an online friendship
- Match speakers to what they say

**Lesson 6 : Writing**
- Use Wh- questions to generate ideas
- Write a social media post to congratulate someone

## Unit 3 My time

**Lesson 1 : How I spend my time**
- Read and understand an email about ways to spend your free time
- Learn vocabulary for free-time activities
- Scan a text for key words: nouns and verbs

**Lesson 2 : What are you doing ?**
- Use the present continuous tense to talk about things that are happening now
- Listen to and understand people talking about activities that are happening now

**Lesson 3 : Our school bazaar**
- Learn about other ways to use your free time
- Collaboration: respect others' opinions and input
- Present an idea for a school bazaar

**Lesson 4 : Giving advice**
- Use subject and object pronouns
- Read and understand a letter to a problem page

**Lesson 5 : Literature**
- Read and understand a short story about an unusual hobby
- Use key words to summarize a story

**Lesson 6 : Writing**
- Write a forum post about a free-time activity
- Use punctuation correctly

## Unit 4 Digital life

**Lesson 1 : Green technology**
- Read and understand information about green technology
- Learn vocabulary for technology
- Use visual clues to identify a text type

**Lesson 2 : A new app**
- Use imperatives to give instructions
- Read and understand a conversation about a new app

**Lesson 3 : Staying safe online**
- Digital literacy: learn about ways to stay safe online
- Give a presentation about staying safe online

**Lesson 4 : Science and technology**
- Use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true
- Listen to and understand a talk about science and technology

**Lesson 5 : Literature**
- Read and understand a short story about a scam
- Find specific information: numbers, dates, and times

**Lesson 6 : Writing**
- Write a blog post about a problem-solving technology you use
- Use features of a blog to organize your ideas

## Unit 5 In nature

**Lesson 1 : Climate change**
- Read and understand a story about how climate change is affecting people
- Learn vocabulary for problems that climate change causes
- Use punctuation correctly: capital letters

**Lesson 2 : Water scarcity**
- Read and understand an article about water scarcity
- Use comparatives and superlatives

**Lesson 3 : Saving energy**
- Learn about ways to protect the environment
- Collaboration: mind map ideas as a group
- Design a poster of tips for being eco-friendly

**Lesson 4 : Geology**
- Listen to and understand a talk about geology
- Use articles a, an, and the

**Lesson 5 : Literature :**
- Read and understand a poem about helping the Earth
- Identify the structure of a poem

**Lesson 6 : Writing**
- Write a blog post about becoming more eco-friendly
- Use conjunctions and, but, and because

## Unit 6 Food for thought

**Lesson 1 : Traditional food**
- Read and understand an article about traditional food
- Learn vocabulary for traditional food
- Find information about traditional food in different parts of the world

**Lesson 2 : At a restaurant**
- Read and understand a menu and an email
- Use wh- questions in the past simple

**Lesson 3 : A new recipe**
- Research a recipe
- Personal development: use research to learn
- Make a recipe card

**Lesson 4 : Celebration food**
- Listen to and understand descriptions of celebration food
- Use adverbials of time and place

**Lesson 5 : Literature :**
- Read and understand a short story about a special café
- Summarize a story in your own words

**Lesson 6 : Writing**
- Write an email about your favorite food
- Use paragraphs correctly to organize ideas

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

EL-MOASSER

# Master Your Skills

## كراسة المعاصر لاتقان المهارات اللغوية




Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

### عزيزي المعلم / ولى الأمر / الطالب :

« نهدي إليك Master Your Skills »

أُعِدّت كراسة Master Your Skills خصيصًا بأحدث الأساليب التعليمية و الطرق التربوية الحديثة حتى تمكن الطالب من إتقان المهارات اللغوية (التحدث - القراءة - الكتابة) واتقان المفردات اللغوية.

**الهدف** : المساعدة على إتقان المهارات والمفردات و التراكيب اللغوية.

**كيفية الاستخدام** : تستخدم بالتوازى مع كتاب الشرح كالآتى:

١. تستخدم المهارات اللغوية بالتوازى مع الوحدات داخل كتاب الشرح.

٢. يوميًا: عن طريق إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميع، طبقا لدروس الوحدة).

٣. شهريًا: عن طريق إتقان المفردات اللغوية ( التسميع، للوحدات بطريقة تراكمية).

# Contents

## Module 1 All about me


Unit 1 A great summer ........ 13

Unit 2 My network ........ 61

Unit 3 My time ........ 110

Review A ........ 157



Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان


## Module 2 All around me


Unit 4 Digital life ........ 160

Unit 5 In nature ........ 207

Unit 6 Food for thought ........ 254

Review B ........ 302

Monthly assessments ........ 303

- General Exercises ........ 305
- Listening Texts ........ 307
- Answers of Topics ........ 308


علامة SB تشير إلى تدريبات كتاب المدرسة



# الآن

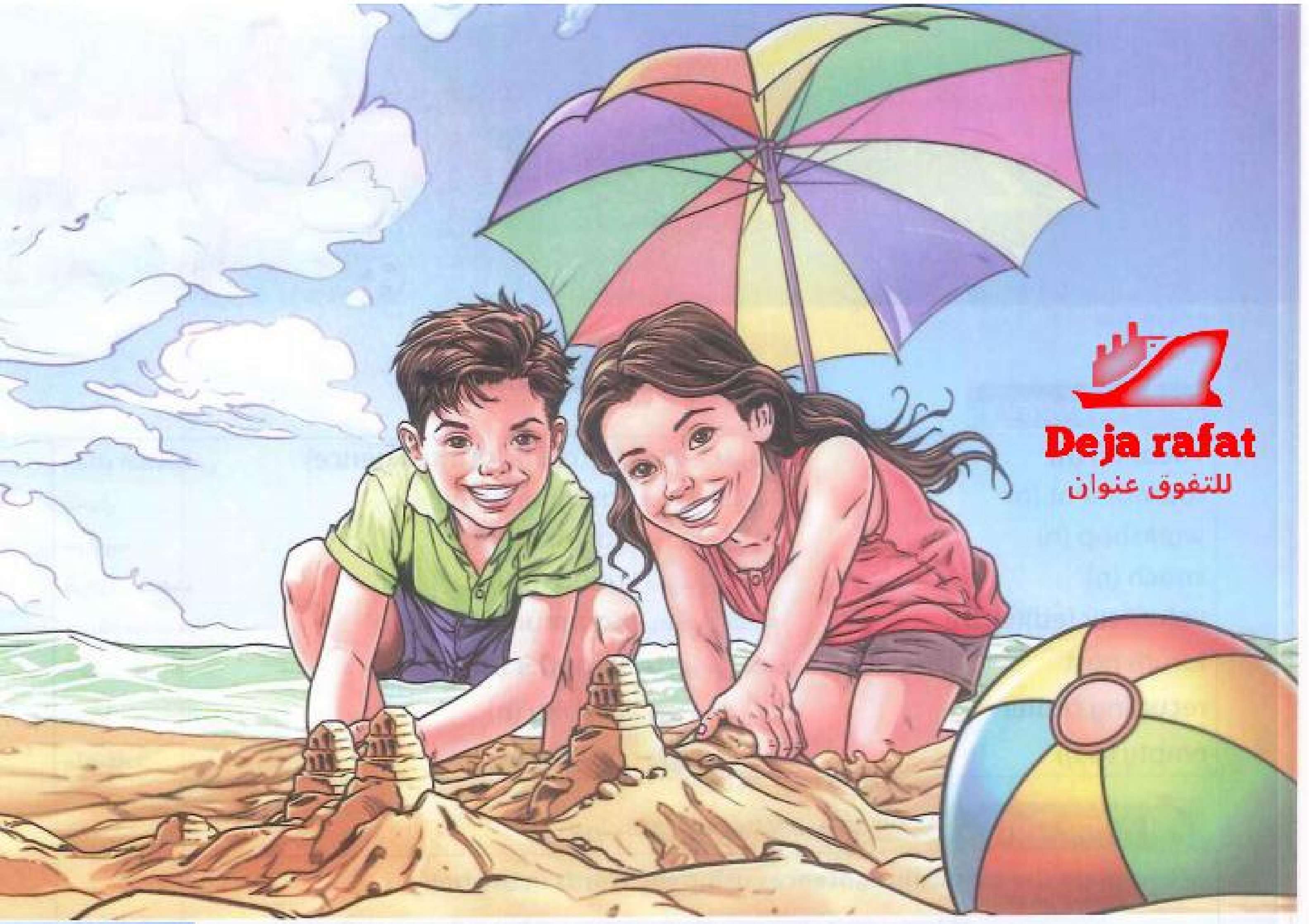
## يمكنك الاستماع إلى الكلمات وتعلـم نطقهـا من خـلال :

# QR Code




- تعلم نطق الكلمات مع قاموس المعاصر الناطـق للمفـردات اللغويـة الخاصـة بالمنهـج


Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان



Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

# UNIT ONE

# A great summer

SB pages 4 : 15

**Unit Objectives :**

- **Reading** : A blog post about summer vacation activities; Forum posts about summer vacation activities; A quiz about how you spend your summer; Hana Goda: a biography
- **Writing** : An informal email to a friend
- **Listening** : Understand conversations about summer activities
- **Speaking** : Play a guessing game about summer vacation activities; Ask and answer questions about how often you did something
- **Language** : The past simple tense; Adverbs of frequency with the past simple tense

تنويه ◄ اهداف الدروس "Lessons objectives" فى مقدمة الكتاب.

Lessons **1 & 2**

- Vacation activities
- A helping hand

SB pages 4 - 7



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| vacation (n) | عُطلة - اجازة | AI (artificial intelligence) | الذكاء الاصطناعى |
| tournament (n) | بطولة - دورى | imagine (d) (v) | يتخيل |
| workshop (n) | ورشة عمل | talented (adj) | موهوب |
| coach (n) | مُدرب رياضى | tiring (adj) | مُرهِق - مُتعِب |
| volunteer (ed)(v), (n) | يتطوع / متطوع | community garden | حديقة مجتمعية |
| forum post | منشور فى منتدى | wrapper (n) | غُلاف |
| recycling center | مركز إعادة تدوير | activity (n) | نشاط |
| empty (adj) | فارغ | posters (n) | ملصقات |

**Pop Quiz** تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

tiring – coach – tournament – workshop – vacations

1. We can do many activities in summer .................. .
2. My dad works in a .................. near our house.
3. It's .................. to stay up too late every night.
4. Our team took part in a football .................. last year.

## Lesson 1 SB pages 4 & 5

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| parents (n) | الوالدين | goals (n) | أهداف |
| grandparents (n) | الأجداد | mention (ed) (v) | يَذْكُر - يشير إلى |
| software (n) | برامج حاسوب - برمجيات | blog post | منشور مدونة |
| score (d) (v) | يحرز - يسجل | join (ed) (v) | ينضم إلى |
| nervous (adj) | عصبى - متوتر | neighbors (n) | جيران |
| safe (adj) | آمن | football club | نادى كرة قدم |
| kick (ed)(v) | يركل - يشوط | excited (adj) | متحمس |
| adult (adj), (n) | راشد - بالغ | famous (adj) | مشهور |
| local (adj) | محلى | area (n) | منطقة - مساحة |

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Lesson 2

SB pages 6 & 7

| Word | Meaning | Word | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| notice (d) (v) | يلاحظ | litter (n) | قمامة |
| cans (n) | علب من المعدن | positive (adj) | إيجابى |
| meeting (n) | لقاء - اجتماع | surprised (adj) | مندهش |
| member (n) | عضو فى فريق | repeat (ed) (v) | يكرر |
| young people (n) | الشباب | alphabet (n) | الحروف الأبجدية |
| solve (d) (v) | يحل | especially (adv) | خاصةً - على وجه الخصوص |
| project (n) | مشروع | check (ed) (v) | يختبر - يفحص |
| leader (n) | قائد | chocolate bar | قالب شيكولاتة |
| collect (ed) (v) | يجمع | new (adj) | جديد |

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| teach | يُدرس - يُعلم | taught | taught |
| say | يقول | said | said |
| win | يفوز | won | won |
| set | تغرب (الشمس) | set | set |
| understand | يفهم | understood | understood |
| grow | ينمو - يتزايد | grew | grown |
| leave | يغادر | left | left |
| read | يقرأ | read | read |
| write | يكتب | wrote | written |

## Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| Verb | Collocation | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| win | a tournament | يفوز ببطولة |
| have | fun | يمرح - يستمتع |
| have | a better life | يحصل على حياة أفضل |
| score | goals | يحرز أهداف |
| make | a mistake | يُخطىء |
| make | changes | يقوم بإحداث تغييرات |
| make | a poster | يصمم ملصق |

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Vocabulary Study

### ▸ Synonyms and Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| win | يفوز | achieve | lose | يخسر |
| start | يبدأ | begin | finish / end | ينهي |
| safe | آمن | protected | dangerous | خطير |
| strange | غريب | unusual | normal - usual<br>common | عادي<br>شائع - مألوف |
| possible | محتمل/ممكن | likely / probable | impossible | مستحيل |

### ▸ Prefixes & Suffixes
مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| –er | تكوّن الاسم من الفعل | player<br>leader<br>teacher | لاعب<br>قائد<br>مُعلم - مُعلمة |
| –ation | تكوّن الاسم من الفعل | preparation | تجهيز - استعداد |
| –ed | تكون الصفة من الاسم أو الفعل | talented<br>surprised | موهوب<br>مندهش - متفاجئ |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. We add the suffix "............" to form the noun of the verb "lead".
   a. –ed  b. –er  c. –ly  d. –ment
2. The suffix "............" changes the word "talent" into an adjective.
   a. –or  b. –ous  c. –ed  d. –ing
3. The opposite of the word "safe" is "............" .
   a. amazing  b. tiring  c. modern  d. dangerous
4. The synonym of the word "strange" is "............" .
   a. normal  b. unusual  c. common  d. usual

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 quite - quiet

* quiet = calm (adj) — تستخدم كصفة بمعنى (هادئ)
  - SB Our street is **quiet** and very safe.
* quite (adv) + (adj) — تستخدم بمعنى إلى حد ما ويأتى بعدها (صفة)
  - She is **quite** good at tennis.

*Reading on lesson 1 SB page 5*

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

### 2 tiring - tired

* tiring (adj) — مُتعب - مُرهِق (توصف الأشياء والمواقف)
  - His work is so **tiring**.
* tired (adj) — مُتعَب - مُرهَق (توصف الأشخاص)
  - He works for a long time, so he feels **tired**.

### 3 instead - instead of

* instead — بدلًا من ذلك (تأتى فى نهاية الجملة الثانية)
  - He didn't use his car, he used his father's **instead**.
* instead of + (n) / (v + ing) — بدلًا من + (اسم) / فعل مضاف له (ing-)
  - SB It was fun to be a teacher **instead of** a student.
  - **Instead of** doing his homework, he went to bed.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 6*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | Prepositions حروف الجر | |
|---|---|---|---|
| write stories | يؤلف قصص | clean up | ينظف |
| for a while | لبعض الوقت | at first | فى البداية |
| tried my best | بذلت قصارى جهدى | decide to + (inf.) | يقرر أن |
| join the team | ينضم إلى فريق | for the next six weeks | لمدة ستة أسابيع مقبلة |
| take part in | يشارك فى | at the end of | فى نهاية |
| help out | يقدم مساعدة | wait for | ينتظر (شخص - شيء) |
| collect litter | يجمع القمامة | pick up litter from ... | يجمع القمامة من ... |
| give a helping hand | يمد يد المعاونة / يساعد | at night | ليلًا |
| make sure | يتأكد | give up + (inf. + ing) | يقلع عن / يستسلم |
| learn something new | يتعلم شئ جديد | over the vacation | أثناء / خلال الإجازة |
| really fun | ممتع للغاية | part of | جزء من |
| an amazing end | نهاية رائعة | | |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 1 SB page 5

### Omar's vacation

1. Omar's summer vacation was great.
2. Omar played with his **neighbors**[1] and had fun.
3. Omar went to a football club and played in a football team.
4. The **coach**[2] told Omar that he was **talented**[3].
5. For the next six weeks, Omar played with his neighbors in the morning and then with the team in the afternoon.
6. At the end of the summer, Omar's team took part in a tournament.
7. Omar scored three goals and his team won the tournament.

## Lesson 2 SB page 6

### a Starting a local group to collect litter

1. Elsa noticed too many empty cans and chocolate bar **wrappers**[4] on the streets.
2. She wanted to start a group to **collect litter**[5].
3. She made posters to ask young people to join the group.
4. They picked up litter and put it in the bags.
5. They took the bags to the recycling center.

### b Writing stories using AI

1. Last summer, Leon took part in a writing project.
2. The project used AI to **write stories**[6].
3. AI can give a helping hand in writing stories.
4. Because computers write stories, we had to check to make sure that there were no mistakes.
5. Leon found something strange in some stories.
6. He had to **change**[7] part of the story because it was impossible.

### c Teaching adults to read and write Arabic

1. Gameela started helping out at a project to help **adults**[8] to read and write Arabic.
2. She said the sound of each letter and Mrs Azza, her partner, **repeated**[9].
3. It was fun to be a teacher instead of a student.
4. It was great to help Mrs Azza learn something new.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) جيران | (2) مدرب | (3) موهوب |
| (4) أغلفة | (5) يجمع قمامة | (6) يكتب قصص |
| (7) يغير | (8) راشد | (9) كرر |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* How to help your community
* Helping others
* Spending the summer vacation

# II Skills

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

## 1. Reading and Listening

### Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 5

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

Hi, I'm Omar! This summer was **great**[1]. I played football every day! At first, I played with some of my **neighbors**[2] in the street. Our street is quiet and very safe. We had a lot of fun and we liked to **imagine**[3] that we were famous football players! Then, a new boy joined in. He told me about a football club in our area.



One **afternoon**[4], I decided to go to the club. There were lots of boys playing in two teams and I watched them **for a while**[5]. Then, the **coach**[6] saw me and asked if I played football, too. "Do you want to try playing with the team ?" he asked.

Of course, I did! The coach watched me kick the ball and said I was a **talented**[7] football player. He asked me to join the team.

For the next six weeks, I played with my neighbors in the morning and then with the team at the football club in the afternoon. It was very **tiring**[8], but really fun! At the end of the summer, we took part in a **tournament**[9]. I was **nervous**[10] about it, but excited. I tried my best and scored three goals! Our team won the tournament. It was an amazing end to the summer!

**Answer the following questions.**

- Giving the main idea. إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية.

Learn 1. Give a suitable title for the passage.
- Omar's summer vacation activities.

- Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات.

Practice 2. What did the coach ask Omar to do?

.............................................................................................

(1) عظيم | (2) جيران | (3) يتخيل | (4) وقت الظهيرة | (5) لبعض الوقت | (6) مُدرب رياضي | (7) موهوب | (8) مُرهِق - مُتعِب | (9) بطولة - دورى | (10) متوتر

on Lesson 2 SB page 6

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

**Tell us about your summer vacation[1] and post your photos!**



### Starting a local group to collect litter

a I noticed that there were too many empty cans and chocolate bar **wrappers**[2] on the streets in our city. Last summer, I decided to do something about it. I didn't want to wait for the **adults**[3] to clean up our streets. I made some posters to ask **young people**[4] to join my group. Four people came to our first meeting. We **picked up**[5] litter from one part of the city, put it in bags, and took it to the **recycling center**[6]. The week after that, eight people came and then after that there were twelve of us. The group grew and grew over the vacation and now it has twenty-four members.

**Elsa, Salzburg, Austria**



### Writing stories using AI

b Last summer, I did something really fun. I **took part in**[7] a project where young people write stories using AI. Because computers write them, we had to check to **make sure**[8] that there were no mistakes in them. Before I started, I didn't know that AI can write really good stories. You **imagine**[9] that only people can write stories, but AI can **give a helping hand.**[10] I was surprised ! Most of the stories I read were fine, but sometimes I found something **strange**[11] in them. For example, there was one story where the sun never **sets**[12]. Of course, that's not possible, so I **changed**[13] that part of the story.

**Leon, Manchester, UK**

**Answer the following questions.**

- Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات.

Learn 1. What did Elsa find on the streets ?

*- She found empty cans and chocolate bar wrappers.*

Practice 2. How many members are there in the group now ?

....................................................................................

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

| (1) العطلة الصيفية | (2) أغلفة | (3) البالغين | (4) الشباب | (5) يجمع | (6) مركز إعادة التدوير | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| (7) يشارك في | (8) يتأكد | (9) يتخيل | (10) يمد يد العون | (11) غريب | (12) تغرب | (13) قام بتغيير |



### Teaching adults to read and write Arabic

C

Two months ago, I started **helping out at**[14] a project in my city. In this project, young people like me help adults who can't read and write Arabic. My **partner**[15] was Mrs Azza and she was very nice. First, we looked at the **alphabet**[16] together. I said the sound for each letter and Mrs Azza **repeated**[17] it. Sometimes, she nearly **gave up**[18], but then I said things like: "You're doing really well! Don't stop now." It was fun to be a teacher **instead of**[19] a student, especially when I asked her: "Did you do your homework this week?", or "What did you learn yesterday?" It was great to help Mrs Azza **learn something new**[20].

**Gameela, Luxor, Egypt**

(14) يساعد في | (15) شريك - زميل | (16) الحروف الأبجدية | (17) يكرر | (18) يستسلم | (19) بدلًا من | (20) يتعلم شيئًا جديدًا

## 2. Skills

المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات (ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية)

### Guessing the meaning of new words :

تخمين (استنباط) المعاني للكلمات الجديدة :

**1 Learn**

- When you find a new word, ...

عندما تجد كلمة جديدة ...

**First**, try to understand what type of word it is.

أولًا : حاول أن تتعرف على نوع الكلمة.

* **a noun** : Before a noun, we usually find an article (a / an / the).
  - **a** tournament
  - **the** game
* **An adjective** : describes a person or a thing.
  - **talented** football player
  - **new** friends
* **A verb** : describes an action.
  - I **played** football.
  - I **joined** the team.
* **Adverb** : describes a verb (an action).
  - You're doing **well**.
  - He did his homework **lazily**.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

**Second**, the meaning of the other words in the sentence can help you find the meaning of the new word.

ثانيًا : ستساعدك معاني الكلمات الأخرى في الجملة على استنباط معاني الكلمات الجديدة.

## 2 Practice on Reading (Lesson 1 SB page 5)

• **Read and decide the type of the underlined words verb (v), noun (n), or adjective (adj) :**

1. I decided to go to the club. (decided ...V...) / (club ...N...)
2. The coach watched me kick the ball. (coach ............) / (kick ............)
3. I was a talented football player. (talented ............) / (player ............)

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

▸ **Key vocabulary**

1. Can you ............ how life in space is ?
 a. make b. join c. imagine d. score
2. The ............ trained the football team well before the final match.
 a. reader b. coach c. partner d. neighbor
3. He is a ............ basketball player. He always wins and scores many goals.
 a. lazy b. talented c. tired d. slow
4. We have a lot of free time for activities on our ............ .
 a. work b. sound c. vacation d. lessons
5. I use a colorful ............ to wrap the present for my mom's birthday.
 a. project b. wrapper c. story d. player

**SB Exercises**

6. SB How many goals did Omar ............ in the tournament ?
 a. decide b. run c. walk d. score
7. SB I had to ............ my writing to make sure that there were no mistakes.
 a. imagine b. give up c. check d. kick
8. SB Elsa noticed problems and made changes to ............ them.
 a. start b. solve c. take d. grow

**El-Moasser Exercises**

9. The doctor's job is ............ , but it is very important for the community.
 a. tiring b. bad c. strange d. nervous
10. You should use a strong password to stay ............ online.
 a. free b. busy c. safe d. clean

11. Who is the funniest ............ in your family ? – My younger brother.
    a. member  b. surprise  c. workshop  d. poster
12. My favorite ............ on the vacation is to volunteer at a community garden.
    a. club  b. activity  c. tournament  d. software
13. We should say ............ things to help and support people to continue working.
    a. positive  b. negative  c. bad  d. unkind

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

### ▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Don't give ............ , you're doing a great job !
    a. up  b. out  c. at  d. down
15. We're happy to ............ part in this interesting school project.
    a. go  b. talk  c. take  d. come
16. Ahmed didn't drink coffee. He drank juice ............ .
    a. too  b. instead of  c. instead  d. also

## 3. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ▸ Asking and answering questions about summer vacation activities :

السؤال عن أنشطة العطلة الصيفية والإجابة عليها :

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| - Which activities do you do in the summer vacation ?<br>- أى الأنشطة التى تقوم بها فى العطلة الصيفية ؟ | - I play in tournaments and I help out at my family's workshop.<br>- أشارك فى بطولات رياضية وأقدم المساعدة فى ورشة العمل الخاصة بعائلتى. |
| - Which activities would you like to do ?<br>- أى الأنشطة تود القيام بها ؟ | - I'd like to volunteer at a community garden to help other people make their local area better.<br>- أود التطوع في حديقة مجتمعية لمساعدة الآخرين أن يجعلوا منطقتهم المحلية أفضل. |
| - What did you do in the summer vacation ?<br>- ماذا فعلت فى اجازة الصيف ؟ | - I helped my grandma in her garden. We planted lots of flowers.<br>- ساعدت جدتى فى الحديقة الخاصة بها وقمنا بزراعة الكثير من الأزهار. |

# III Language

## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

### Formation التكوين

### 1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

**A Regular verbs :** : الأفعال المنتظمة

Subject الفاعل + inf. + d / ed / ied + ........ .

• **لاحظ** : قواعد إضافة **(d/ ed/ ied)** للفعل المنتظم فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

| الفعل المنتهى بـ | يضاف له | Example مثـــال |
|---|---|---|
| e [بعض الأفعال] | + d | invite → invited |
| y + [حرف متحرك] | + ed | stay → stayed |
| y + [حرف ساكن] | + ied | carry → carried |
| [حرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك] | ed + يضاعف الحرف الأخير | stop → stopped<br>drop → dropped |
| بعض الأفعال لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير بها | | open → opened |

**ex.** - Last summer, I decided to do something to help my city.

**B Irregular verbs :** : الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل + ............... .

هناك أفعال غير منتظمة لا تتبع القاعدة السابقة ؛ تحفظ كما هى مثل :

| الفعل | الماضى | الفعل | الماضى |
|---|---|---|---|
| cut | cut | put | put |
| eat | ate | drink | drank |

**ex.** - We bought a new car last month.

**C V. [to be] in the past :** : فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى

• **لاحظ الآتى** : يتم استخدام **(verb to be)** فى زمن الماضى كالآتى.

I / He / She / It / [فاعل مفرد] → was / wasn't
We / They / You / [فاعل جمع] → were / weren't

**ex.** - My partner was Mrs Azza and she was very nice.
- They weren't in the same class last year.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## 2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

• لاحظ فى حالة النفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

**Subject فاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر ..............**

ex. - Yesterday, I didn't want to leave the garden.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## 3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

### A Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل» :

فى صيغة الاستفهام باستخدام «هل» نستخدم الصيغة التالية :

**Did + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر .............. ?**

ex. - Did you take part in a tournament last week ?

- Yes, I did. - No, I didn't.

### B Wh- question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

أما فى حالة الاستفهام باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية :

**Question word كلمة الاستفهام + did + subject فاعل + inf. المصدر ?**

ex. - What did you do yesterday ? - I visited my uncle yesterday.

**We often use these time phrases with the past simple.**

غالبًا ما نستخدم هذه العبارات الزمنية مع زمن الماضى البسيط.

**Time phrases العبارات الزمنية الدالة على زمن الماضى البسيط**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| • in the past في الماضي | • once / one day ذات مرة | last | year السنة الماضية |
| • مدة محددة + ago منذ | • when I was (young)/(little) عندما كنت صغير السن. | last | month الشهر الماضي |
| • yesterday أمس | | last | week الأسبوع الماضي |
| • in + سنة ماضية (2000) | | last | (Tuesday) الثلاثاء الماضي |

ex. - Three months ago, I started helping out at my father's workshop.

**Usage الاستخدام**

**We use the past simple to talk about actions that started and ended in the past.**

نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للحديث عن أحداث بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى.

ex. - She went to school two hours ago.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB Elsa ........... the leader of a group that got bigger over the summer.
   a. did b. are c. were d. was
2. SB What ........... you do last summer ?
   a. have b. were c. did d. was
3. SB Two months ........... , I started helping out at my community.
   a. next b. ago c. last d. for
4. SB Did you ........... your homework last night ?
   a. did b. doing c. does d. do
5. SB My dad made toys and I ........... him.
   a. helps b. helped c. helping d. help
6. SB The coach said I ........... a talented football player.
   a. were b. could c. was d. did

El-Moasser Exercises

7. Who ........... this delicious apple pie last night ? I liked it.
   a. made b. making c. make d. is making
8. All the streets ........... busy yesterday after the match.
   a. could b. had c. are d. were
9. He ........... to the club, but he didn't play football.
   a. going b. go c. went d. goes
10. She ........... win the game although she trained hard.
    a. don't b. isn't c. wasn't d. didn't

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. SB Last summer was great! I ........... (**play**) football every day.
2. SB What did you ........... (**learning**) at school this week ?
3. SB I ........... (**help**) my grandma in her garden last Friday.
4. SB I didn't ........... (**wanted**) to wait for the adults to clean up our streets.

El-Moasser Exercises

5. There ………… (be) twelve of us who cleaned up our street last week.
6. I ………… (score) two goals in the last match.
7. ………… (Do) you like volunteering ? - Yes, I did.
8. When did you ………… (joins) the sports club ?
9. They ………… (doesn't) give up, so they won the tournament.
10. ………… (Did) they ready for the exam ?

### 3. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences :

1. yesterday – visited – museum – I – the.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

2. go – Where – you – last – weekend – did ?

…………………………………………………………………………………………

3. about – he – make – a poster – Did – activities - his ?

…………………………………………………………………………………………

4. They – win – tournament – didn't – the.

…………………………………………………………………………………………

Master
your skills
يهدف إلى تنمية
مهـــــارات
اللغة الإنجليزية

EL-MOASSER
Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

# General Exercises

**On Lessons 1 & 2**

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

## 1 Complete the following dialog :

**Ashraf and Waleed are talking about their summer vacation.**

Ashraf : How was your summer vacation, Waleed ?

Waleed : (1) .................................................................. ! What about you ?

Ashraf : It was great, too. (2) .................................................................. ?

Waleed : I took part in a project.

Ashraf : (3) .................................................................. ?

Waleed : It was about writing stories using AI.

Ashraf : Can AI write good stories ?

Waleed : (4) .................................................................. .

Ashraf : Great! Do you have to check the stories ?

Waleed : (5) .................................................................. . Sometimes, there are a few mistakes.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

didn't – story – were – project – meal

Last summer, I did something really fun. I took part in a (1) .................. where young people write stories using AI. Because computers write them, we had to check to make sure that there were no mistakes in them. Before I started, I (2) .................. know that AI can write really good stories. You imagine that only people can write stories, but AI can give a helping hand. Most of the stories I read (3) .................. fine, but sometimes I found something strange in one of them. For example, there was one (4) .................. where the sun never sets at night. Of course, that's not possible, so I changed that part of the story.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. **A:** Who .......... the winning goal yesterday ? - **B:** Ahmed Ali.
   a. score b. scored c. scores d. scoring
2. He .......... writing stories when he was twelve.
   a. starts b. start c. started d. will start

3. Ali is our ........... , he lives in house number 9 in our street.
   a. neighbor b. parent c. team d. father
4. We pick up the ........... and took it to the recycling center.
   a. tree b. litter c. plant d. flower
5. I feel ........... when I have a math test. It's very worrying.
   a. safe b. nervous c. relaxed d. calm
6. Students should do useful ........... in their free time.
   a. problems b. sounds c. vacations d. activities
7. It is not ........... to cut the watermelon without a knife.
   a. possible b. bright c. strange d. ready
8. Can you ........... your younger brother how to read English ?
   a. imagine b. teach c. win d. score
9. He ........... go to the beach last summer.
   a. didn't b. wasn't c. doesn't d. isn't
10. Eight teams joined the sports ........... .
   a. test b. book c. goal d. tournament

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Did you notice that there ........... (is) a new student in the class ?
2. We ........... (**not watch**) the news yesterday.
3. When ........... (**does**) you get up this morning ?
4. A lot of people ........... (**come**) to help clean up the beach last week.

## 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*"Summer vacation activities"*

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

.................................................................................................

Lessons **3 & 4**

- Ancient buildings
- Summer well spent

SB pages 8 - 11



Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| temple (n) | معبد | tourists (n) | سائحين |
| obelisk (n) | مسلّة | statue (n) | تمثال |
| monument (n) | نصب تذكاري - أثر | catacombs (n) | سراديب الموتى |
| religion (n) | دين | bank (n) | ضفة نهر |
| repairs (n) | إصلاحات | walls (n) | جدران - أسوار |
| tunnel (n) | نفق | solution (n) | حل |
| helpful (adj) | متعاون | smart (adj) | ذكي |
| active (adj) | نشيط | friendly (adj) | ودود |
| lazy (adj) | كسول | | |

### Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي بهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

smart – helpful – wall – religion – statues

1. There are many .................. of people and animals in the museum.
2. My friend is very .................. . He helps me a lot.
3. There are two posters on the .................. .
4. He is a .................. student. We all like him.

### Lesson 3 SB pages 8 & 9

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| model (n) | نموذج | effect (n) | تأثير |
| care (n) | عناية - إهتمام | wind (n) | رياح |
| language (n) | لغة | shape (n) | شكل |
| underground (adj) | تحت سطح الأرض | weather (n) | الطقس |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| the dead (n) | الموتى | choice (n) | اختيار |
| whole (adj) | كامل | reason (n) | سبب |
| pyramid (n) | هرم | special (adj) | مميز - خاص |
| burying (n) | الدفن | stone (n) | حجر |
| steps (n) | خطوات | present (ed) (v) | يقدم |
| building (n) | مبنى | unfortunately (adv) | للأسف - لسوء الحظ |
| pray (ed) (v) | يصلي | pity (n) | شفقة - آسف |

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Lesson 4

SB pages 10 & 11

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| local (adj) | محلي | technology (n) | تكنولوجيا |
| edit (ed) (v) | يعدل | stay (ed) (v), (n) | يبقى - إقامة |
| floor (n) | أرضية | definitely (adv) | بالتأكيد |
| online (adv),(adj) | عبر الإنترنت - متصل بالإنترنت | tired (adj) | مُتعَب |

## Places

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| temple of Edfu | معبد إدفو | the River Nile | نهر النيل |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| give | يعطي | gave | given |
| come | يأتي | came | come |
| spend | يقضي | spent | spent |

## Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **statue** | a model of a person, animal, or object , sometimes made of stone | تمثال |
| **obelisk** | a tall stone monument with a top that is usually in the shape of a pyramid | مسلّة |
| **catacombs** | underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead | سراديب الموتى |
| **temple** | a place where people come together to pray | معبد |

## Vocabulary Study

### Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ancient | قديم | old | new / modern | جديد - حديث |
| active | نشيط | energetic | lazy | كسول |
| useful | مفيد | helpful / effective | useless | عديم الفائدة |
| interesting | ممتع / شيق | amazing / lovely | boring | ممل |
| friendly | ودود | kind | unfriendly | غير ودود |

### Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| –ful | تحويل الفعل إلى صفة | helpful | متعاون |
| –ing | تحويل الفعل إلى اسم | building | مبنى |

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The antonym of "useful" is "..........." .
   a. lazy  b. helpless  c. beneficial  d. useless
2. The word "..........." has the same meaning of "energetic".
   a. active  b. lazy  c. friendly  d. inactive
3. The synonym of "ancient" is "..........." .
   a. soft  b. old  c. modern  d. hard
4. "Boring" is the antonym of "..........." .
   a. bright  b. ugly  c. interesting  d. small
5. The suffix "..........." changes the verb "help" into an adjective.
   a. –ful  b. –ly  c. –ness  d. –ment

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

**1 bank (n)** بنك / ضفة نهر

- My uncle works in a **bank**.
- Edfu is on the west **bank** of the Nile.

*Reading on lesson 3 SB page 8*

**2 smart**

* **smart = intelligent** ذكي
  - Rahma is **smart**. She always solves any problem.
* **smart = well dressed** أنيق
  - Bassem is **smart**. He is wearing fashionable clothes.

*(SB Page 10)*

**3 repair (v/n)**

* **repair (v)** يصلح
  - The mechanic **repaired** my car last week.
* **repairs (n)** إصلاحات
  - I need some **repairs** in my apartment.

*(SB Page 9)*

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cut (something) away | يقطع / يفتت | do sports | يمارس الرياضة |
| solve a problem | يحل مشكلة | go online | يتصل بالإنترنت |
| give reasons for | يعطى مبررات لـ | present a solution | يقدم حل |
| get together | يتقابل | make videos | يصور مقطع فيديو |
| That sounds useful / good | يبدو مفيد / جيد | give it a try myself | أجربها بنفسي |
| That's a shame. | يا للأسف. | what life was like | كيف كانت الحياة |
| That's a pity. | هذا مؤسف. | | |

| Prepositions حروف الجر | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| made of | مصنوع من | in winter | فى فصل الشتاء |
| lots of = a lot of | كثيرًا من | at the top | فى القمة |
| walk around | يتجول | at the bottom | فى القاع |
| on the west bank of ... | فى الضفة الغربية من ... | a model of | نموذج لـ |
| on walls | على الجدران | get to | يصل إلى |
| bad for | سيء لـ - ضار لـ | work on | يعمل على |
| at the end of the day | فى نهاية اليوم | at the same time | فى نفس الوقت |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 3 SB page 8

### Mariam's visit to the temple of Edfu

1. Mariam visited her aunt and uncle in Edfu.
2. The temple of Edfu tells us a lot about what life was like in Ancient Egypt.
3. Unfortunately, there are some problems at the temple of Edfu.
4. The **weather**[1] in Egypt is bad for the stone walls.
5. The wind and sand slowly **cut the stone away**[2].
6. **Volunteers**[3] work on the buildings.
7. There isn't enough time or people to stop these bad **effects**[4] on all the buildings at the same time.
8. The buildings are old, so they need lots of **care**[5] and repairs.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) الطقس | (2) يفتت الأحجار | (3) متطوعين |
| (4) تأثيرات | (5) عناية | |

## Lesson 3 SB page 8

### The temple of Edfu

1. The temple of Edfu is an Ancient Egyptian temple in the **town**[1] of Edfu.
2. Edfu is located on the west **bank**[2] of the River Nile.
3. The temple is between Luxor and Aswan.
4. It is important for **understanding**[3] life in Ancient Egypt.
5. **The writing**[4] on its walls gives us useful **information**[5].
6. In the temple, we can know about **language**[6] and **religion**[7] over 2,000 years ago.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (1) مدينة | (2) ضفة | (3) فهم | (4) الكتابة |
| (5) معلومات | (6) لغة | (7) دين | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Protecting ancient buildings
* A visit to a historic place
* The importance of ancient buildings in Egypt
* The temple of Edfu

# II Skills

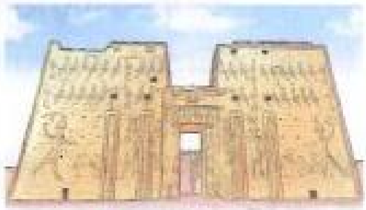
## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 8

**The temple of Edfu**



The temple of Edfu is an Ancient Egyptian temple in the **town**[1] of Edfu. The town is on the west bank of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan. The temple is about 2,250 years old. It is important for **understanding**[2] life in Ancient Egypt because the writing on its **walls**[3] gives us very interesting and useful information about **language**[4] and religion over 2,000 years ago.

(1) مدينة | (2) فهم | (3) جدران | (4) لغة

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

### Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 8

**Mariam's visit to the temple of Edfu in summer vacation.**

**Hadaya :** What did you do in the summer holiday, Mariam ?

**Mariam :** I visited my aunt and uncle in Edfu. It's near to Aswan and there's a beautiful **temple**[1] there.

**Hadaya :** Oh, yeah. It's an ancient temple, isn't it ?

**Mariam :** Yes, and it tells us a lot about what life was like in Ancient Egypt, so it's a special place. **Unfortunately**[2], there are some problems at the temple of Edfu. The weather in Egypt is bad for the stone walls. The wind and sand very slowly cut the stone away.

**Hadaya :** That's a shame. Do lots of tourists come to the temple ?

**Mariam :** Yes, and all those people's feet are bad for the stone, too.

**Hadaya :** Is anyone doing anything to protect the **building**[3]?

**Mariam :** Yes. Volunteers work on the buildings. Some of them are students like us who help in their summer holidays. They can stop these bad **effects**[4] on some buildings, but there isn't enough time or people to help all the buildings at the same time.

**Hadaya : That's a pity**[5]. And the buildings are so old, aren't they ?

**Mariam :** Yes, because they're very old, they need lots of **care**[6] and **repairs**[7].

(1) معبد
(2) لسوء الحظ
(3) مبنى
(4) تأثيرات
(5) هذا مؤسف
(6) عناية
(7) إصلاحات

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان



on Lesson 4 SB page 10

**Basel** : So, Younis, what's your answer to the first question: did you help other people in the summer vacation ?

**Younis** : Yes, of course I did. I helped out at my parents' café. I cleaned the dishes and cleaned the **floor**[1] in the café at the end of the day. I often went to other shops to buy things that my parents needed, too. I would say I often helped my family and friends in the summer holiday.

**Basel** : Great, so you helped your family and you learned how to work in a café.

**Younis** : Yes, that's right.

**Basel** : How about sport ? How often did you do sport ?

**Younis** : Every day, I think. I always did sport in the summer holidays. I love playing football with my friends near my building.

**Basel** : So, you were **active**[2] in the holidays ?

**Younis** : Yes, **definitely**[3].

**Basel** : The next question is: How often did you do something to help your **community**[4] ?

**Younis** : I often volunteered to help at a project in my community. People walk around the streets, collect **litter**[5] and recycle it. Then our streets are cleaner and we can use the paper and plastic again.

**Basel** : Sounds great. Can I join in, too ? I never did anything in my community in the holidays, but I want to start helping out.

**Younis** : Of course, Basel.

**Basel** : The last question is: did you learn anything interesting online this summer ? How often did you go online ?

**Younis** : I sometimes went online at home in the evening. I was usually tired in the evening, but sometimes I watched some videos about how to make videos with a phone and how to **edit**[6] the videos so they look good.

**Basel** : That sounds **useful**[7].

**Younis** : Yes, I want to **give it a try myself**[8] now.

(1) أرضية
(2) نشيط
(3) بالتأكيد
(4) مجتمع
(5) قمامة
(6) يعدل
(7) مفيد
(8) أجربها بنفسي

## 2. Skills المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات [ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية]

### Present a solution to a problem : تقديم الحل لمشكلة ما :

**1 Learn**

We use the skill of problem solving nearly every day to solve small problems in our daily lives. We can also use it to solve bigger problems in the world and help to make it a better place.

نستخدم مهارات حل المشكلات تقريبًا كل يوم لحل المشكلات الصغيرة فى حياتنا اليومية. ويمكن أن نستخدمها أيضًا لحل مشكلات أكبر فى العالم لجعله مكان أفضل.

- When we solve problems, it's important to ... عندما نحل المشكلات من المهم أن ...
  1. have organized steps for solution. - يكون لدينا خطوات منظمة للحل.
  2. tell other people about your solution. - تخبر الآخرين بهذا الحل.
  3. explain why your solution will work. - توضح أسباب نجاح هذا الحل.

**Use that flow chart to solve problems**
استخدام المخطط البيانى فى حل المشكلات

1. Identify what the problem is. تعرف على المشكلة.
2. Think about possible reasons for the problem. فكر فى أسباب ممكنة للمشكلة.
3. Use the reasons to help you think of possible solutions for the problem. استخدم الأسباب لتساعدك على التفكير فى الحلول الممكنة للمشكلة.
4. Look at your ideas and discuss what the best solution is. Give reasons for your choice. انظر إلى أفكارك وناقش ما هو افضل حل. أعطى أسبابًا لاختيارك.
5. Think about how you can present your solution to other people. فكر كيف ستقدم حلك للآخرين.

## 2 Practice on Listening (Lesson 3 SB page 8)

Use the skill of problem solving to solve the problem of "the effects of humans on ancient buildings". Use a flow chart.

- استخدم مهارة حل المشكلات لحل مشكلة تأثير البشر على المبانى القديمة. استخدم المخطط البيانى.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

▶ **Key vocabulary**

1. My cat is sick. It needs a lot of ............ to get better.
   a. tunnels b. buildings c. reasons d. care
2. Ahmed is a very ............ student. He always takes part in school competitions.
   a. active b. lazy c. worried d. careless
3. The Sphinx is a ............ with a head of a human and a body of a lion.
   a. statue b. temple c. building d. city
4. The ............ scientist invented a machine that produces oxygen.
   a. strange b. lazy c. negative d. smart
5. In Ancient Egypt, people went to the ............ to pray.
   a. library b. statue c. temple d. obelisk

**SB Exercises**

6. SB The town is on the west ............ of the River Nile.
   a. mountain b. bank c. religion d. time
7. SB The buildings need lots of care and ............ .
   a. mistakes b. reasons c. repairs d. languages
8. SB Use the reasons to help you think of possible ............ for the problem.
   a. solutions b. weather c. buildings d. catacombs

**El-Moasser Exercises**

9. ............ do amazing work to repair the old buildings for free.
   a. Statues b. Structures c. Volunteers d. Vacations
10. There are a lot of ............ visiting the Egyptian Museum from all over the world.
   a. temples b. tourists c. statues d. structures

11. The ........... of the building are made of thick bricks.
    a. walls b. lights c. vacations d. problems

**Definitions**

12. A/An ........... is a model of a person, animal, or object, sometimes made of stone.
    a. building b. statue c. obelisk d. pyramid
13. ........... are underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead.
    a. Catacombs b. Obelisks c. Walls d. Tombs

**Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. Wind and sand very slowly cut the stone ........... .
    a. off b. into c. out d. away
15. How often did you ........... sports ?
    a. go b. do c. make d. give
16. Who made the ........... in the dinning room ? - Bassem.
    a. pairs b. bars c. repairs d. peers

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## 3. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

**Asking and answering questions about how often you did something :**

السؤال والإجابة عن اسئلة كم تكرار فعل شىء :

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| 1. How often did you help the other people in the summer vacation ?<br>- كم مرة ساعدت الآخرين فى الإجازة الصيفية ؟ | - I sometimes helped other people.<br>- كنت أحيانًا أساعد الآخرين. |
| 2. How often did you do sports ?<br>- كم عدد المرات التى كنت تمارس فيها الرياضة ؟ | - I often did sports. I played football four times a week.<br>- كنت غالبًا ما امارس الرياضة. كنت ألعب كرة القدم أربع مرات أسبوعيًا. |
| 3. How often did you go online to learn ?<br>- كم عدد المرات التى اتصلت بها بالإنترنت للتعلم ؟ | - I usually went online to learn.<br>- غالبًا ما كنت أتصل بالإنترنت لأتعلم. |
| 4. How often did you get up early in the summer vaction ?<br>- كم عدد المرات التى كنت تستيقظ مبكرًا فى إجازة الصيف ؟ | - I never got up early in the summer vacation.<br>- لا لم أستيقظ مبكرًا فى إجازة الصيف. |
| 5. Did you learn anything interesting online this summer ?<br>- هل تعلمت شئ شيقًا عبر الانترنت فى هذا الصيف ؟ | - Not often. I sometimes went online.<br>- ليس كثيرًا، كنت أحيانًا اتصفح الانترنت. |

# III Language

## Adverbs of Frequency with the past simple tense ظروف التكرار مع زمن الماضى البسيط

▶ We use adverbs of frequency to say how often someone did something in the past.

◀ تستخدم ظروف التكرار لتعبر عن عدد مرات قيام شخص ما بفعل شيء ما فى الماضى.




**ex.** - I always looked after my little sister.

### Note

◀ تأتى ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى أو بعد " verb to be" فى الجملة.

| Subject | Adverb of frequency | Main verb | Rest of sentence |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | always | watched | TV at night. |

| Subject | Verb to "be" | Adverb of frequency | Rest of sentence |
|---|---|---|---|
| She | was | never | late for work. |

### How often ... ? كم مرة ... ؟

▶ We use "How often ... ?" to ask about the frequency of an action.

◀ تستخدم [How often] للسؤال عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث فعل ما.

▶ We can use adverbs of frequency to answer questions with "How often" .

◀ يمكننا الإجابة عن [How often ...] باستخدام ظروف التكرار.

**ex.** - How often did you leave your town ?
• Not often. I usually stayed in my town in the summer vacation.

**ex.** - How often did you volunteer to work on a community project ?
• I usually volunteered to work on a community project.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

▶ In negative statements, we put Adverbs of Frequency before the main verb.

- فى الجمل المنفية نضع ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الاساسى.

Subject + didn't + adverbs + main verb

**ex.** - Adel didn't usually smoke when he was young.

Subject + never + main verb

**ex.** - Amir never smoked when he was young.

- "لاحظ عند استخدام "never" لنفى الماضى البسيط نستخدم الفعل الاساسى فى التصريف الثانى"

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB How ............ did you do something to help your community ? - Always.
 a. far b. often c. many d. much
2. SB I ............ up late in the last summer vacation.
 a. usually gets b. get often c. got often d. usually got
3. SB In the summer vacation, I ............ helped my family.
 a. ever b. don't c. always d. didn't
4. SB I ............ watch television on school days.
 a. wasn't often b. didn't often c. often doesn't d. am not often
5. SB Last summer, I usually ............ games on my mobile phone.
 a. playing b. plays c. play d. played
6. SB How often did you ............ your town ?
 a. leaving b. leaves c. leave d. left

El-Moasser Exercises

7. She ............ helped with the housework, so mom was proud of her.
 a. ever b. always c. never d. don't
8. I ............ felt lonely because I had a lot of friends.
 a. usually b. always c. never d. didn't
9. My dad ............ busy in the evening on Sundays.
 a. was usually b. were never c. often was d. usually was
10. He ............ went to the library. He did that three times a week.
 a. never b. sometimes c. always d. ever
11. ............ did they play football ? - They usually played football.
 a. How much b. How long c. How d. How often
12. How often ............ you ride your bike when you were little ?
 a. doing b. do c. did d. does

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. SB I .......... (**read always**) books in the library.
2. SB How .......... (**many**) did you do something to help your community ? - Always.
3. SB I often .......... (**go**) to other shops to buy things that my parents needed.
4. SB How often did you .......... (**going**) to the museum ?
5. SB I .......... (**went sometimes**) online at home in the evening.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. I .......... (**took usually**) part in the school concert.
7. He .......... (**never**) came first. He never lost a race.
8. They .......... (**always**) watched TV late because they slept early every day.
9. .......... (**When**) did you help out at home ? - Sometimes.
10. Yara was .......... (**never**) messy. She never organized her books.

Aweek is enough

مراجعة المنهج و التمكن منه

فى اسبوع واحد فقط

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

EL-MOASSER



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

### 1 Complete the following dialog using the words in brackets :

**Sarah and Nouran are talking about the temple of Edfu.**

**Sarah** : Did you like visiting the Ancient Egyptian monuments ?
**Nouran** : (1) ........................................................................ .
**Sarah** : (2) ........................................................................ ?
**Nouran** : I usually visited them.
**Sarah** : Great! Did you visit the temple of Edfu ?
**Nouran** : (3) ........................................................................ . Where is it ?
**Sarah** : It's between (4) ........................................................................ .
**Nouran** : Is it modern ?
**Sarah** : No. It is about 2,250 years old.
**Nouran** : Wow! It's a very old place.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

### 2 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

In Ancient Egypt, temples were places where people used to come together to pray. You can visit amazing temples in Egypt. For example Luxor Temple, Kom Ombo Temple, and Edfu Temple.

The temple of Edfu is an Ancient Egyptian temple in the town of Edfu. The town is on the west bank of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan. The temple is about 2,250 years old. It is important for understanding life in Ancient Egypt because the writing on its walls gives us very interesting and useful information about language and religion over 2,000 years ago.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The main idea of the text is about " .......... in Egypt" .
   a. Languages b. clothes c. Temples d. the River Nile
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to " .......... ".
   a. Edfu Temple b. the town c. Luxor Temple d. Ancient Egypt
3. The opposite of the underlined word "useful" is " .......... " .
   a. special b. harmful c. active d. helpful

**b. Answer the following questions.**

4. Where is the town of Edfu ?

........................................................................................................

5. How many temples did the writer mention in the text ?

........................................................................................................

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

6. Why do you think the Ancient Egyptians built temples ?

..................................................................................................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ancient Egyptians made ............ of people, animals and birds from stone.
   a. windows b. bottles c. statues d. bowls
2. ............ were used in Ancient Egypt for burying the dead.
   a. Obelisks b. Statues c. Temples d. Catacombs
3. Little children are very ............ . They can play and run all day.
   a. harmful b. active c. lazy d. calm
4. ............ did you go to the cinema ? - Sometimes.
   a. How long b. How many c. How often d. How tall
5. Our car needed some ............ , so we asked a mechanic to fix it.
   a. results b. effects c. reasons d. repairs
6. Did you ............ at the library at the break ?
   a. stays b. stay c. staying d. stayed
7. SB A ............ is a place where people came together to pray in ancient Egypt.
   a. tomb b. library c. museum d. temple
8. I ............ new restaurants at the weekend when I was in Cairo.
   a. tried often b. tries often c. often tried d. often tries
9. The Egyptians are very ............ . They always welcome their guests.
   a. friendly b. angry c. annoyed d. selfish
10. This text is very ............ . I enjoyed all this amazing information.
    a. boring b. old c. interesting d. clean

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. How .............................. (long) did he watch cartoons on TV ? - Usually.
2. I .............................. (usually was) nervous before exams when I was young.
3. She .............................. (often) ate noodles, she didn't like them at all.
4. They were .............................. (never) helpful, so everyone loved them.

## 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*"An ancient building you visited"*

..................................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................................

..................................................................................................................................

Lessons **5 & 6** ▸ Literature ▸ Writing

SB pages 12 - 15



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| rising star | نجم صاعد | introduce (d) (v) | يقدم |
| ranking (n) | تصنيف / مرتبة | coach (n) | كابتن فريق |
| talent (n) for | موهبة فى | champion (n) | بطل [رياضى] |
| achievement (n) | إنجاز | amaze (d) (v) | يدهش |
| victories (n) | انتصارات - أمجاد | focus (ed) (v), (n) | يركز - تركيز |
| opponents (n) | منافسون | award (n) | جائزة |
| ping-pong (n) | كرة الطاولة | informal (adj) | غير رسمى |
| email (n) | رسالة بريد إلكترونى | moral (n) | مغزى أخلاقى |

## Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

email - award - opponent – talent – ping-pong

1. He won the first .................. at the age of seven.
2. He wasn't afraid of his .................. in the match, so he beat him.
3. She has a great .................. for drawing.
4. She is good at playing .................. .

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Lesson 5 SB pages 12 & 13

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| clear (adj) | واضح / ملاحظ | United Nations | الأمم المتحدة |
| competition (n) | مسابقة | connect (ed) (v) | يتصل |
| African Cup | كأس أفريقيا | journey (n) | رحلة |
| improve (d) (v) | يُحسن / يُنمى | federation (n) | اتحاد / فيدرالية |
| speed (n) | سرعة | national (adj) | قومى |
| table tennis (n) | تنس الطاولة | lower (adj) | أسفل - أدنى |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| difficulties (n) | صعوبات | road (n) | طريق |
| qualities (n) | سمات | succeed (ed) (v) | ينجح |
| dream (n) | حلم | achieve (d) (v) | يحقق / ينجز |

## Lesson 6

SB pages 14 & 15

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| again (adv) | مرة أخرى | clearly (adv) | بوضوح |
| instead (adv) | بدلًا من ذلك | hard (adj) | جاد / قاس |
| explain (ed) (v) | يوضح | both (pron) | كلاهما |

## Study these short forms

ادرس هذه الإختصارات

| Short form | Long form | |
|---|---|---|
| V | very | جدًا |
| CU | see you | إلى اللقاء |
| Thanx | Thanks | شكرًا لك |
| LOL | laughing out loud | الضحك بصوت عال |
| BTW | by the way | على فكرة / بالمناسبة / فيما يخص |
| TTYL | talk to you later | أتحدث إليك لاحقًا |

- Short forms are usually the first letter of each word. الاختصارات عادة ما تكون الحرف الأول لكل كلمة.
- Sometimes short forms are written the same way they sound.e.g. "CU" [see you].
في بعض الأحيان تكتب الاختصارات بنفس الطريقة التي تسمع بها.

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| choose | يختار | chose | chosen |
| bring | يحضر | brought | brought |
| become | يصبح | became | become |
| see | يرى | saw | seen |
| think | يعتقد | thought | thought |
| feel | يشعر | felt | felt |
| meet | يقابل | met | met |
| speak | يتحدث | spoke | spoken |
| make | يصنع - يجعل | made | made |

Deja rafat
عنوان للتفوق

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **achievement** | a thing that someone has done very well | إنجاز |
| **opponents** | the people you play against in a competition | منافسون |
| **victories** | successes in competitions | انتصارات |
| **focus** | giving special attention to something you do | تركيز |
| **champion** | the person who wins a competition | بطل |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▶ Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| achievement إنجاز | success / victory | failure / defeat فشل / هزيمة |
| achieve ينجز / يحقق | manage | fail / lose / miss يخسر / يفشل |
| older أكبر سنًا | elder | younger أصغر سنًا |
| clear واضح | obvious | unclear غير واضح |
| modern حديث | new | old قديم / عتيق |
| difficult صعب | hard | easy سهل |

### ▶ Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –ing | تحول الفعل إلى اسم | practicing تدريب |
| –er | تحول الفعل إلى اسم | player لاعب |
| –ed | تحول الاسم لصفة | talented موهوب |
| –ment | تحول الفعل إلى اسم | achievement إنجاز |
| –ly | تحول الصفة إلى حال | clearly بوضوح |

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. That's a great achievement ! The antonym of "achievement" is " ............ ".
   a. success b. failure c. practicing d. giving up
2. To get the noun of the verb "play", we add the suffix " ............ ".
   a. –or b. –ly c. –ed d. –er

3. The opposite of the word "younger" is "..........." .
   a. harder b. older c. smarter d. longer
4. We form the noun from the verb "achieve" by adding the suffix " ..........." .
   a. -ed b. -ness c. -ly d. -ment
5. The synonym of the word "clear" is "..........." .
   a. obvious b. true c. difficult d. special

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

**1 At the age of = aged** في عمر / عن عمر يناهز
- My grandpa died at the age of 65 (**aged 65**)

**2 Coach (n)** مدرب رياضي - حافلة - عربة في قطار
- Hossam Hassan is a football **coach**.
- He took a **coach** to the cinema.
- He had a seat in the first **coach** of the train.

**3 talent - talented**

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

* **talent (n) for** موهبه
- Bassem has a special **talent for** tennis.

* **talented (adj) at** موهوب
- We all admire نعجب Mr Ayman. He's very **talented at** teaching English.

### Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| What an achievement! | يا له من إنجاز! | even if the road is difficult | حتى إذا ما كان الطريق صعبًا |
| work hard | يعمل بجد | play against | يلعب ضد |
| ITTF (International Table Tennis Federation) | الاتحاد الدولي لتنس الطاولة | step by step | خطوة بخطوة |
| | | (be) back | يعود - يرجع |
| since then | منذ ذلك الحين | stay at | يبقى في |
| come true | يتحقق | explain (something) clearly | يفسر / [شئ] بوضوح |
| **Prepositions** حروف الجر | | | |
| in the end | في النهاية | at the same time | في نفس الوقت |
| can't wait to + inf. | لا أطيق الانتظار حتى .... | at lunchtime | في وقت الغداء |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 5 SB page 12

### A rising star

1. Hana Goda is a great **table tennis star**[1].
2. She first started playing table tennis at the age of four.
3. She has **improved**[2] year after year.
4. She **amazed**[3] the table tennis world by her **speed**[4] and focus.
5. She became the youngest national **champion**[5] in 2019.
6. She came top of the ITTF under-15 women's world rankings.
7. In 2022, she won a top **award**[6] at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos.
8. She took part in a project to help young people in Egypt.
9. She works hard to achieve her **victories**[7] and makes her **dreams**[8] come true.

| (1) نجم تنس الطاولة | (2) يُحسن | (3) مندهش | (4) سرعة |
|---|---|---|---|
| (5) بطل | (6) جائزة | (7) انتصارات | (8) أحلام |

## Lesson 6 SB page 14

### My Summer

1. Waleed is writing an email to Ashraf about his summer vacation.
2. Waleed is **happy**[1] to be back at school this week after the summer vacation.
3. In the summer vacation, Waleed **volunteered**[2] to teach adults to read and write Arabic.
4. He also learned how to explain things clearly.
5. He helped his dad in his **workshop**[3] on the vacation.
6. He and his dad made a **ping-pong**[4] table.
7. They played ping-pong for the rest of the vacation.

| (1) سعيد | (2) تطوع |
|---|---|
| (3) ورشة عمل | (4) كرة تنس الطاولة |

Deja rafat
عنوان للتفوق

تنويه: الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Hana Goda    * Your summer vacation    * Your sports hero

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١١ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 12

### A Rising Star!



When Hana Goda first started playing table tennis **at the age of**[1] four, her **talent**[2] for the sport quickly became clear. However, there was a problem. The table was too high for her!

"What can we do?" her coaches asked, seeing how much she wanted to play. In the end, they made the legs shorter so that the table was lower.

Since then, Hana has improved year after year, and she amazed the table tennis world by her speed and focus.

Born on 12th December 2007, Hana became Egypt's youngest ever national **champion**[3] in 2019, at the age of 12. Just one year later, she came top of the ITTF **(International Table Tennis Federation)**[4] under-15 women's world rankings-the first African and Arab player to do so. Then, in 2022, she won a top award at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos. What an **achievement**[5]!

The United Nations chose Hana to take part in Shabab Balad, a project in Egypt to help young people learn and connect in the world of work.

Although Hana is still much younger than many of her **opponents**[6], she works just as hard as any older player. She has also spoken about how important it is for her to take things step by step, always learning and trying hard to achieve her victories. Hana really enjoys practicing for long hours every day, even if it is hard work. She is showing young people in Egypt that not only is it possible to make your dreams come true, but you can also enjoy the journey even if the road is difficult.

The moral of the story : "Don't let difficulties stop you from achieving your dreams".

**Answer the following questions.**

- Understanding reference. فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير.

Learn 1. What does the underlined word "her" refer to ?

*- It refers to Hana.*

Practice 2. What does the underlined pronoun "they" refer to ?

..............................................................................................

(1) في عمر | (2) موهبة | (3) بطل | (4) الاتحاد الدولي لتنس الطاولة | (5) إنجاز | (6) منافسون

on Lesson 6 SB page 14

**W**

**From** : Waleed
**To** : Ashraf
**Subject** : My summer



Hi Ashraf,

Hope you and your family are OK. We're all fine.

I'm back at school this week after the **summer vacation**(1).
The summer vacation was good, but I'm happy to be back at school now. I can see all of my **friends**(2) and it's good to learn something new every day again.

BTW, I learned quite a lot in the summer vacation, but I didn't **learn**(3) the things you usually study at school. Instead, I **volunteered**(4) to teach adults to read and write in Arabic and I learned how to explain things clearly. I think that will be useful to me now we're back at school.

Of course, I also had some fun in the summer vacation. I often helped my dad in his **workshop**(5). We both enjoy playing **ping-pong**(6), so we decided to make a ping-pong table. It was hard work, but we were v happy with the table when it was finished. We were able to play ping-pong every day for the **rest of**(7) the vacation.

How was your summer ?

TTYL!

Waleed

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

(1) إجازة الصيف (2) أصدقاء (3) يتعلم (4) تطوع (5) ورشة عمل (6) كرة تنس الطاولة (7) الباقي من

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

▸ **Key vocabulary**

1. **A:** I came first in the competition. **B:** What a/an .......... !
   a. vacation b. project c. community d. achievement
2. Players should respect their .......... who play against them.
   a. dreams b. opponents c. coaches d. talents

3. Always ............ on your goals and do your best to achieve them.
   a. focus b. ask c. talk d. spend
4. She can do all math sums, she has a ............ for math.
   a. problem b. racket c. talent d. game
5. Her ............ advises her to practice for long hours every day to go to the Olympics.
   a. writer b. coach c. reader d. worker

SB Exercises

6. SB Hana became Egypt's youngest ever national ............ in 2019.
   a. trainer b. cook c. champion d. step
7. SB She won a top ............ at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos.
   a. photo b. work c. award d. dream
8. SB What ............ does Hana have that help her succeed ?
   a. sports b. qualities c. clothes d. problems

El-Moasser Exercises

9. The runner ran at a great ............ in the race, so he came first.
   a. speed b. street c. time d. test
10. She was ............ when she won the first award in the competition.
   a. difficult b. amazed c. bored d. hard

### ▶ Definitions

11. A/An ............ is a thing that someone has done very well.
   a. state b. dream c. practice d. achievement
12. To ............ means to give special attention to something you do.
   a. bring b. make c. focus d. eat
13. ............ are successes in competitions.
   a. Victories b. Rankings c. Journeys d. Steps

### ▶ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. It is possible to make your dreams ............ true.
   a. fail b. come c. get d. do
15. She works ............ to achieve her goals.
   a. hard b. weakly c. lazily d. slowly
16. My father stopped working ............ 60.
   a. age b. aged c. at the age d. ages

## 2. Writing مهارة الكتابة

### Informal email رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (غير رسمية)

#### Writing informal emails كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الودية (غير الرسمية)

- رسالة البريد الإلكترونى (email) هى الصيغة العصرية للخطاب التقليدى (letter).
- يُستخدم البريد الإلكترونى غير الرسمى (informal email) فى المراسلات بين الأقارب والأصدقاء.
- يتم كتابة البريد الإلكترونى للمرسل إليه في سطر المُرسَل إليه (To-line)
- يتم كتابة البريد الإلكترونى للراسل فى سطر المُرسِل (From-line)
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكترونى فى سطر الموضوع (Subject line).
- فى بداية موضوع الرسالة، يتم كتابة اسم المُرسَل إليه بعد كلمة (Dear/ Hello/Hi) فى البريد غير الرسمى (informal email) مثل:

Dear Sama,
Hello Fatma,
Hi Youssef,

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

تبدأ الرسالة غير الرسمية بأحد تعبيرات التحية مثل:

How are you? كيف حالك ؟
Hope you are OK! أتمنى أن تكون بخير!
Very happy to send you this email! سعيد جداً أن ارسل هذه الرسالة الالكترونية إليك!

- يمكن استخدام الاختصارات مثل:

(V/ CU / LoL / ...)

- قبل توقيع المُرسِل فى نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

Yours TTYL! Write back soon! See you later!

Aweek is enough
مراجعة المنهج
و التمكن منه فى
اسبوع واحد فقط
EL-MOASSER



## Informal email structure

**From :** Mona@yahoo.com ← البريد الإلكترونى (الراسل)

**To :** Esraa@gamil.com ← البريد الإلكترونى (المرسل إليه)

**Subject:** The summer vacation ← (موضوع الرسالة)

Greeting + the name التحية و الاسم → **Hi Esraa,**

Introduction المقدمة → Hope you and your family are OK.

Body of the email →
I had a great summer vacation. I did a lot of activities. I could see all my family. I played table tennis in the club. I was V happy. BTW, I enjoyed my free time, but I didn't visit many historical places.

V ← Short form (very)

BTW ← Short form (by the way)

Closing الختام → How was your vacation ?
TTYL!

Signature التوقيع → **Mona**

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## Informal email language لغة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني (غير الرسمية)

- **There are two ways that you can use language to show that your email is an informal email to a friend.**

- فى رسالة البريد الإلكترونى، هناك طريقتان يمكنك من خلالهما استخدام اللغة لإظهار أن بريدك الإلكترونى هو بريد إلكترونى غير رسمى لصديق.

1. **Don't use** "I" before a verb in sentences where you talk about your feeling helps to make your language informal.
   - لا تستخدم الضمير (I) قبل الفعل فى الجمل التى تتحدث فيها عن مشاعرك فهذا يساعد على جعل لغتك غير رسمية.

   **ex :** - "Hope you and your family are OK."

2. **Using** the short forms of words or phrases helps to make your informal email more direct and friendly.
   - استخدم صيغ قصيرة من الكلمات أو العبارات فى رسائل البريد الإلكترونى هذا يساعد فى أن يجعل رسالتك الغير رسمية أكثر وضوحًا وودًا.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

### 1 Listen and complete :

استمع وأكمل [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب] :

1. Hand Goda started playing ............ at the age of four.
2. She has a ............ in this sport.
3. At the age of ............ , she came top of the ITTF.
4. She won a top ............ at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos.

### 2 Complete the following dialog :

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

**Sally is asking Riham about her favorite sport.**

**Sally** : What are you doing, Riham ?

**Riham:** (1) ................................................................................ .

**Sally** : What is the article about ?

**Riham:** (2) ................................................................................ .

**Sally** : Great, I like sports. (3) ................................................................................ ?

**Riham:** My favorite sport is tennis.

**Sally** : (4) ................................................................................ ?

**Riham:** I started playing it at the age of seven.

**Sally** : How often do you practice it ?

**Riham:** (5) ................................................................................ .

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I enjoyed the ............ to Aswan and Luxor last winter.
   a. test b. journey c. dream d. competition
2. Don't give up. Try to achieve your ............ .
   a. walls b. games c. pictures d. dreams
3. Good teachers have the ............ to explain hard things clearly.
   a. talent b. bridge c. court d. storm
4. SB We didn't ............ , but we had fun.
   a. wins b. won c. winning d. win
5. You can ............ great success if you work hard.
   a. lose b. achieve c. remember d. break

6. How .......... did you meet your friends ? - Sometimes, on weekends.
   a. much  b. long  c. often  d. high
7. .......... are the people you play against in a competition.
   a. Athletes  b. Opponents  c. Coaches  d. Sports people
8. SB Don't let .......... stop you from achieving your dreams.
   a. goals  b. success  c. achievements  d. difficulties
9. SB What .......... Hana achieve in 2022 ?
   a. do  b. did  c. does  d. doing
10. My team will play .......... the other school team next week.
   a. to  b. against  c. without  d. of

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Did you .......................... (**achieved**) your dreams in life ?
2. He always .......................... (**feel**) excited when he read about famous people.
3. .......................... (**How many**) did you play sports ? - Twice a week
4. He .......................... (**sent usually**) emails to his friends.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## 5 Match the short forms with their long forms :

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. TTYS! | ☐ a. very |
| 2. LoL | ☐ b. by the way |
| 3. CU | ☐ c. Talk to you soon! |
| 4. BTW | ☐ d. Thanks |
| | ☐ e. Laughing out loud |

## 6 Write a biography of about EIGHTY (80) words about :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*"A sports star"*

.............................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................
.............................................................................................................

# Review on unit 1

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

## Vocabulary

**Lessons 1 & 2**

| | |
|---|---|
| vacation | عطلة / إجازة |
| tournament | بطولة |
| workshop | ورشة عمل |
| coach | مدرب |
| imagine | يتخيل |
| wrapper | غُلاف |

**Lessons 3 & 4**

| | |
|---|---|
| temple | معبد |
| statue | تمثال |
| obelisk | مسلة |
| volunteer | متطوع |
| active | نشيط |
| care | عناية |
| smart | ذكي |
| community | مجتمع |
| wind | رياح |

**Lessons 5 & 6**

| | |
|---|---|
| achieve | يحقق |
| talent | موهبة |
| come true | تتحقق |
| instead | بدلًا من ذلك |
| clear | واضح |
| useful | مفيد |
| informal | غير رسمي |

## Language

**Past simple** الماضي البسيط

### 1. Affirmative statements : الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

**ex.** - He bought a new car.
- She explained the lesson clearly.

### 2. Negative statements : الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

**ex.** - I didn't go out for a walk yesterday.

### 3. Interrogative : صيغة الإستفهام :

Did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ... ?

**ex.** - Did you study your lessons ?
- Yes, I did.
- No, I didn't.

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ... ?

**ex.** - Where did you spend your last summer holiday ?
- I spent it in Alexandria.

## Speaking

### 1. Asking and answering questions about the summer vacation activities :

السؤال عن أنشطة العطلة الصيفية والإجابة عليها :

- Which activities do you do in the summer vacation ?
- I play in tournaments and I help out at my family's workshop.
- Which activities would you like to do ?
- I would like to volunteer at a community garden to help other people make their local area better.

### 2. Asking and answering questions about how often you did something.

السؤال والإجابة عن كم مرة قمت بفعل شيء ما :

- How often did you do sports ?
- I always did sports. I played football every day.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

Skills

# 1 Reading Comprehension

## Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Read the following and answer the questions :**

I noticed that there were too many empty cans and chocolate bar wrappers on the streets in our city. Last summer, I decided to do something about it. I didn't want to wait for the adults to clean up our streets. I made some posters to ask young people to join my group. Four people came to our first meeting. We **picked up** litter from one part of the city, put it in bags, and took it to the recycling center. The week after that, eight people came and then after that there were twelve of us. The group grew and grew over the vacation and now it has twenty-four members.

• The underlined phrase "**picked up**" means to ............... .
a. recycle  b. collect  c. throw  d. drop

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه يمكن تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص.

# 2 Speaking

## Spending summer vacation

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialog) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Complete the following dialog :**

**Ali is talking to Amir about thier summer vacation.**

Ali : Good morning, Amir. How are you ?
**Amir :** Good morning, Ali. (1) ................................................ .
Ali : (2) ................................................ ?
**Amir :** I did a lot of activities during the summer vacation.
Ali : (3) ................................................ ?
**Amir :** I volunteered at a community garden, played in a tournament and wrote stories using AI.
Ali : Great! How often did you leave your town in the summer vacation ?
**Amir :** (4) ................................................ .
Ali : What activity was your favorite ?
**Amir :** (5) ................................................ . I really enjoyed using AI; that was a helping hand for me.

التحدى تريد السؤال عن (قضاء الإجازة الصيفية) وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

# General Exercises on unit 1

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. The .......................... of Edfu is a/an Ancient Egyptian temple.
   a. museum b. temple c. statue d. obelisk
2. It is in the .......................... of Edfu.
   a. village b. mountain c. town d. valley
3. It is important for understanding .......................... in Ancient Egypt.
   a. colors b. money c. writing d. life
4. It gives us information about language and .......................... over 2.000 years ago.
   a. tomb b. religion c. treasure d. design

## 2 Complete the following dialog :

**Samar is telling Hadeer about a project in her city.**

Hadeer : Hi Samar. Would you like to visit El-Orman Garden with me ?
Samar : Hi Hadeer. (1) .......................................................... .
Hadeer : (2) .......................................................... ?
Samar : Because I help out at a project in my city and I'm very busy.
Hadeer : (3) .......................................................... ?
Samar : I help to teach adults who can't read and write.
Hadeer : Great! English or Arabic ?
Samar : (4) .......................................................... .
Hadeer : It's really fun to be an Arabic teacher.

Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

champion – was – talent – enjoys – young

Hana Goda is an Egyptian table tennis player. She (1) ............ born in 2007. She started playing table tennis at the age of four. She has a (2) ............ for this sport. She became Egypt's youngest national (3) ............ in 2019. Hana really (4) ............ practicing for long hours every day, even if it is hard work. She is showing young people in Egypt that not only is it possible to make your dreams come true, but you can enjoy the journey even if the road is difficult.

## 4 Read the following text, then answer the questions :

Elsa, a young girl from Salzburg, Austria, started a group to collect litter in her city last summer. She was worried about the trash on the streets and wanted to do something about it. She didn't want to wait for the adults to clean the streets. She made posters and asked other young people to join her. Four people came to her first meeting. **They** were very active. The group grew quickly, and they started picking up **litter**, putting it in bags, and taking it to the recycling center. By the end of the summer, Elsa's group had twenty four members!

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Elsa wanted to do something about the ............ .
   a. clothes b. club c. money d. litter
2. The underlined word "**litter**" can be replaced by " ............ ".
   a. poster b. trash c. member d. litre
3. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ............ .
   a. adult people b. young people c. Elsa and her dad d. Elsa's brothers

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Summarize the text in one sentence.

........................................................................................................

5. Why do you think Elsa wanted more young people to help ?

........................................................................................................

6. Give a suitable title to the passage.

........................................................................................................

Deja rafat
عنوان للتفوق

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Twenty players took part in the sports ............ to win the cup.
   a. meeting b. tournament c. project d. workshop
2. The mechanic works in a ............ .
   a. school b. workshop c. library d. zoo
3. When did you ............ the team ?
   a. joined b. joins c. join d. joining
4. It ............ tiring to travel in the past.
   a. were always b. was always c. always were d. always was

5. The temple of Edfu is an amazing ............ from Ancient Egypt.
   a. language    b. painting    c. building    d. activity

6. ............ you watch the tennis match last week ?
   a. Will    b. Was    c. Did    d. Can

## 6 Match the word to their definitions :

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. statue | ☐ a. a place where people come together to pray |
| 2. catacombs | ☐ b. a tall stone pillar built to remind people of an event of someone who died |
| 3. temple | ☐ c. underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead |
| | ☐ d. a model of a person, animal, or object, sometimes made of stone |

## 7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB Last summer, I ............ (**do**) something really fun.
2. How ............ (**much**) did they go shopping on weekends ? - Sometimes.
3. SB What ............ (**do**) you do last summer ?
4. She ............ (**practiced often**) tennis during the summer vacations.

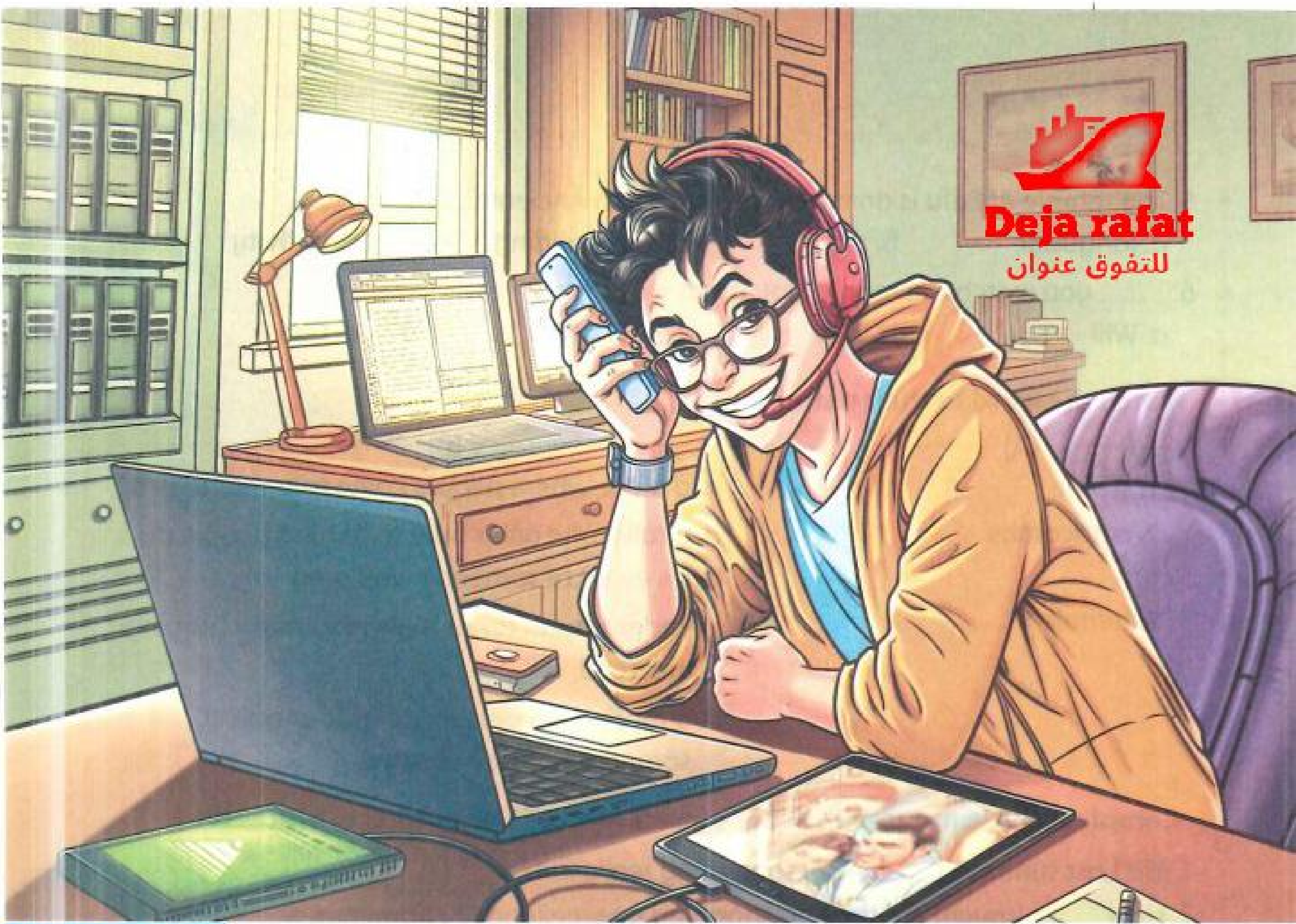
Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

## 8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*"Summer vacation"*

..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................



Deja rafat
للتفوق عنوان

UNIT TWO

# My network

SB pages 16 : 27

**Unit Objectives :**

- **Reading** : Social media posts about a friend's wedding; An email to a friend about making arrangements; Friends online : a short story
- **Writing** : Social media post about a birthday
- **Listening** : Profiles about family life around the world; A dialog about selling things online
- **Speaking** : Asking questions about family life in other countries
- **Language** : Determiners and possessive['s] / [s']; Can and will for requests

تنويه ◀ أهداف الدروس "Lessons objectives" فى مقدمة الكتاب.

Lessons **1 & 2**

# ‣ My cousin's wedding
# ‣ An email to a friend

SB pages 16 - 19



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| social media | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى | groom (n) | عريس |
| wedding celebrations | احتفالات الزفاف | photographer (n) | مصور |
| guest (n) | ضيف | signing (n) | توقيع / إمضاء |
| marriage contract | عقد الزواج | gift (n) | هدية |
| bride (n) | عروسة | network (n) | شبكة اتصال |
| party (n) | حفلة | shopping mall (n) | مركز تسوق |
| cinema (n) | سينما | messages (n) | رسائل |
| hug (ged) (v) | يحتضن | outfit (n) | زى خاص |

### Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

**• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

contract - social - photographer - groom - gift

1. He is a good ................. . He takes a lot of amazing photos.
2. My mom gave me a nice ................. for my success in the exams.
3. My brother always posts photos on ................. media.
4. At the wedding celebrations, the bride and the ................. wear special clothes.

### Lesson 1 SB pages 16 & 17

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| wedding reception | وليمة الزفاف | wedding dress | فستان الزفاف |
| plan (ned) (v), (n) | يخطط - خطة | gold (n) | ذهب |
| event (n) | حدث | necklace (n) | قلادة / عقد |
| wedding service | تجهيزات الزفاف | relatives (n) | أقارب |
| bracelet (n) | سوار | traditional (adj) | تقليدى |
| galabeya (n) | جلابية | amazing (adj) | رائع / مدهش |
| celebrate (d) (v) | يحتفل | | |

## Lesson 2

SB pages 18 & 19

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fun (n) | متعة/مرح | whole (adj) | الكل/الجميع |
| sports field | ملعب رياضي | restaurant (n) | مطعم |
| shop (n) | محل/متجر | shop windows (n) | واجهات عرض المتجر |
| fattah (n) | فتة | soup (n) | شوربة |
| kids (n) | أطفال | delicious (adj) | لذيذ |
| outside (adv) | بالخارج | curly (adj) | مجعد |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| wear | يرتدى | wore | worn |
| sit | يجلس | sat | sat |
| cut | يقطع | cut | cut |
| stand | يقف | stood | stood |
| buy | يشترى | bought | bought |
| send | يرسل | sent | sent |
| tell | يخبر | told | told |
| eat | يأكل | ate | eaten |

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **bride** | the woman who gets married | عروسة |
| **groom** | the man who gets married | عريس |
| **guests** | the people who come to the wedding | ضيوف |
| **wedding reception** | the event where people eat and enjoy themselves | وليمة الزفاف |
| **wedding dress** | a special outfit that a woman wears at her wedding | فستان الزفاف |
| **marriage contract** | the paper that people who are getting married sign | عقد الزواج |
| **wedding cake** | something sweet that people at a wedding eat | تورتة الزفاف |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▸ Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| large | كبير (الحجم) | big / huge | small / tiny | صغير (الحجم) |
| beautiful | جميل | pretty / lovely | ugly / terrible | قبيح - سيئ |
| amazing | مدهش | wonderful | ordinary | عادى |
| happy | سعيد | glad / pleased | sad / upset | حزين - متضايق |
| delicious | لذيذ | tasty | horrible / nasty | سيئ - كريه |

### ▸ Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| –er | تحول الفعل لاسم فاعل | photographer | مصور |
| –ing | تحول الفعل لاسم | signing | توقيع |
| –age | تحول الفعل لاسم | marriage | الزواج |
| –al | تحول الاسم لصفة | traditional | تقليدى |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I have a large family. The antonym of "large" is "..................." .
   a. huge b. small c. big d. tall
2. To form an adjective from the noun "tradition", we add the suffix "..................." .
   a. –er b. –or c. –al d. –ly
3. The suffix "..................." forms the noun from the verb "marry".
   a. –age b. –ness c. –ing d. –er
4. "..................." is the synonym of "delicious".
   a. Tasty b. Horrible c. Awful d. Bad
5. The word "..................." has the same meaning as "wonderful".
   a. ordinary b. amazing c. terrible d. tiny

# General Notes on Reading & Listening

## 1 wedding – marriage

* **wedding (n)** الزفاف [حفل]
  - My cousin's **wedding** was great. *Reading on lesson 1 SB page 16*
* **marriage (n)** إجراءات الزواج
  - SB The signing of the **marriage** contract is at 7.30 pm. *Reading on lesson 1 SB page 16*

## 2 gift – prize

* **gift (n)** [هدية / منحة] من شخص دون مقابل
  - The necklace was a **gift** from Ayman to his bride. *Reading on lesson 1 SB page 17*
* **prize (n)** جائزة [تمنح لإنجاز قام به شخصٌ ما]
  - Dr Zewail won the Nobel **Prize** for chemistry.

## 3 ask – ask for

* **ask (v)** يسأل
  - The teacher **asked** me a question and I answered.
* **ask for (v)** يطلب
  - SB I could **ask** my parents **for** some money. *Reading on lesson 2 SB page 18*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | Prepositions حروف الجر | |
|---|---|---|---|
| take photos | يلتقط الصور | start at [وقت] | يبدأ في [وقت] |
| sign a contract | يوقع عقد | married to [شخص] | تزوج من [شخص] |
| come together = meet up ... | يتقابل | meet up | يتقابل |
| They look very happy. | تبدو عليهم السعادة الغامرة | a long way from ... | على مسافة طويلة من .... |
| spend time with... | يقضي وقت مع .... | sit at ... | يجلس إلى .... |
| have a lot of fun | يستمتع كثيرًا | get up | ينهض/يقف |
| arrive at + [وقت] | يصل في [وقت] | on the phone | على الهاتف |
| arrive between [وقت] and [وقت] | | on the weekend | في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع |
| | يصل ما بين الساعة [وقت] و [وقت] | in her wedding dress | مرتدية فستان زفافها |
| get married | يتزوج | belong to | ينتمي إلى / يخص |
| take place = happen | يحدث | | |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 1 SB page 16

### The plan[1] for a wedding

1. The bride and the groom arrive at 5 pm.
2. The **photographer**[2] arrives at 5.30 pm.
3. The wedding guests arrive for the wedding service between 6 pm and 6.30 pm.
4. The signing of the **marriage contract**[3] takes place between 7.30 pm and 8.30 pm.
5. The wedding reception starts at 9 pm.

## Lesson 1 SB page 17

### Manal's social media posts about a wedding

1. Last weekend, my cousin Amira **got married**[4] to Ayman.
2. It was a really fun day.
3. The whole family came together to celebrate with Amira and Ayman.
4. The wedding service was really beautiful.
5. The bride wore a beautiful **wedding dress**[5], a gold **necklace**[6] and bracelets.
6. The groom's **traditional**[7] galabeya was white.
7. After the **signing**[8] of the contract, it was time for food and some fun.

## Lesson 2 SB page 18

### Some family photos

1. Malak is sending Tamara a photo of her at her grandma's birthday party last week.
2. The birthday party was at her **grandparents'**[9] house.
3. When you spend time with family, you can laugh with them, hug them, and look in their eyes and listen to them.
4. Malak asked Tamara to **meet up**[10] with her one afternoon next week.
5. Malak asked Tamara to go to a new **restaurant**[11].

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (1) خطة | (2) مصور | (3) عقد زواج | (4) تزوج |
| (5) فستان زفاف | (6) عقد / قلادة | (7) تقليدى | (8) توقيع |
| (9) الأجداد | (10) يتقابل | (11) مطعم | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* A wedding plan
* A wedding party
* A birthday party

# II Skills

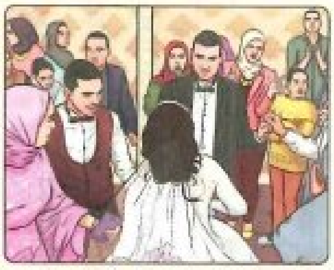
## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 16

#### A plan for a wedding



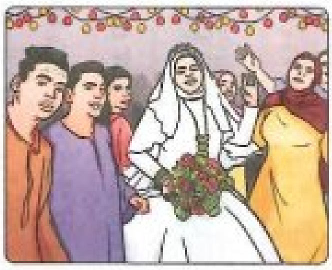
- The **bride**(1), Shorouk, and the **groom**(2), Sherif, arrive at 5 pm.
- The **photographer**(3) arrives at 5.30 pm to take photos of the bride in her wedding dress and the groom.
- The wedding **guests**(4) arrive for the wedding service between 6 pm and 6.30 pm.
- The signing of the **marriage**(5) contract takes place between 7.30 pm and 8.30 pm.
- The **wedding reception**(6) starts at 9 pm. The guests have a meal, eat wedding cake, and take photos with the bride and groom.

(1) عروسة | (2) عريس | (3) مصور | (4) ضيوف | (5) زواج | (6) وليمة الزفاف

on Lesson 1 SB page 17

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

#### Manal's social media posts about a wedding



1. Last weekend in Luxor, my cousin Amira **got married**(1) to Ayman. It was a really fun day. I have a <u>large</u> family and more than half of the wedding guests were **members**(2) of my family! I loved seeing my whole family come together to **celebrate**(3) with Amira and Ayman. I saw aunts and **uncles**(4) who live a long way from us and who I don't see very often. This is a photo of me next to Amira and some of my **cousins**(5).

(1) تزوجت | (2) أفراد | (3) يحتفل | (4) أعمام | (5) أبناء العم

**2.** The wedding service was really beautiful. When Amira arrived, you could hear everyone say, "Wow!". She looked so beautiful and her **wedding dress**[6] was amazing. It was white, and she was wearing a beautiful gold **necklace**[7] and **bracelets**[8] that were a gift from Ayman. Ayman's traditional galabeya was white. The bride and groom looked very happy!



**3.** After the signing of the contract, it was time for some food and some fun! That's my favorite part of a wedding – the wedding reception! I sat at a table with my two brothers, my parents, and my grandma. I wanted to talk to some other **relatives**[9] after the meal, so I got up and went to talk to my cousins. My cousin Eman showed me all her photos of the wedding on her phone, then Ayman and Amira cut the wedding cake. It was **delicious**!



- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context. تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية في النص.

**Choose the correct answer.**

Learn 1. The underlined word "**large**" means ................... .
a. tiny b. huge c. small d. bad

Practice 2. The underlined word "**delicious**" is the opposite of " ................... ".
a. special b. happy c. upset d. horrible

(6) فستان الزفاف | (7) قلادة (عُقد) | (8) أساور | (9) أقارب

## on Lesson 2 SB page 18



**From** : Malak
**To** : Tamara
**Subject** : Some family photos

Hi Tamara,

How are you ?

I'm sending you a photo of me at my grandma's **birthday party**[1] last week. The party was at my **grandparents'**[2] house and our whole family was there. We all had a lot of fun together!

(1) حفل عيد ميلاد | (2) الأجداد

The party showed me that sending **messages**(3) to your friends and family is fine, but it's not as good as spending time with them. You can laugh with them, hug them, and look in their eyes and really listen to them.

Do you have time to **meet up**(4) with me one afternoon next week ? Maybe on the weekend ? We could go to the **shopping mall**(5). There's a shop there that has some beautiful **clothes**(6) in its windows. I could ask my parents for some money for the cinema or to go to a restaurant. My dad's friend Ali opened a new **restaurant**(7) last month and it looks great. What do you think ?

Write soon and tell me about your family.

Love,

Malak

(3) رسائل | (4) يتقابل | (5) مركز تجارى | (6) ملابس | (7) مطعم

on Lesson 2 SB page 19



In this picture, my family and I were having **lunch**(1) at my grandparents' house. My aunt Salwa and her **kids**(2) were there. The food was delicious! We had salad, **fattah**(3), and meat. My grandmother also cooked some delicious **soup**(4). After we ate, Mom made us all some tea and cake, which we all enjoyed. After that, I played **outside**(5) with my cousins. It was great **fun**(6) !

(1) وجبة الغداء | (2) اطفال | (3) فتة | (4) شوربة | (5) بالخارج | (6) مرح

## 2. Skills — المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات [ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية]

### Matching pictures to text : — ملائمة الصور مع النص

**1 Learn**

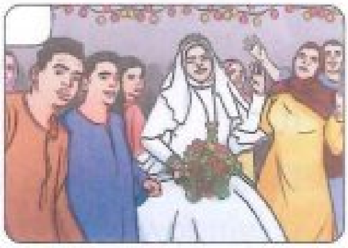
**When you need to match pictures to text :** — عندما تحتاج إلى توصيل الصور بالنص :

- **First** → Find the words for the most important things and people in the text.
  أوجد الكلمات لأكثر الأشخاص والأشياء أهمية فى النص.
- **Then** → Try to find these things or people in the pictures.
  حاول أن تجد تلك الأشياء أو الأشخاص فى الصورة.
- **Finally** → If they are in more than one picture, go back to the text and look for more detailed information about them.
  إذا كانوا فى أكثر من صورة، ارجع الى النص وابحث عن معلومات أكثر تفصيلًا عنهم.

## 2 Practice

**Read and match the sentences to the pictures.**

**1.** The bride got married in a beautiful wedding dress. When she arrived, everyone said "Wow!".



**2.** The groom wore a traditional galabeya that was white. The bride and the groom looked very happy .



**3.** The wedding party was really fun. The whole family came together to celebrate.



## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

**Key vocabulary**

1. He always writes positive posts on ............ media.
   a. public b. social c. environmental d. traditional
2. I invited many ............ to my birthday party.
   a. guests b. traditions c. bracelets d. gifts
3. Eman likes to take photos, she is a smart ............ .
   a. vet b. teacher c. doctor d. photographer
4. I'm wearing a special ............ for the party.
   a. outfit b. celebration c. service d. curtain
5. Our ............ are coming to visit us this weekend .
   a. photos b. services c. schools d. relatives

SB Exercises

6. SB After the ………… of the marriage contract, it was time for food and some fun.
a. deleting b. signing c. losing d. missing

7. SB Amira ………… married in a beautiful wedding dress.
a. put b. made c. got d. found

8. SB There's a shop that has some beautiful clothes in its ………… .
a. windows b. boxes c. doors d. walls

El-Moasser Exercises

9. I sent a ………… to my friend yesterday, but she didn't reply.
a. message b. drink c. birthday d. cake

10. I had lunch with my family yesterday at a nice ………… .
a. cinema b. school c. restaurant d. workshop

### Definitions

11. SB The woman who gets married is called the ………… .
a. bride b. groom c. guest d. party

12. SB The wedding ………… is the event where people eat and enjoy themselves.
a. dress b. reception c. card d. light

13. SB The wedding ………… is a special outfit that a woman wears at her wedding.
a. food b. music c. reception d. dress

### Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. I usually meet ………… with my friends at the club.
a. out b. up c. on d. off

15. It was a special day. We ………… a lot of fun.
a. gave b. made c. had d. put

16. In his birthday party, Ali received a lot of ………… .
a. prizes b. awards c. necklaces d. gifts

# III Language

## Determiners

**We use determiners (my, your, his, her, its, our, their) to say who the owner of something is, or who something belongs to :**

◀ تستخدم محددات الملكية (my, your, his, her, its, our, their) لتوضح من المالك لشيء ما أو من يخصه هذا الشيء.

| Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل<br>تستخدم قبل الفعل | | | Determiners محددات الملكية<br>تستخدم قبل الاسم المملوك | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | أنا | → | my | | ملكي |
| You | أنت/أنتم | → | your | | ملكك/ملككم |
| He | هو | → | his | | ملكه |
| She | هي | → | her | + noun (اسم الشيء المملوك) | ملكها |
| We | نحن | → | our | | ملكنا |
| They | هم | → | their | | ملكهم |
| It | هو/هي (لغير العاقل) | → | its | | ملكه/ملكها (لغير العاقل) |

**ex.** - I'm sending you a photo of me at my grandma's birthday party last week.
(I → Subj. pronoun; my → determiner)

**ex.** - This is my sister Noha. Her hair is long and brown.
(my sister Noha → she → Her)

**ex.** - My cousins live in Aswan. Their house is near the river.
(My cousins → They → Their)

### Practice

**⊙ Read and complete the text with the correct determiner.**

My family and I were having lunch. (1) .................. dad invited the whole family. My aunt Salwa and (2) .................. kids were there. My cousins brought (3) .................. toys to play after lunch. We enjoyed (4) .................. meal together. My uncle brought (5) .................. camera. It was a wonderful day!

## Possessive ('s) / (s')

### [ 's and s' ]

**Usage** الاستخدام

We can use " 's " and " s' " to say who owns something, or who something belongs to :

- نستخدم "s'" و "'s" لتحديد من يمتلك شيء أو من يخصه الشيء.
- نستخدم ['s] / [s'] في الحالات الآتية :

We use ('s) → after a name or a singular noun.

- نستخدم ['s] بعد اسم الشخص أو الاسم المفرد من الكائنات الحية.

ex. - My dad's friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month.
- The giraffe's neck is very tall.

We add (') → after a plural regular noun ending in (s) → (s').

- نضيف ['] بعد أسماء الجمع المنتظم [المنتهى بـ [s] لتكون بهذا الشكل [s'].

ex. - My grandparents' house is behind our house.

---

**Notes : ملاحظات**

**Extra information** معلومات إضافية

- نستخدم "'s" بعد أسماء الجمع الغير منتظم [الغير منتهى بـ s].

- women's bags - children's toys

- نستخدم "'s" بعد الاسم الأخير فقط فى حالة امتلاك شخصين أو أكثر لشئ ما.

- Can you see Amir and Yasser's house ?

- لا نستخدم "'s / s'" مع أسماء الجماد.

- Exercise book - computer screen

- نستخدم أداة الاستفهام "Whose" للسؤال عن الملكية.

- Whose bag is that ? - It's Omar's .

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB Is this a photo of ............ wedding, Samir ?
   a. my b. your c. they d. he

2. SB This is my brother Yehia . ............ hair is short and curly.
   a. Your b. His c. Her d. Their
3. SB I could ask ............ parents for some money for the cinema.
   a. we b. him c. my d. you
4. SB This is our cat. ............ name is Fluffy.
   a. It b. Its c. It's d. It is
5. SB My aunt Salwa and ............ kids were happy.
   a. her b. she c. they d. us

**El-Moasser Exercises**

6. The party was at ............ grandma's house.
   a. his b. she c. hers d. he
7. ............ city is very busy, there's too much traffic.
   a. I b. Me c. Our d. We
8. He bought new chairs. ............ color is black.
   a. They b. Its c. Their d. Our
9. Your ............ tail is black.
   a. cat b. cat's c. cats' d. cats
10. Mrs Mona is ............ .
    a. Saras' mother b. mother Sara
    c. Sara's mother d. mother's Sara
11. Which of ............ relatives is a teacher ?
    a. Malak b. Malak's c. Malaks' d. Malak'
12. My ............ names are Hatem and Fady.
    a. friends' b. friends c. friends's d. friend's
13. ............ aunt has three daughters.
    a. Laila b. Laila's c. Lailas' d. Laila'
14. This is my ............ school. They are proud of it.
    a. cousin b. cousins's c. cousins' d. cousins
15. Whose bag is this ? - It's ............ .
    a. Emads' b. Emads c. Emad's d. Emad'

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

**SB Exercises**

1. SB Write soon and tell me about ............ (**you**) family.
2. SB Hana is my cousin. ............ (**Its**) mom is my aunt Magda.
3. SB The ............ (**brides**) dress is beautiful !
4. SB I'm sending you a photo of me at my ............ (**grandma**) birthday party.

**El-Moasser Exercises**

5. I look like ............ (**mine**) grandma.
6. This is my sister Nour. ............ (**His**) eyes are brown.
7. This is my brother's room. ............ (**Its**) is clean and tidy.
8. I love ............ (**me**) school. I have many friends there.
9. I visited my cousins. ............ (**They**) house is big with a garden.
10. ............ (**Dalia**) grandma is good at cooking.
11. ............ (**Adels**) dad is very tall.
12. My ............ (**brother**) friend is an engineer.
13. Hala and ............ (**Salwa**) mother is a dentist.
14. Ali is very tall, but ............ (**him**) brother is very short.

## 3. Circle the correct word :

1. My uncle has two sons. (**Their / Them**) names are Hady and Ali.
2. Where is (**Sara / Sara's**) house ?
3. Marwan likes to play chess with (**he / his**) grandpa.
4. They use (**sheep's / sheeps'**) wool to make heavy clothes.
5. I'm Baher. (**Me / My**) favorite hobby is football.
6. (**Bears' / Bear's**) claws help them catch fish from water.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand  Apply  Create

### 1 Complete the following dialog :

**Nadia and Sally are talking about a wedding celebration.**

**Nadia** : Hi, Sally. Where were you last night ?

**Sally** : (1) .......................................................... .

**Nadia** : A wedding party ! Whose wedding was it ?

**Sally** : (2) .......................................................... . She wore an amazing wedding dress.

**Nadia** : Congratulations to your cousin ! (3) .......................................................... ?

**Sally** : The groom wore a traditional galabeya which was white.

**Nadia** : How was the wedding service ?

**Sally** : (4) .......................................................... .

**Nadia** : (5) .......................................................... ?

**Sally** : After the signing of the contract, it was time for food and some fun.

**Nadia** : That's great!

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

**From** : Malak
**To** : Tamara
**Subject** : Some family photos

Hi Tamara,
How are you ?

I'm sending you a photo of me at my grandma's birthday party last week. The party was at my grandparents' house and our whole family was **there**. We all had a lot of fun together!

The party showed me that sending messages to your friends and family is fine, but it's not as good as spending time with **them**. You can laugh with them, hug them, and look in their eyes and really listen to them.

Do you have time to meet up with me one afternoon next week ? Maybe on the weekend ? We could go to the shopping mall. There's a shop there that has some beautiful clothes in its windows. I could ask my parents for some money for the cinema or to go to a restaurant. My dad's friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month and it looks great. What do you think ?
Write soon and tell me about your family.
Love,
Malak

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. What is the type of the text ? A/An ............ .
   a. email b. blog c. paragraph d. biography
2. What event was there in Malak's photo ? - A ............ party.
   a. wedding b. birthday c. graduation d. feast
3. The underlined word "**there**" refers to ............ .
   a. Tamara's house b. Malak's school c. grandma's office d. Malak's grandparents' house

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   ..........................................................................................
5. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?
   ..........................................................................................
6. When did Ali open his restaurant ?
   ..........................................................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Which of her ............ is a doctor ? - Her uncle.
   a. friends b. relatives c. neighbors d. teachers
2. We made a big party to ............ my brother's birthday.
   a. win b. celebrate c. build d. ask
3. These are ............ books. She bought them yesterday.
   a. Mona' b. Mona's c. Monas d. Monas'
4. She wears a/an ............ on her arm.
   a. earring b. ring c. bracelet d. necklace
5. The ............ is wearing a beautiful wedding dress.
   a. groom b. bride c. guest d. photographer
6. The mechanics close ............ workshops at 10 pm.
   a. them b. its c. they d. their
7. The ............ eat the wedding cake after the bride and the groom cut it.
   a. assistants b. customers c. guests d. sellers
8. She is my friend. ............ name is Gameela.
   a. She b. He c. Her d. His

9. My ............ is my father or mother's mother.
   a. cousin  b. aunt  c. daughter  d. grandma
10. He has an account on ............ .
   a. radio  b. social media  c. birthday parties  d. TV

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ............ (**He**) favorite fruit is mango. He always eats it.
2. You have to write ............ (**you**) name and address on that paper.
3. ............ (**I**) father is generous.
4. These are the ............ (**childrens**) games.

## 5 Write a reply to Helmi's email about free-time activities of about EIGHTY (80) words :

**Your name is Salah and your email address is salah11@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is helmiman@gmail.com.**

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

| From | |
|---|---|
| To | |
| Subject | |

............................................................ ,
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................

Lessons **3 & 4**

- Families around the world
- Selling things online

SB pages 20 - 23



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| motorbike (n) | دراجة بخارية | recycled materials | مواد معاد تدويرها |
| apartment (n) | شقة سكنية | island (n) | جزيرة |
| skiing (n) | تزلج على الجليد | downstairs (adv) | الطابق السفلى |
| explore (d) (v) | يستكشف | safety rules | قواعد السلامة |
| well-known (adj) | مشهور - معروف | details (n) | تفاصيل |
| personal (adj) | شخصى | date of birth | تاريخ الميلاد |
| honest (adj) | أمين - صادق | furniture (n) | أثاث |
| bank account | حساب بنكى | | |

## Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى بهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

well-known – apartment – motorbike – skiing – downstairs

1. I live in a big .................. of four rooms with my family.
2. My friend and I go .................. in winter.
3. I always ride my .................. to work.
4. We should only buy online from .................. websites.

## Lesson 3 SB pages 20 & 21

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| profile (n) | ملف شخصى | nearby (adv) | قريب |
| hanging out (n) | التنزه | roof (n) | سقف / سطح المبنى |
| countryside (n) | الريف | family life | حياة أسرية |
| coast (n) | ساحل | village (n) | قرية |

## Lesson 4 SB pages 22 & 23

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| way (n) | طريقة - أسلوب | online (adj), (adv) | عبر الإنترنت |
| follow (ed) (v) | يتبع | address (n) | عنوان |
| answer (ed) (v) | يجيب - يرد | shopping bags | أكياس التسوق |
| intercom (n) | انتركوم (نظام اتصال داخل مبنى) | carry (ied) (v) | يحمل |
| website (n) | موقع إلكترونى | fetch (ed) (v) | يجلب - يُحضر |
| age (n) | عمر - سن | rule (n) | قاعدة |
| alone | بمفرده | | |

## Countries دول

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Canada | دولة كندا | Indonesia | دولة إندونيسيا |
| UK = United Kingdom | المملكة المتحدة (بريطانيا) | Italy | دولة إيطاليا |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| feed | يطعم | fed | fed |
| know | يعرف | knew | known |
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |

## Collocations متلازمات لفظية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **take** | a photo | يلتقط صورة | **make** | sure | يتأكد |
| **answer** | the phone | يرد على الهاتف | **go** | skiing | يذهب للتزلج على الجليد |
| **do** | the housework | يقوم بأداء العمل المنزلى | | alone | يذهب بمفرده |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▶ Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| well-known | معروف | famous - popular | unknown | غير معروف |
| true | صحيح | correct | untrue - false | خطأ |
| safe | آمن / محمى | protected | unsafe - dangerous | غير آمن - خطير |
| fetch | يجلب | bring | return | يعيد |
| personal | شخصى | private | public | عام |
| old | قديم | ancient | new | جديد |

### Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| -al | تكوّن الصفة من الاسم | personal شخصي |
| -ty | تكوّن الاسم من الصفة | safety أمان |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He is a well-known scientist. The synonym of "well-known" is "..............".
   a. safe b. different c. unknown d. famous
2. The suffix ".............." forms the adjective of the noun "person".
   a. –ly b. –al c. –ness d. –ment
3. Will you fetch my coat, please ? The word "fetch" means ".............." .
   a. protect b. follow c. bring d. open

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 remember – remind

* remember (v) — يتذكر من تلقاء نفسه
  - SB The next thing to **remember** is : always be honest. *lesson 4 SB page 22*
* remind (v) — يُذكر شخص آخر
  - Ahmed always **reminds** me to do my homework.

### 2 Online - offline

* online (adv) — - عبر الانترنت
  - SB Why don't you sell some of this old furniture **online** ? *Listening on lesson 4 SB page 22*
* online (adj) + noun — - متصل بالانترنت
  - Noha likes doing **online** shopping.
* offline (adj) — - غير متصل بالانترنت
  - Ali is **offline**. He can't text me now.

### 3 explore - discover

* explore (d) (v) — يستكشف [مكان]
  - SB We like to get out of the city to **explore** the coast and islands near Naples.
* discover (ed) (v) — يكتشف
  - Colombus **discovered** America in 1492. *Lesson 3 SB page 20*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | Prepositions حروف الجر | |
|---|---|---|---|
| environmentally friendly | صديق للبيئة | come down | ينزل - يهبط |
| follow rules | يتبع القواعد | get some money for | يحصل على المال مقابل |
| buzz the intercom | يضغط على زر الإنتركم | in fact | فى الحقيقة |
| as long as | طالما - بشرط أن | in a public place | فى مكان عام / مفتوح |
| share personal information | يشارك معلومات شخصية | in a good condition | فى حالة جيدة |
| across the road | فى الشارع المقابل | in person | شخصيًا - بشكل شخصى |
| get around = walk around | يتجول | on the other side of | على الجانب الآخر من |
| go for walks | يذهب للتنزه | | |



# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 3 SB page 20

### Family life around the world

1. Isabella lives with her family in an apartment.
2. They go out of the city to **explore**[1] the coast and **islands**[2].
3. Liam lives with her family in a big house with a garden.
4. In summer, they ride their bikes and they **go skiing**[3] in winter.
5. Komang lives with his big family on an island.
6. His family's favorite thing is to go to the beach to fly kites.
7. Alice's family often go for walks in the countryside.
8. Their house is made of **recycled materials**[4].

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) يستكشف | (2) جزر |
| (3) يذهب للتزلج | (4) مواد معاد تدويرها |

## Lesson 4 SB page 22

### Selling things online

1. Seif wants his grandpa to sell some of his old **furniture**[1] online.
2. Grandpa decides to sell a large table.
3. Seif gives his grandpa a few **rules**[2] to sell and buy things online safely.
4. Always use a **well-known**[3] website to buy or sell something.
5. Make sure all the information you give about something you're selling is true.
6. Never share personal information like your name, address or bank account details.
7. If you have to meet someone in person, meet them in a public place and don't go **alone**[4].

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) أثاث | (2) قواعد |
| (3) معروف | (4) بمفردك |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Family life in another country
* Selling things online

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 20

**Isabella :** Hello, my name's Isabella. I'm from Naples, a big city in the south of Italy. I live with my mom, dad, and brother in an apartment. My grandparents live just across the road! We have a car, but my brother usually gets around on his **motorbike**[1]. At the weekends, we like to get out of the city to **explore**[2] the coast and **islands**[3] near Naples.

**Liam :** Hi, I'm Liam. I'm from Toronto in Canada. I live with my mom, brother, and two sisters. Oh, and our dog, Bobby! But our grandparents live on the other side of Canada, so we only see them in the school holidays. Our house is big and has a garden. We have a car, too. It's fun **hanging out**[4] with my family. In the summer, we ride our bikes. In the winter, we **go skiing**[5]!

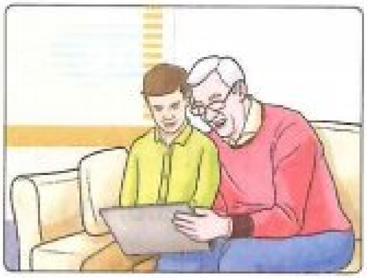
**Komang:** Hi, my name's Komang. My family and I live on an Island in Indonesia. It's a big family! There's my mom, dad, brother and grandma, my aunt and uncle, and my three cousins. We all live together in a **traditional**[6] house. We don't have a car, but we have two motorbikes. Our favorite thing to do together is to go to the beach to fly kites!

**Alice :** Hello. My name is Alice and I live with my family in a village in the UK. In my family, there's me and my sister, and our mom. Our grandparents live nearby, and we often all go for walks in the **countryside**[7] together. Our house is very new and modern – I call it our "green house" because it's made of **recycled materials**[8] and has solar panels on the roof.

(1) دراجة بخارية | (2) يستكشف | (3) جزر | (4) يخرج للتنزه | (5) يذهب للتزلج | (6) تقليدي | (7) الريف | (8) مواد معاد تدويرها

## Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 22



**Seif** : Grandpa, why don't you sell some of this old furniture **online**[1]? That way you can get some money for it .

**Grandpa** : I don't know ... Is it safe ?

**Seif** : It's safe as long as you follow a few **rules**[2].

**Grandpa** : Can you tell me what they are ?

**Seif** : I can, yes. First, always use a well-known **website**[3] to buy or sell something. Here's a good one. OK, what do you want to sell ?

**Grandpa** : How about this table ?

**Seif** : Great. Can you give me your phone so I can take a photo of it ? Thanks. OK, the next thing to remember is : always be **honest**[4] . Make sure all the information you give about something you're selling is true.

**Grandpa** : Well, this is a large table from the 1970s. It's **in good condition**[5].

**Seif** : OK. Now, another very important rule is : don't share personal information, like your name, date of birth, address, or **bank account**[6] details.

**Grandpa** : Got it. What happens next ?

**Seif** : Someone will send you a message if they want to buy the table.

**Grandpa** : And then will I meet the person to give it to them ?

**Seif** : It's better to send it to them. **In fact**[7], that's another important rule. If you have to meet someone, meet them in a **public**[8] place and don't go alone.

**Grandpa** : Thanks, Seif. We never did this when I was your age!

(1) عبر الإنترنت | (2) قواعد | (3) موقع الكترونى | (4) أمين - صادق | (5) فى حالة جيدة | (6) حساب بنكى | (7) فى الحقيقة | (8) عام - مفتوح

## Exercise on Vocabulary

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**Key vocabulary**

1. You have to follow the ............ rules to protect yourself on roads.
   a. housework b. profile c. town d. safety
2. It's important to check your bank ............ details regularly.
   a. view b. account c. instrument d. condition

3. ............ is a sport that you can do over snow.
   a. Skiing b. Golf c. Tennis d. Swimming
4. The carpenter used high-quality wood to make us new ............ .
   a. devices b. furniture c. accounts d. apartments
5. Using ............ materials is a good way to help our environment.
   a. recycled b. unhealthy c. harmful d. bad

**SB Exercises**

6. SB Never share ............ information like your name or address online.
   a. famous b. personal c. public d. popular
7. SB Make sure the information you give about something you're selling online is ............ .
   a. poor b. true c. personal d. old
8. SB I would like to know which family members ............ the housework.
   a. make b. give c. go d. do

**El-Moasser Exercises**

9. ............ people always tell the truth.
   a. Safe b. Alone c. Honest d. Far
10. A ............ is a vehicle that has two wheels and an engine.
    a. van b. motorbike c. ferry d. plane
11. She didn't find anyone at home, so she was ............ .
    a. important b. true c. old d. alone
12. The museum is a/an ............ place. Everyone can visit it.
    a. online b. personal c. public d. private

**▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

13. It's a very old camera, but it's still in a good ............ .
    a. condition b. place c. time d. health
14. This factory is environmentally ............ because it doesn't damage the environment.
    a. healthy b. officially c. friendly d. near
15. He sold his old car and ............ some money for it.
    a. did b. got c. gave d. shared
16. "Forget" is the opposite of " ............ ".
    a. learn b. teach c. remember d. remind

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### Asking and answering questions about family life in other countries :

أسئلة وإجاباتها عن الحياة الأسرية فى بلاد أخرى :

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Where do they live ? أين هم يعيشون ؟ | They live in Toronto in Canada. هم يعيشوا فى مدينة تورونتو فى كندا. |
| 2. Who do they live with ? من يعيش معهم ؟ | Their aunt, uncle and their cousins. يعيش معهم العمة والعم وأولاد عمومتهم. |
| 3. What type of place do they live in ? ما نوع المكان الذى يعيشون فيه ؟ | They live in an apartment. هم يعيشوا فى شقة سكنية. |
| 4. Where do their grandparents live ? أين يعيش اجدادهم ؟ | They live on the other side of Canada. هم يعيشون فى الجانب الآخر من كندا. |
| 5. What are their favorite activities ? ما هى أنشطتهم المفضلة ؟ | They like to go skiing in winter and ride bikes in summer. يحبون التزلج على الجليد فى فصل الشتاء وركوب الدراجات فى الصيف. |

### Talking about selling things online :

التحدث عن بيع الأشياء عبر الإنترنت :

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| - Is it safe to sell things online ? هل بيع الأشياء عبر الإنترنت شىء آمن ؟ | - Yes, it's safe as long as you follow safety rules. نعم، مادمت تتبع قواعد الأمان. |
| - How can I sell things online safely ? كيف يمكننى بيع أشياء عبر الإنترنت بأمان ؟ | - Using a well-known website can help you. استخدام موقع إلكترونى معروف يمكن أن يساعدك. |
| - Can you tell me more about safety rules ? هل من الممكن أن تخبرنى أكثر عن قواعد الأمان ؟ | - Of course. Make sure the information you give about something you're selling is true. بالطبع. عليك أن تتأكد من أن المعلومات التى تقدمها عن الشىء الذى ترغب فى بيعه صحيحة. |

# III Language

## Remember تذكر

### Can / Can't يستطيع / لا يستطيع

**Usage** الاستخدام

**Expressing ability and inability.** التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة.

**Formation** التكوين

Subject الفاعل + can / cannot (can't) + inf. مصدر الفعل.

**ex.** - Hassan can speak four languages.
- I can't watch the football match at home.

**Asking about ability** السؤال عن القدرة

Yes / No question السؤال بـ(هل)

Can + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

**ex.** - Can you play chess ?
* Yes, I can. * No, I can't.

### "Can" and "Will" for requests استخدام "Will" و "Can" عند الطلب

**Usage** الاستخدام

**When we ask someone to do something for us ... we use "Can you ... ?" or "Will you".**

نستخدم (Can you ... ?) أو (Will you ... ?) عندما نطلب من شخص ما أن يفعل شيء لنا.

**Formation** التكوين

| Can you / Will you | main verb (inf.) | object pronoun / name | the rest of the request ... ? |
|---|---|---|---|
| Can you | help | me | with my homework ? |
| Will you | feed | the cat | , please ? |

## Replying for a request الرد على الطلب

### 1 Positive replies عند قبول الطلب

- We don't usually use **"can"** in positive replies. عادة لا نستخدم "can" في الردود المثبتة.

**ex.** - Will you help me carry this bag ?

- Yes, of course. نعم، بالطبع. • Sure, no problem. بالتأكيد، لا توجد مشكلة.

### 2 Negative replies عند رفض الطلب

- **We usually give a reason for our negative replies to be more polite.**

غالبًا ما نعطى سبب عند الرد بالرفض على الطلب حتى يكون الرفض بطريقة مهذبة.

**ex.** - Can you help me clean the house ?

- No, sorry, I'm busy. I'll do it later.
- Sorry, I can't at the moment. I have to do my homework.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB ............ you help me with my phone please, Sherif ? - Sure, no problem.
   a. Is b. Are c. Can d. Does
2. SB ............ you open the window ? It's hot.
   a. Does b. Will c. Is d. Has
3. SB Can you ............ the dog this evening ?
   a. feeding b. feeds c. feed d. fed
4. SB Sorry, I ............ help you at the moment. I'm studying.
   a. can't b. did c. will d. didn't
5. SB Can you ............ these bags for me, please ?
   a. carries b. carry c. carried d. carrying
6. SB Will you ............ my coat ? It's in the hall.
   a. fetching b. fetches c. fetched d. fetch

El-Moasser Exercises

7. I ........... ride a bike. It's really hard!
   a. did   b. can't   c. will   d. am not
8. ........... you take the cat to the vet ? - No, sorry. I'm busy.
   a. Will   b. Has   c. Does   d. Is
9. Can you ........... the guitar ?
   a. playing   b. to play   c. play   d. plays
10. ........... you buy some cheese, please ? - Yes, of course.
   a. Will   b. Did   c. Are   d. Does
11. ........... you help me with my homework, please ? - Sure, I can do it now.
   a. Are   b. Has   c. Did   d. Can

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. SB ........... (**Did**) you open the door, please ? - Yes, of course.
2. SB ........... (**You can**) help me with my laptop ?
3. SB ........... (**Are**) you answer the phone, please ? - Yes, of course.
4. SB Can you ........... (**asked**) your brother to help, too ?

El-Moasser Exercises

5. ........... (**You will**) show me the photos ? - Sure, no problem.
6. **A :** ........... (**Did**) you play with me ? **B :** No, I can't, I'm busy.
7. Can you ........... (**gave**) me the bottle of water, please ?
8. Will you ........... (**takes**) out the trash ?
9. ........... (**You will**) pay for the groceries, please ?
10. ........... (**Did**) you bake cookies for the party ? – No, I can't. I'll do it later.

## 3. Complete the dialog using the words in brackets :

**Nabila :** Hello ?
**Mom :** Nabila ? It's Mom. I'm downstairs. (1) ..................... (you / open / door), please ?
**Nabila :** Yes, of course. Is it open now ?
**Mom :** Yes, it is, but I have a lot of bags. (2) ..................... (you / carry / them) for me ?
**Nabila :** Sure, no problem. I'll come down now.
**Mom :** And (3) ..................... (you / ask / brother) to help, too ?
**Nabila :** Taymoor! Come and help Mom with the shopping bags!

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

### 1 Complete the following dialog :

**Mom is busy, so she asks Rania to help her.**

Mom : I am busy this week, so you have to help me, Rania.
Rania : (1) ........................................................................ ?
Mom : You can feed the cat. Can you do that ?
Rania : (2) ........................................................................ . But there isn't enough food for the cat.
Mom : (3) ........................................................................ ?
Rania : Yes, I can buy it from the pet shop.
Mom : Will you buy us a bag of rice from the supermarket, too ?
Rania : (4) ........................................................................ .
Mom : Great! How will you go to the pet shop ?
Rania : (5) ........................................................................ . I like walking.

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Nader. All my family love my older brother. My older brother is called Youssef. Youssef is always helpful. He always helps around the house. He <u>feeds</u> our cat, carries the shopping bags, and opens the door for guests. <u>He</u> even helps me with my homework sometimes. He is very good at technology, so he always helps my mom with her phone. On the weekends, we go to the theme park. We play with our friends and enjoy a lot. Sometimes, Youssef likes to go to the library and borrow some books. Reading is his favorite hobby. He can swim well, too. Youssef is really a great brother.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The underlined word "<u>feeds</u>" means to "..........".
   a. brush b. clean c. give food d. throw away
2. This text is about the writer's .......... .
   a. younger sister b. older brother c. best friend d. grandparents
3. Youssef is .......... at technology.
   a. good b. bad c. slow d. not good

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What does the underlined pronoun "<u>He</u>" refer to ?
   ........................................................................
5. What is Youssef's favorite hobby ?
   ........................................................................
6. How often does Youssef help the writer with his homework ?
   ........................................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Our house is environmentally ........ because it protects the environment.
   a. friendly b. funny c. ugly d. scary
2. I like to go ........ on snow in winter.
   a. diving b. swimming c. skiing d. driving
3. SB ........ you carry the shopping bags for me ?
   a. Have b. Does c. Are d. Can
4. We live in a/an ........ on the third floor.
   a. village b. apartment c. valley d. farm
5. Can you ........ the newspaper loudly for me ?
   a. read b. reading c. to read d. reads
6. ........ the phone. Someone is calling.
   a. Throw b. Answer c. Open d. Help
7. Will you ........ the dog ? It's really hungry.
   a. feeds b. feeding c. feed d. fed
8. You will be ........ online as long as you follow the safety rules.
   a. scary b. slow c. weak d. safe
9. Wear a helmet when you ride your ........ to be safe.
   a. boat b. motorbike c. ship d. car
10. She can't get to her friend's house because she forgets her ........ .
   a. address b. date of birth c. name d. hobby

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Can you ........ (**turned**) on the TV, please ?
2. Will you ........ (**sets**) the table for lunch, please ?
3. ........ (**Are**) you tell me the way to the park ? - Of course.
4. **A :** ........ (**Did**) you make some juice for me ? **B :** Sorry, I'll do it later.

## 5 Write a paragraph of about (60 - 80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

***"Selling things online"***

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

Lessons **5 & 6**

- Literature
- Writing

SB pages 24 - 27



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| photography (n) | فن التصوير | forum (n) | منتدى /مجلة |
| friendship (n) | صداقة | theme (n) | فكرة / موضوع |
| challenge (n) | تحدى | website (n) | موقع إلكترونى |
| meaningful (adj) | هادف - معبر | comment (n) | تعليق |
| communication (n) | تواصل | celebrate (d) (v) | يحتفل |
| season (n) | موسم | goals (n) | أهداف |
| top student | طالب متفوق | post (ed) (v), (n) | ينشر - منشور |

### Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

comments – websites – meaningful – goals – forum

1. She writes a story that has a ................ lesson.
2. I always score many ................ when I play football.
3. All her friends love her. She always writes positive ................ on her friends' posts.
4. When I go online, I visit a lot of ................ to get information .

### Lesson 5 SB pages 24 & 25

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ability (n) | قدرة | plan (ned) (v) (n) | يخطط - خطة |
| reply (n) | رد | nature (n) | الطبيعة |
| schoolwork (n) | الواجب المدرسى | real (adj) | حقيقى |
| offline (adj) , (adv) | غير متصل بالإنترنت | however (adv) | ومع ذلك |
| news (n) | أخبار | worried (adj) | قلق |
| specific (adj) | محدد / خاص | importance (n) | أهمية |
| differently (adv) | بطريقة أخرى [مختلفة] | continue (d) (v) | يستمر |
| several (adj) | عديد | pass (ed) (v) | يمر - يعبر |

## Lesson 6 SB pages 26 & 27

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| great (adj) | رائع - عظيم | special (adj) | مميز - خاص |
| proud (adj) | فخور | little (adj) | صغير السن |
| fantastic (adj) | رائع | emojis (n) | الرموز التعبيرية |
| bro = brother (n) | أخ | | |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| deal | يتعامل | dealt | dealt |
| let | يسمح | let | let |
| hear | يسمع | heard | heard |

## Study these definitions
ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **website** | a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities | موقع الكترونى |
| **chatting** | talking to someone in a friendly way, often online | دردشة |
| **photography** | the art or practice of taking pictures with a camera | فن التصوير |
| **challenge** | something that is difficult and tests your ability | تحدى |
| **communication** | the act of talking or writing to share information with others | تواصل |
| **an online forum** | is when you come together with other people online to discuss a topic you are all interested in | منتدى عبر الانترنت |

## Collocations
متلازمات لفظية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **make** | friends | يكوّن صداقات | **do** | activities | يقوم بأنشطة |
| | plans | يضع خطط | | challenge | يقوم بتحدى |
| **feel** | worried | يشعر بالقلق | **go** | online | يتصل بالإنترنت |

## Vocabulary Study

### Synonyms and Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| worried | قلق / متوتر | nervous | calm / relaxed | هادئ |
| fantastic | رائع | amazing/wonderful | terrible/awful | فظيع - شنيع |

| strong قوى | powerful | weak ضعيف |
|---|---|---|
| meaningful هادف / معبر | useful | useless غير مفيد |
| deal يتعامل | manage | ignore يتجاهل |

**Prefixes & Suffixes** مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –ion | تحول الفعل الى اسم | communication تواصل |
| –ful | تحول الاسم لصفه | meaningful هادف - ذو معنى |
| –ing | تحول الفعل إلى اسم | understanding فهم |
| mis– | تعطى عكس الكلمة | misunderstanding سوء الفهم |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. We form the adjective of the noun "meaning" by adding the suffix "............" .
   a. –ing b. –al c. –ful d. –ness
2. The synonym of the word "fantastic" is "............" .
   a. terrible b. wonderful c. awful d. worried
3. To get the noun of the verb "communicate", we add the suffix "............" .
   a. –less b. –ous c. –er d. –ion
4. The antonym of the word "strong" is "............" .
   a. relaxed b. weak c. worried d. amazed
5. We add the suffix "............" to form the noun from the verb "understand".
   a. –er b. –ing c. –ment d. –less

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 photo – photographer – photography

* **photo (n)** صورة فوتوغرافية

- I'm sending you a **photo** of me at my birthday party.

* **photographer (n)** مصور فوتوغراف (وظيفة)

- SB She often shared her **photos** on a website for young photographers.

* **photography (n)** فن التصوير

- SB Salma loved **photography** so much.

*Reading on lesson 5 SB page 24*

## 2 decide to – decide on

* **decide to + inf.** المصدر — يقرر أن
  - SB They **decided to** do a 30-day photography challenge. *Reading on lesson 5 SB page 24*
* **decide on = choose (v)** — يحدد / يختار
  - Salma **decided on** the green dress and bought it.

## 3 friend – friendship – friendly

* **friend (n)** — صديق / رفيق
  - Ahmed and Alaa are **friends**. *Reading on lesson 5 SB page 24*
* **friendship (n)** — صداقة
  - SB They knew that their **friendship** was real and meaningful.
* **friendly (adj)** — ودود / طيب
  - Ayman is a very **friendly** man. *Reading on lesson 5 SB page 24*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | Prepositions حروف الجر | |
|---|---|---|---|
| closer friends | أصدقاء مقربين | in common | مشترك |
| a 15-year-old girl | بنت ذات خمسه عشر عاما | focus on | يركز على |
| a 30-day photography challenge | تحدى التصوير الفوتوغرافى لمدة ٣٠ يوم | deal with | يتعامل مع |
| | | in a friendly way | بطريقة ودودة |
| a girl of her age | بنت بنفس عمرها | hear from | يسمع من |
| stopped answering | توقف عن الرد | for me | لأجلى |
| give special presents | يقدم هدايا مميزة | proud of | فخور بـ |
| Well done ! | أحسنت | good at | جيد فى |
| Have a great birthday ! | أتمنى لك عيد ميلاد رائعًا ! | talk about | يتحدث عن |
| He's always there for me. | دائمًا فى عونى. | share information with | يشارك معلومات مع |
| face to face | وجها لوجه | | |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 5 SB page 24

### Friends online

1. Salma is a 15-year-old girl from Egypt.
2. Salma loves **photography**[1] and she often shares her photos on a website.
3. Ashly, a girl from Australia, started to chat with Salma.
4. Salma and Ashly had a lot of things **in common**[2].
5. They both loved taking pictures of nature.
6. They decided to do a 30-day photography **challenge**[3] together.
7. They had to take a photo on a specific **theme**[4] and share it every day.
8. One day, Ashly stopped answering Salma's messages.
9. Salma was worried and sad that their **friendship**[5] might be over.
10. A few days passed and finally, Ashly replied.
11. Ashly said she had been **dealing with**[6] some difficult family news.
12. They continued their challenge.
13. They knew that their friendship was real and **meaningful**[7] though it was online.

## Lesson 6 SB page 26

### Mazen's post about Mido's birthday

1. Mazen wrote a post about his brother, Mido's birthday.
2. Mido is 15 years old.
3. Mido is a great brother because he is always helpful to Mazen and their little sister.
4. Mido is a top student and an amazing football player.
5. Mazen is so **proud**[8] of Mido.
6. Mido scored 16 goals last season for the school team.
7. Mazen wished a great birthday for Mido.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (1) التصوير | (2) مشترك | (3) تحدى | (4) موضوع - فكرة |
| (5) صداقة | (6) يتعامل مع | (7) هادف | (8) فخور |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Friendship
* A birthday post

## II Skills

### 1. Reading and Listening

### Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 5 SB page 24

#### Friends Online

Salma, a 15-year- old girl from Egypt, loved **photography**[1]. She often shared her photos on a **website**[2] for young **photographers**[3]. One day, she got a **comment**[4] from Ashly, a girl of her age from Australia, who liked her photos. They started **chatting**[5] and found out they had a lot in common. They both loved taking pictures of nature.

Soon, they were talking every day, and decided to do a 30 - day photography **challenge**[6] together. Each day, they had to take a photo on a specific theme and share it. They enjoyed the challenge and became closer friends.

However, one day, Ashly suddenly stopped answering Salma's messages. Salma felt worried. She sent **several**[7] messages, but there was no reply. Salma felt sad that their friendship might be over.

Salma couldn't **focus on**[8] her schoolwork or her photography. After talking with her mother, Salma decided to send a message, letting Ashly know that she was there for **her**. She wrote,"Hi Ashly, I hope you're okay. If you need someone to talk to, I'm here for you."

A few more days passed, and finally, Ashly replied. She explained that she had been dealing with some difficult family news and needed some time offline. Salma was happy to hear from Ashly again. They talked about what had happened and made plans to continue their challenge.

Salma and Ashly now had a better understanding of the importance of communication and being there for each other. They knew that their **friendship**[9], though online, was real and meaningful.

(1) فن التصوير
(2) موقع (إلكتروني)
(3) مصور فوتوغرافي
(4) تعليق
(5) دردشة
(6) تحدى
(7) العديد
(8) يركز على
(9) الصداقة

**Choose the correct answer.**

- Understanding reference. فهم ما يشير اليه الضمير.

Learn 1. The pronoun it in the text refers to " a ............".
a. camera b. photo c. chat d. challenge

Practice 2. The underlined pronoun **"her"** refers to ............ .
a. Salma b. Ashly c. Salma's mom d. Ashly's mom

on Lesson 6 SB page 26

## Mazen's post about Mido's birthday



Mazen

1 d •

Happy birthday to my **fantastic**[1] brother Mido! He's 15 today ! He's a great brother because he's always there for me and our little sister when we need help. Thanks, bro! And of course, we all know he's **a top student**[2] and also an amazing **football player**[3] - 16 **goals**[4] last season for our school **team**[5] ! Well done Mido, I'm so proud of you. Have a great birthday !

18 comments

Like    Comment

**Answer the following questions.**

- Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات.

Learn 1. Who is Mido ?
- *He is Mazen's brother.*

Practice 2. How old is Mido ?
..........................................................................

3. What sport is Mido good at ?
..........................................................................

(1) رائع/ عظيم (2) طالب متفوق (3) لاعب كرة قدم (4) أهداف (5) فريق

## Exercise on Vocabulary

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**Key vocabulary**

1. Omar could climb the mountain. It is a difficult ............ .
   a. chatting b. challenge c. website d. photography
2. My teacher wrote useful ............ on my work.
   a. teams b. designs c. comments d. seasons
3. He is a talented football player. He scores a lot of ............ .
   a. experiments b. poets c. goals d. websites

4. I will ............ my birthday with my friends at home.
   a. sell    b. celebrate    c. communicate    d. send
5. They have been friends for years. What an amazing ............ !
   a. study    b. experiment    c. project    d. friendship

SB Exercises

6. SB She sent several messages, but there was no ............ .
   a. challenge    b. guest    c. reply    d. photo
7. SB Salma and Ashly now had a better understanding of the ............ of communication.
   a. importance    b. statues    c. photography    d. comment
8. SB I felt very ............ when my friend stopped replying to my messages.
   a. calm    b. worried    c. excited    d. useful

El-Moasser Exercises

9. They shared their new photos on the ............ .
   a. field    b. building    c. website    d. office
10. He is an honest student and we are ............ of him.
    a. proud    b. worried    c. upset    d. famous
11. She wrote a nice ............ on my last post .
    a. season    b. comment    c. celebration    d. website

**Definitions**

12. ............ means talking to someone in a friendly way, often online.
    a. Sharing    b. Meeting    c. Chatting    d. Searching
13. ............ is the act of talking or writing to share information with others.
    a. Exploring    b. Communication    c. Understanding    d. Challenge

**Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. Twins have many things ............ common.
    a. in    b. on    c. at    d. of
15. You have to ............ with your problems. Don't give up.
    a. hit    b. deal    c. feel    d. take
16. My ............ with Ayman is very strong.
    a. friend    b. friend's    c. friendship    d. friends'

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### Asking and answering questions about friendship online :

السؤال والإجابة عن أسئلة عن الصداقة عبر الإنترنت :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| - Have you ever made a friend online ?<br>هل صادقت عبر الإنترنت من قبل ؟ | - Yes, I made friends and we had a lot in common.<br>نعم صادقت شخص وبيننا أشياء مشتركة كثيرة. |
| - Where did you meet your friends online ?<br>أين تقابلت مع أصدقاءك عبر الإنترنت ؟ | - On a website for young photographers.<br>عبر موقع إلكترونى للمصورين الصغار. |
| - Do you think making friends online is a good thing ?<br>هل تعتقد أن تكوين صداقات عبر الإنترنت شيء جيد ؟ | - Sure, our friendship is real and meaningful.<br>بالتأكيد، صداقتنا حقيقية وهادفة. |

## 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

### A social media post

**How to write a social media post**

كيفية كتابة منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى

- **Write short phrases.** اكتب عبارات قصيرة.
  (you don't need whole sentences) لا تحتاج إلى جمل كاملة
- **Use informal Language.**
  ex. - Thanks, bro !
- **Use emojis and symbols to show how you are feeling.**
  استخدم رموز تعبيرية لتوضح ما تشعر به.
  ex. - 😁 → (funny / smiley faces)
  - ❤️ → (hearts to show you like something)
- **Use exclamation points ( ! ) and question marks ( ? ).**
  استخدم علامات التعجب وعلامات الاستفهام.
  ↓
  For emphasis (تؤكد) or to show you are joking. لتؤكد أو توضح أنك تمزح.

  **Remember,** you must be 13 or older before you are allowed to have a social media account!
  تذكر انه يجب أن تبلغ من العمر ١٣ عام أو أكثر ليسمح لك بالحصول على حساب الكترونى على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى.

## How to plan your post كيف تخطط لكتابة المنشور

**▸ Answering these wh- questions can help you plan your post :**

سوف تساعدك الاجابة عن هذه الاسئلة فى كتابة المنشور :

1. Who are you writing about ?
2. Why are you writing about the person ?
3. What do you like about them ?
4. What are they good at ?
5. How do you feel about them ?

**▸ Use these useful expressions to help you :** استخدم تلك التعبيرات لتساعدك :

- Congratulations! مبروك / تهانينا !
- Well done! أحسنت!
- I'm so proud of / happy for you أنا فخور بك / سعيد لإجلك.
- Have a great day! أتمنى لك يوم رائع!

## Pop Quiz on Writing

- **Plan and write a social media post of (80 - 100) words to congratulate someone.**

**- You can use these expressions :**
- Congratulations !
- I'm so proud of ................... .
- Well done !
- Have a great day !



...................

1 d •

.............................................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................................

Like Comment

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand   Apply   Create

## 1 Listen and answer the questions :

استمع وأجب عن الأسئلة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب]

1. How old was Salma ?

.......................................................................................................

2. Where was Salma from ?

.......................................................................................................

3. What did Salma love ?

.......................................................................................................

4. Where did she often share her photos ?

.......................................................................................................

## 2 Complete the following dialog using the words in brackets :

**Talat and Mazen are talking about the importance of social media.**

**Talat** : What do you think of social media ?

**Mazen** : I think (1) ........................................ (is / helpful).

**Talat** : Helpful ! (2) ........................................ (Why / think) it is helpful?

**Mazen** : Because it helps me communicate with other people.

**Talat** : (3) ........................................ (you / have / friends) online ?

**Mazen** : Yes, I have many friends online.

**Talat** : Do you have any hobbies in common ?

**Mazen** : (4) ........................................ (I / do). We both like photography.

**Talat** : Where do you share the photos you take ?

**Mazen** : I (5) ........................................ (share / websites). There are many famous websites for young photographers.

## 3 Match the words to their definitions:

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. photography | a. talking to someone in a friendly way, often online |
| 2. challenge | b. the art or practice of taking pictures with a camera |
| 3. website | c. the act of talking or writing to share information with others |
| 4. communication | d. something that is difficult and tests your ability |
| | e. a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities |

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Can you ............ the dishes after lunch, please ?
   a. washing b. wash c. washes d. to wash
2. The story was ............ . We learned a lesson from it.
   a. meaningful b. colorful c. active d. ancient
3. A/An ............ is a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities.
   a. exhibition b. website c. challenge d. bakery
4. ............ is my favorite hobby. I can take pictures with my camera.
   a. Swimming b. Painting c. Photography d. Communication
5. I ............ plans for the summer vacation.
   a. made b. bought c. carried d. sold
6. I thought it was a/an ............ bird before I touched the statue!
   a. worried b. real c. informal d. specific
7. Salma was ............ and happy when she knew her exam results.
   a. relaxed b. angry c. upset d. worried
8. I'm sure, you can ............ with your problems correctly.
   a. come b. deal c. feed d. read
9. ............ turn off the laptop, Sama ?
   a. I'll b. You will c. Will you d. Are you
10. A ............ is something that is difficult and tests your ability.
    a. conversation b. message c. website d. challenge

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Can you ............ (**sent**) me a story to read ?
2. Will you ............ (**took**) us to the theme park, dad ?
3. She ............ (**can**) work now because she is tired.
4. ............ (**You can**) bring the cake from the bakery ? - Of course, I can.

## 6 Write a social media post to congratulate your friend on his birthday of EIGHTY - ONE HUNDRED (80 - 100) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................

# Review on unit 2

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

## Vocabulary

**Lessons 1 & 2**

| | |
|---|---|
| wedding | زفاف |
| bride | عروسة |
| groom | عريس |
| photographer | مصور |
| wedding dress | فستان زفاف |
| guests | ضيوف |
| contract | عقد |
| party | حفلة |
| relatives | أقارب |
| amazing | مدهش |
| gift | هدية |
| necklace | قلادة |

**Lessons 3 & 4**

| | |
|---|---|
| apartment | شقة سكنية |
| motorbike | دراجة بخارية |
| environmentally friendly | صديق للبيئة |
| furniture | أثاث |
| details | تفاصيل |
| rules | قواعد |

**Lessons 5 & 6**

| | |
|---|---|
| photography | فن التصوير |
| friendship | صداقة |
| challenge | تحدى |
| chatting | دردشة |
| website | موقع إلكترونى |
| celebrate | يحتفل |
| proud | فخور |
| social media | وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى |
| communication | تواصل |
| real | حقيقى |
| share | يشارك |
| messages | رسائل |

## Language

### 1. Determiners

my - your - his - her - its - our - their

- My little brother is called Nader. His eyes are brown.
- Our house is next to the park.
- My mom is a teacher. Her name is Mona.

### 2. Possessive ('s) , (s')

• تستخدم ['s] مع الأسماء المفردة (الأشخاص - الحيوانات) :

ex. - a girl's name - a cat's tail

• تستخدم [s'] مع الأسماء الجمع المنتهية بـ [s] بإضافة ['] فقط :

ex. - a girls' school - cats' legs

• تستخدم ['s] مع الأسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة وغير المنتهية بـ [s] :

ex. - men's jackets
- women's pens

### 3. Can / Will for requests

Can / Will + you + inf. .. ?

Can you help me with my laptop ?
Will you show me the photos ?
- Yes, of course.
- Sure, no problem.
- No, sorry. I'm busy. I'll do it later.

## Speaking

**1. Talking about family life in other countries :**

• Can you tell me about your family life ?
- We live in an apartment.
- I enjoy having picnics with my family.

• How do families in Canada spend their free time ?
- In Canada, they enjoy skiing in their free time.

• What do families like to do together in Indonesia ?
- They enjoy flying kites together.

**2. Talking about selling things online :**

A : Is it safe to sell things online ?
B : Yes, as long as you follow safety rules.

Skills

## 1 Reading Comprehension

### Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة (تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية للنص).

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Read and answer the questions :**

Last weekend in Luxor, my cousin Amira got married to Ayman. It was a really fun day. I have a large family and more than half of the wedding guests were members of my family! I loved seeing my whole family come together to celebrate with Amira and Ayman.

The wedding service was really beautiful. Amira looked so beautiful and her wedding dress was amazing. Ayman's traditional galabeya was white. The bride and groom looked very happy!

- What is the main idea of the passage ?

Or What does the passage talk about ?

Or Give a suitable title for the passage.

.......................................................................

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية بسبب وجود عدة أفكار تم عرضها فى الفقرة.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن كل الأفكار تدور حول موضوع واحد محدد هو (الفكرة الرئيسية) أو (العنوان المناسب) للفقرة.

## 2 Speaking

### Selling things online

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialog) قدرتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Complete the following dialog :**

**Mazen and his grandpa are talking about selling things online.**

**Mazen** : Grandpa, why don't you sell some of this old furniture online ?

**Grandpa** : I don't know how. (1) .................................... ?

**Mazen** : Yes. It's safe as long as you follow a few rules.

**Grandpa** : (2) .................................................... ?

**Mazen** : Yes, I can. First, always use a well-known website. What do you want to sell ?

**Grandpa** : (3) .................................................... .

**Mazen** : Great! Can you give me information about the table ?

**Grandpa** : (4) .................................... .

**Mazen** : OK. Now, another very important rule is don't share personal information.

**Grandpa** : (5) .................................................... .

التحدى تريد السؤال عن (بيع الأشياء عبر الإنترنت) وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

# General Exercises on unit 2

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب]

1. Mido is the speaker's ........... .
   a. father b. uncle c. brother d. grandpa
2. Mido is a ........... student.
   a. top b. bottom c. lazy d. nervous
3. Mido is a ........... player.
   a. tennis b. volleyball c. handball d. football
4. He always scores many ........... .
   a. problems b. goals c. questions d. birthdays

## 2 Complete the following dialog :

**Amany is asking Dina about her sister Magda.**

**Amany** : Hello, Dina. I like your photo on social media.
**Dina** : (1) ............................................................ .
**Amany** : Who is in the photo with you ?
**Dina** : (2) ............................................................ .
**Amany** : Your sister really looks like you ! (3) ............................................................ ?
**Dina** : She is thirteen years old.
**Amany** : (4) ............................................................ ?
**Dina** : She is called Magda .
**Amany** : What is her hobby ?
**Dina** : (5) ............................................................ . She is a great photographer.

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

celebrate - my - I - guests - family

Last weekend in Luxor, my cousin Amira got married to Ayman. It was a really fun day. I have a large family and more than half of the wedding (1) ..................... were members of my family! I loved seeing my whole family come together to (2) ..................... with Amira and Ayman. I saw aunts and uncles who live a long way from us and who (3) ..................... don't see very often. This is a photo of me next to Amira and some of (4) ..................... cousins.

## 4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My friend Nadia and I met online through a photogragphy website. We both love taking pictures of nature. Each day, we had to take a photo on a specific theme and share it. We decided to **start** a 30-day photography challenge together, taking a picture every day and sharing them online. We enjoyed the challenge and became closer friends. We communicate through messages and chatting, sharing our photos and ideas. Even though we live far, we feel connected through **our** common hobby of photography. We knew that our friendship, though online, was real and meaningful.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**start**" is ........... .
   a. hide  b. continue  c. find  d. end
2. The underlined word "**our**" refers to ........... .
   a. Nadia's friends  b. Nadia's family
   c. Nadia and her friend  d. Nadia and her sister
3. What is the main idea of the text ? - Sharing ........... online.
   a. hobbies  b. families  c. jobs  d. food

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Do you think Nadia and her friend are good friends ?

   ..........................................................................................

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

   ..........................................................................................

6. How does Nadia communicate with her friends ?

   ..........................................................................................

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The guests enjoyed the food and the music in the wedding ........... .
   a. photography  b. contract  c. reception  d. outfit
2. Will you ........... me organize the files ?
   a. help  b. helps  c. helped  d. helping
3. ........... grandparents live with us.
   a. I  b. My  c. Me  d. Mine

4. Beds, tables and chairs are kinds of ............ .
   a. websites b. places c. furniture d. jobs
5. Whose ball is this ? - It's ............ ball.
   a. Hady's b. Hady c. Hadys' d. Hady'
6. He likes to take photos. He's a/an ............ .
   a. doctor b. engineer c. vet d. photographer

## 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. This is Adam's brother. ............ (**He**) name is Fareed.
2. Will you ............ (**closed**) the window, please ?
3. It's the ............ (**fisherman**) net.
4. ............ (**Do**) you help me, please ? - Yes, I can.

## 7 Write an email of EIGHTY - ONE HUNDRED (80-100) words : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**To your friend Samy about social media. Your name is Ibrahim and your email address is ibrahimmoe@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is samisayed@gmail.com.**

| | |
|---|---|
| From | |
| To | |
| Subject | |

............................................ ,

......................................................................................................................

......................................................................................................................

......................................................................................................................

......................................................................................................................

......................................................................................................................

......................................................................................................................

......................................................................................................................

............................................



UNIT THREE

# My time

SB pages 28 : 39

**Unit Objectives :**

- **Reading** : An email about ways to spend your free time; A letter to a problem page; An Unusual Hobby; a short story
- **Listening** : A dialog about free–time activities
- **Speaking** : Talking about ways to spend your free time
- **Writing** : A forum post about finding friends with similar interests
- **Language** : The present continuous tense; Subject and object pronouns

تنويه أهداف الدروس "Lessons objectives" فى مقدمة الكتاب.

Lessons **1 & 2**

# ▸ How I spend my time
# ▸ What are you doing ?

SB pages 28 - 31



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| recipe (n) | وصفة طهي | skill (n) | مهارة |
| cook = chef (n) | طاه / طباخ | free-time activities | أنشطة وقت الفراغ |
| evening classes | فصول مسائية | first aid (n) | إسعافات أولية |
| nature (n) | الطبيعة | journal (n) | دفتر اليوميات |
| sports field (n) | ملعب رياضي | sports day | يوم رياضي |
| tennis court (n) | ملعب تنس | captain (n) | كابتن [قائد] |
| swimming pool (n) | حمام سباحة | training (n) | تدريب |

### Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

**• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

court – evening classes – skill – recipe – captain

1. I got a new .................. to make pizza.
2. I play tennis on the tennis .................. .
3. Listening to English songs helps him improve his speaking .................. .
4. He has no time during the day, so he studies in .................. .

### Lesson 1 SB pages 28 & 29

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| green spaces | مساحات خضراء | organize (d) (v) | ينظم |
| regular (adj) | منتظم | list (n) | قائمة |
| table tennis (n) | تنس الطاولة | thoughts (n) | أفكار |
| maybe (adv) | ربما | better (adv) | بصورة أفضل |
| lakes (n) | بحيرات | describe (d) (v) | يصف |
| exercise (n) | تدريب | | |

## Lesson 2

SB pages 30 & 31

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| cinema (n) | سينما | football field | ملعب كرة القدم |
| café (n) | مقهى | happen (ed) (v) | يحدث |
| join (ed) (v) | ينضم | behind (prep) | خلف |
| actually (adv) | في الحقيقة | call (ed) (v) | يتصل |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضي | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| spend | يقضي | spent | spent |
| take | يأخذ | took | taken |
| write | يكتب | wrote | written |
| run | يجري | ran | run |
| know | يعرف | knew | known |
| leave | يغادر | left | left |
| find | يجد | found | found |

## Description of different activities

وصف أنشطة مختلفة.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **help in the community** | you do things for other people where you live | يساعد في المجتمع |
| **walk in nature** | you visit and enjoy parks, lakes, or other green spaces | يتنزه في الطبيعة |
| **take regular exercise** | you do sports or other healthy activities | يتدرب بانتظام |
| **spend time with family** | you do activities with your parents, grandparents, brothers, and sisters | يقضي وقت مع العائلة |
| **learn new skills** | you take courses to find out how to do different activities | يتعلم مهارات جديدة |
| **write a journal** | you describe your thoughts and activities in writing | يكتب يوميات |

## Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **do** | things | يقوم بعمل أشياء | **meet** | a friend | يقابل صديق |
| | sports | يقوم بممارسة رياضة | **take** | courses | يأخذ دورات تدريبية |
| | activities | يقوم بأنشطة | | regular exercise | يتدرب بانتظام |
| | a project | يقوم بأداء مشروع | **learn** | new skills | يتعلم مهارات جديدة |

## Vocabulary Study

### Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| free time | وقت الفراغ | (leisure / spare) time | busy time | وقت مشغول |
| organize | ينظم - يرتب | order / arrange / tidy | disorganize | يُبعثر - يُشوّش |
| regular | منتظم | repeated / frequent | irregular | غير منتظم |
| lovely | محبوب - جذاب | attractive / beautiful | ugly / unattractive | قبيح - غير جذاب |
| start | يبدأ | begin | end / finish | ينهى |

### Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| -ty | تحول الصفة للاسم | activity | نشاط |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. I have much free time. "free time" is the synonym of ............ time.
   a. spare b. crowded c. busy d. slow
2. To get the opposite of the word "regular", we add "............".
   a. dis- b. ir- c. in- d. im-
3. To get the noun from the adjective "active", we add "............".
   a. -ty b. -ness c. -ous d. -ment
4. "............" has the same meaning as "attractive".
   a. Ugly b. Lovely c. Weak d. Strong
5. The antonym of the word "start" is "............".
   a. end b. support c. hurt d. ask
6. The synonym of the word "organize" is "............".
   a. arrange b. begin c. end d. get

# General Notes on Reading & Listening

## 1 recipe / ingredients

* **recipe** وصفة أو الطريقة الخاصة بإعداد نوع معين من الطعام
  - My brother is a chef. I love to learn **recipes** from him.
* **ingredients** مكونات ومقادير طبق معين من الطعام
  - Tomatoes, cucumbers and onions are the main **ingredients** of salad.

*Reading on lesson 1 SB page 29*

## 2 list – menu

* **list** قائمة (مشتريات / طلبات ....)
  - My mom gave me a shopping **list**.
* **menu** قائمة (أصناف الطعام)
  - Look at the **menu** to choose your favorite meal.

*Reading on lesson 1 SB page 29*

## 3 court – field

* **court (n)** ملعب ذو مساحة صغيرة خاص ببعض الرياضات مثل (التنس)
  - Some students are playing tennis on the tennis **court**.
* **field (n)** ملعب كبير (من العشب) خاص برياضات معينة مثل (كرة القدم / الهوكى)
  - One student is walking on the football **field**.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 31*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions | التعبيرات | Prepositions | حروف الجر |
|---|---|---|---|
| use it well | يستخدمها بطريقة جيدة | in nature | فى الطبيعة |
| write a journal | يكتب يوميات | around us | حولنا |
| go for walks | يذهب للتمشية | on which days ... ? | فى أى الأيام ... ؟ |
| get good ideas | يكتب أفكار جيدة | on the weekends | فى عطلات نهاية الأسبوع |
| write a "To do" list of things | يكتب قائمة بأداء المهام | focus on | يركز على |
| That's great ! | هذا رائع ! | spend time with | يقضى وقت مع |
| get ready for | يستعد لـ | both of | كلا من |
| It's time for ... | حان الوقت لـ ... | on the tennis court | فى ملعب التنس |
| Wait a minute ! | انتظر دقيقة ! | walk onto the field | يسير فى الملعب |
| See you soon | أراك لاحقًا | look for | يبحث عن |
| it isn't for | ليست بسبب | | |
| Have fun | يستمتع | | |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 1 SB page 29

### Mahmoud's email about his free time

1. Mahmoud is writing an **email**[1] to Asser.
2. Mahmoud tells Asser about his free time.
3. Mahmoud doesn't have much **free time**[2] because it is an important year at school.
4. Mahmoud writes a "To do" list of things. He needs to do.
5. After school, he does different things.
6. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, he plays football with his friends.
7. He likes to learn new skills, so he goes to **evening classes**[3].
8. At the moment, he is learning **first aid**[4]. He wants to be able to help people.
9. On the weekends, he spends time with his family.
10. They like to **go for walks**[5] in nature.
11. Mahmoud **writes a journal**[6] before going to bed.

## Lesson 2 SB page 31

### The places you go after school

1. Students aren't having lessons this afternoon.
2. It's the school **sports day**[7].
3. Two students are running and their **parents**[8] are watching them.
4. Other students are playing tennis on the **tennis court**[9].
5. The football teams are **getting ready for**[10] their match.
6. The captain is walking onto the football field.
7. It's time for the game to start.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (1) رسالة بريد إلكترونى | (2) وقت فراغ | (3) فصول مسائية | (4) إسعافات أولية |
| (5) يذهب للتمشية | (6) يكتب يوميات | (7) يوم رياضى | (8) والدين |
| (9) ملعب تنس | (10) يستعد لـ | | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* How you spend your free time
* The school sports day

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

### Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 28

**Narrator** : 1
**Reader F2** : spend time with family
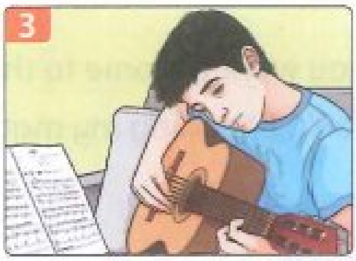






**Narrator** : 2
**Reader F2** : write a journal

**Narrator** : 3
**Reader F2** : learn new skills







**Narrator** : 4
**Reader F2** : help in the community

**Narrator** : 5
**Reader F2** : take regular exercise







**Narrator** : 6
**Reader F2** : walk in nature

on Lesson 2 SB page 30

**Maleeka** : Hi, Mazen.

**Mazen** : Hi, Maleeka. What are you doing ?

**Maleeka** : I'm **getting ready**(1) to go out. Do you still want to go to the park ?

**Mazen** : Actually, let's go to the **tennis court**(2).

**Maleeka** : OK, good idea.

**Mazen** : What are you doing now ?

**Maleeka** : I'm looking for something. I must find my **umbrella**(3) before I leave the house.

**Mazen** : Why? It isn't raining at the moment.

**Maleeka** : It isn't for the rain. It's for the sun!

**Mazen** : Oh, OK. Well, **see you soon**(4). Bye!

**Samer** : Hi, Mazen.

**Mazen** : Hi, Samer. Do you want to come to the tennis court with me and Maleeka ?

**Samer** : Thanks, but I can't. I'm doing my math project. Have fun!

**Mazen** : Thanks! Bye!

**Mazen & Maleeka** : Hi, Adam!

**Adam** : Hi, Mazen. Hi, Maleeka. What are you doing ?

**Maleeka** : We're going to the tennis court. What are you doing ?

**Adam** : I've just finished **training**(5) with my football team. Now, I'm meeting a friend at the cinema.

**Maleeka** : Nice! Who are you meeting?

**Adam** : I'm meeting Samer.

**Mazen & Maleeka** : What?! He said he had to do his math project!

**Adam** : You know how much he loves action movies !

(1) يستعد | (2) ملعب تنس | (3) شمسية | (4) أراك لاحقًا | (5) تدريب

# Reading

## on Lesson 1 SB page 29

**From:** Mahmoud **To:** Asser **Subject:** RE : Hello new friend

1 ∨

Hi Asser,

Thanks for your email ! You asked me about my free time.
This is an **important**(1) year at school and I don't have much free time, so I like to use it well !

In the mornings before school, I write a "To do" **list**(2) of things I need to do. It really helps me to organize my day. After school, I do different things. It's important to **take regular exercise**(3), so on Tuesdays and Thursdays I play football with my friends. I like playing with them ! They help me a lot. I also like to learn new **skills**(4), so I go to **evening classes**(5). At the moment, I am learning first aid ! I want to be able to help people.

On the weekends, I spend time with my family. We like to go for walks in nature. We don't take our phones, so we can enjoy what is around us. There are some really lovely parks and gardens in this city. Sometimes my brother and I help in the community. He is a chef, and we help to make food for hungry people at his restaurant. I love to learn recipes from him. My mom is a good cook, too. I think my brother learned a lot from her !

Every night, before I go to bed, I write a journal. It helps me to think about what I have done and **focus on**(6) good things. I think it helps me to sleep **better**(7), too !
Tell me how you spend your free time. **Maybe**(8) I can get some good ideas !
Bye!
Mahmoud

(1) هام | (2) قائمة | (3) يتدرب بانتظام | (4) مهارات | (5) فصول مسائية | (6) يركز على | (7) بشكل أفضل | (8) ربما

## on Lesson 2 SB page 31

Good afternoon ! As you know, our students aren't having lessons this afternoon because it's the school **sports day**(1) ! At the moment, two students are running and their parents are watching them. **That's great!**(2) Some students are playing tennis on the **tennis court**(3) behind me. It **looks like**(4) an interesting game. The football teams are **getting ready for**(5) their match. **Wait a minute**(6)! One student is walking onto the football field. He's the captain of one of the teams ! Now both of the teams are there. **It's time for**(7) the game to start !

(1) يوم رياضي | (2) هذا رائع ! | (3) ملعب تنس | (4) يشبه | (5) يستعد لـ | (6) انتظر دقيقة | (7) حان الوقت لـ

## 2. Skills المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات (ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية)

### Scanning for key words (nouns) and (verbs) : البحث عن الكلمات الرئيسية (الأسماء) و(الأفعال) :

**1 Learn**

**Key words are usually**

- nouns (numbers - names - places - things)
- verbs (actions)

**To find key words**

**Do ✓ افعل هذا**

1. Practice looking quickly through the text and underlining keywords.
   • تدرب على النظر بسرعة فى النص ووضع خط تحت الكلمات الرئيسية به.
2. Look at the question and underline the question word in it. This will tell you what type of word you need to answer the question.
   • انظر إلى السؤال وضع خط تحت أداة الاستفهام بها فسوف يخبرك هذا عن نوع الكلمة التى تحتاجها للإجابة عن السؤال.

**Don't ✗ لا تفعل هذا**

You don't need to read and understand every word in the text.

لا تحتاج إلى قراءة وفهم كل كلمة فى النص.

**2 Practice**

**⊙ Write the type of the underlined words (n) or (v) :**

1. On Tuesdays and Thursdays I play football. (............)
2. How do you learn new skills ? (............)
3. It's important to take regular exercise. (............)
4. It helps me to study better. (............)

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

Key vocabulary

1. Swimming in the seawater is easier than in the ............ .
   a. field b. court c. swimming pool d. hall

2. What ingredients do you need for the cookies ............ ?
   a. plan b. recipe c. news d. list
3. Her ............ in cooking makes her the best chef at the restaurant.
   a. skill b. reason c. homework d. sport
4. What are your free-time ............ ? - Drawing and reading.
   a. jobs b. activities c. works d. journeys
5. Who is the ............ of your football team ?
   a. chef b. pilot c. cook d. captain

**SB Exercises**

6. SB I like to learn new skills, so I go to evening ............ .
   a. recipes b. restaurants c. classes d. ingredients
7. SB How do you ............ your free time ?
   a. do b. spend c. give d. join
8. SB Some students are playing tennis on the tennis ............ .
   a. court b. field c. pool d. hall

**El-Moasser Exercises**

9. You can take a ............ to find out how to design clothes.
   a. journal b. court c. course d. community
10. A "To do list" helps me ............ my day.
    a. play b. organize c. hold d. keep
11. It's important to take regular ............, so I play football twice a week.
    a. ideas b. meals c. tests d. exercise
12. It's relaxing to have a picnic in ............ to enjoy the trees and lakes there.
    a. rivers b. clubs c. nature d. café
13. The kind woman fed the ............ dog and took it to the vet.
    a. busy b. hungry c. rich d. dead

### ▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Let's ............ ready for the school sports day.
    a. put b. go c. look d. get
15. Focus ............ positive ideas to help you.
    a. out b. on c. off d. to
16. Dishes in a restaurant are always written in a ............ .
    a. list b. post c. menu d. website

## 3. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

**Talking about ways to spend your free time :** التحدث عن وسائل / طرق لقضاء وقت الفراغ الخاص بك :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| 1. How do you spend your free time ?<br>كيف تقضي وقت فراغك ؟ | • I spend time with family. - أقضي وقتي مع العائلة.<br>• I take regular exercise. - أتدرب بانتظام.<br>• I learn new skills. - اتعلم مهارات جديدة.<br>• I write a journal. - اكتب يوميات. |
| 2. Do you think you use your free time well ? Why or why not ?<br>هل تعتقد أنك تستغل وقت فراغك جيدًا ؟ ولماذا أو لما لا ؟ | - Yes I do. Because I learn new things.<br>نعم. لأني أتعلم أشياء جديدة. |

# III Language

## The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

**Formation** التكوين

### 1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

| | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | | am | | | | | |
| He / She / It / اسم مفرد | + | is | + | inf. المصدر | + | ing. | |
| We / You / They / اسم جمع | | are | | | | | |

**ex.** - I am doing my homework at the moment.
- We are going to the tennis courts now.

• لاحظ أن :
'm = am 's = is 're = are

### 2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | | am | | | | | | |
| He / She / It / اسم مفرد | + | is | + | not | + | inf. المصدر | + | ing. |
| We / You / They / اسم جمع | | are | | | | | | |

**ex.** - She is not (isn't) working in the garden.
- They are not (aren't) playing football now.

## 3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

### A Yes/No question : السؤال بـ «هل» :

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Am | I | | | |
| Is + | he / she / it / اسم مفرد | + inf. المصدر | + ing ... ? | |
| Are | we / you / they / اسم جمع | | | |

**ex.** - Is he watching the match ?
* Yes, he is. * No, he isn't
- Are they going to the school concert now ?
* Yes, they are. * No, they aren't.

### B Wh- question : السؤال بكلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ing ... ?

**ex.** - What are you doing now ? _ I am helping my dad.

---

**Usage الاستخدام**

- **We use the present continuous to talk about things that are happening or not happening now.**
- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الأشياء التى تحدث أو لا تحدث الآن.
- **We also use it to ask questions about things that are happening now.**
- يستخدم أيضًا زمن المضارع المستمر للسؤال عن الأشياء التي تحدث الآن.

**ملاحظات على إضافة (ing) للفعل**

- **When a verb ends in "- e" remove the [–e] and add [–ing] form .**
- عندما ينتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

come → coming     decide → deciding

- **When a verb ends in a vowel followed by a single consonant, double the last consonant before adding - ing.**
- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك ضاعف هذا الحرف الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد)

swim → swimming     run → running     get → getting

▸ **When a verb ends in single consonant after two vowels, don't double the last consonant :**

◂ لاحظ أنه لا يضاعف الحرف الأخير إذا كان الفعل منتهى بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرفين متحركين :

feed → feeding wait → waiting

▸ **When a verb ends in "– ie" , change "– ie" into "y" in the "– ing" from.**

◂ إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie) تحول إلى (y) ثم نضيف (–ing).

lie → lying tie → tying

**Key words كلمات دالة**

غالبًا تأتى مع الزمن :

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (right) now الآن | Take care ! احذر! | at the moment فى تلك اللحظة |
| Look ! انظر! | still مازال | at present فى الوقت الحاضر |
| Listen ! انصت! | tonight فى هذه الليلة | Look out ! / Watch out ! احترس! |

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB Which sports ………… doing ?
   a. do you b. we do c. you are d. are you
2. SB I am ………… my math project.
   a. do b. doing c. did d. does
3. SB At the moment, some students ………… and their parents are watching them.
   a. run b. runs c. are running d. ran
4. SB Are you ………… to the café ?
   a. walking b. walk c. walked d. to walk
5. SB What is Adam ………… now ?
   a. does b. do c. doing d. to do
6. SB It ………… raining at the moment.
   a. can b. will c. wasn't d. isn't

El-Moasser Exercises

7. We ………… an action film in the cinema now.
   a. watched b. watch c. are watching d. watches

8. Mom ............ cooking lunch in the kitchen for us.
   a. are　b. is　c. does　d. were
9. What ............ they doing at the moment ?
   a. do　b. will　c. does　d. are
10. Is she ............ to music now ?
   a. listening　b. listen　c. listens　d. listened

**2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :**

**SB Exercises**

1. SB Some students are ............ (**play**) tennis on the tennis court.
2. SB We ............ (**go**) to the tennis courts now.
3. SB One student is ............ (**walk**) onto the football field.
4. SB Who are you ............ (**meet**) ?

**El-Moasser Exercises**

5. Children ............ (**flying**) their kites at the park at the moment.
6. Are you ............ (**study**) for the English exam ?
7. The mechanic ............ (**be**) repairing my car now.

A week is enough



مراجعة المنهج
والتمكن منه فى
اسبوع واحد فقط

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand  Apply  Create

### 1 Listen and complete the dialog :

استمع وأكمل [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب]

**Mazen** : When do you like doing sport, Radwan ?

**Radwan** : I like doing sport in my (1) ................................ .

**Mazen** : What is your (2) ................................ sport ?

**Radwan** : My favorite sport is swimming.

**Mazen** : Where do you go swimming ?

**Radwan** : At the sports (3) ................................ .

**Mazen** : How often do you go swimming ?

**Radwan** : I go swimming (4) ................................ a week.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

running – team – captain – court – are

Today is the school sports day, our students aren't having lessons this afternoon. At the moment, two students are (1) ............ and their parents are watching them. That's great! Some students are playing tennis on the tennis (2) ............ behind me. It looks like an interesting game. The football teams (3) ............ getting ready for their match. Wait a minute! One student is walking onto the football field. He's the (4) ............ of one of the teams ! Now both of the teams are there. It's time for the game to start !

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Nora likes walking in ............ because she enjoys parks, lakes and other green spaces.
   a. ice  b. dry places  c. nature  d. desert
2. I like to write a ............ every day before I go to bed.
   a. nature  b. skill  c. community  d. journal
3. Taking courses and finding out different activities help me learn new ............ .
   a. colors  b. clothes  c. skills  d. sports
4. You should do sports or ............ regular exercises every day.
   a. make  b. help  c. take  d. put

5. My mom is a good ............ . She always makes delicious food.
   a. vet b. cook c. nurse d. teacher
6. Doing sports is a healthy ............ in your free time.
   a. skill b. journal c. activity d. job
7. I found a new ............ for making chocolate cake online.
   a. recipe b. sport c. language d. color
8. I'm ............ my homework now.
   a. do b. doing c. did d. does
9. Are they ............ at the moment ?
   a. eat b. eats c. eating d. ate
10. Salma ............ playing games now.
   a. aren't b. isn't c. doesn't d. don't

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ............ (Are) she helping her mother now ?
2. SB At the moment, some students are ............ (run).
3. I ............ (don't) writing my homework now.
4. What ............ (are) he doing at the moment ?

## 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*"Spending your free time"*

................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................
................................................................................................................................................................

Lessons **3 & 4**

- Our school bazaar
- Giving advice

SB pages 32 - 35



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stall (n) | كُشك [لبيع السلع] | string (n) | خيط |
| bazaar (n) | البازار [سوق تجاري] | bracelet (n) | أسورة - سوار |
| homemade (adj) | صناعة منزلية | jewelery (n) | مجوهرات - حُلى |
| cupcakes (n) | الكعك المحلى | expert (n) | خبير |
| school principal | مدير المدرسة | relax (ed) (v) | يسترخى / يستريح |
| stressed (adj) | مُجهد - متوتر | advice (n) | نصيحة |
| beads (n) | حبات الخرز | | |

## Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

bazaar – bracelet – homemade – stall – cupcake

1. Mom made jam at home. It is ................ .
2. Khan el-Khalili is a famous ................ .
3. That ................ sells drinks and snacks.
4. She wears a ................ around her wrist.

## Lesson 3 SB pages 32 & 33

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| lemonade (n) | عصير الليمون | ingredients (n) | مقادير - المكونات |
| weather (n) | الطقس | reason (n) | سبب - مبرر |
| agree (d) (v) | يوافق | explain (ed) (v) | يشرح / يفسر |
| discuss (ed) (v) | يناقش | vote (d) (v) | ينتخب - يصوت [فى انتخابات] |
| almost (adv) | تقريبًا | plan (ned) (v), (n) | يخطط - خطة |
| decorate (d) (v) | يزين - يزخرف | polite (adj) | مهذب |

## Lesson 4 SB pages 34 & 35

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| breaktime (n) | وقت الفسحة / الراحة | worried (adj) | قلق |
| best friend | أفضل صديق | extra (adj) | إضافى |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| calm (adj) | هادئ | surprised (adj) | مندهش |
| relaxed (adj) | مسترخى - مستريح | after-school classes | فصول بعد اليوم الدراسى |
| letter (n) | خطاب | | |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|
| sell يبيع | sold | sold |
| make يصنع | made | made |
| give يعطى | gave | given |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▶ Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| polite مهذب - مؤدب | gentle / friendly | impolite / rude غير مهذب / وقح |
| calm هادئ | quiet / peaceful | angry / nervous غاضب - منفعل |
| stressed مُجهد | worried | relaxed مسترخى |
| true صحيح | correct / right | incorrect / false غير صحيح - خاطئ |
| disagree يرفض - يعارض | refuse | agree يوافق |

### ▶ Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| dis– | تعطى عكس المعنى | disagree يرفض - يعارض |
| –ed | تكون الصفة من الفعل | worried قلق |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He's very polite. The synonym of "polite" is "............".
   a. nasty  b. gentle  c. worried  d. rude
2. We form an adjective of the verb "worry" by adding the suffix "............".
   a. –ness  b. –er  c. –ly  d. –ed
3. The antonym of the word "true" is "............".
   a. false  b. perfect  c. right  d. correct

4. The word "..........." has the same meaning as "quiet".
a. calm b. nervous c. upset d. angry

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 'd love = would love + (noun اسم / to + inf. المصدر) يود أن

- SB I'd love a glass of cool lemonade right now !
- I'd love to have pizza.

*Reading on lesson 3 page 32*

### 2 It is important to + inf. إنه من المهم أن ......

- SB - It is important to be polite.

*Reading on lesson 3 page 33*

**It is important for + noun / pronoun ........** إنه من المهم لـ ......

- It is important for (us/Ali) to do regular exercises.

### 3 Weather - Climate

* **weather** الطقس (يصف حالة الجو فى فترة قصيرة)
  - SB The weather is so hot today.
* **climate** المناخ (يصف حالة الجو لفترة طويلة فى منطقة معينة)
  - The climate of most African countries is usually hot.

*Reading on lesson 3 page 32*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I don't think so. | لا أعتقد ذلك. | I'm not sure about that | لست متأكد بهذا الشأن |
| almost over | على وشك الانتهاء | work hard | يعمل بجد |
| there you go | ها هى | join a club | ينضم إلى نادى |
| take a long time | يستغرق وقتا طويلًا | give advice | يقدم نصيحة |
| give a reason | يبرر / يفسر | ask for (advice/help) | يطلب (نصيحة/مساعدة) |
| **Prepositions حروف الجر** | | | |
| disagree with | يعارض مع | go out | يخرج |
| think of | يفكر فى | worried about | قلق بشأن |
| share .... with | يشارك مع | good at | جيد فى |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 3 SB page 32

### Our school bazaar

1. Salma is drinking **homemade**[1] lemonade.
2. Shorouk and her brother are selling homemade lemonade on their stall at the **bazaar**[2].
3. Sahar wants a glass of cool lemonade.
4. Sahar is making **jewelery**[3].
5. She puts **beads**[4] onto some string to make a **bracelet**[5].
6. Sahar doesn't want to sell her bracelets at the bazzar because they take a long time to make.
7. Sahar and Salma decide to make cupcakes.
8. Salma is excited and tries to find the ingredients.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) صناعة منزلية | (2) سوق تجارى | (3) مجوهرات |
| (4) حبات الخرز | (5) أسورة - سوار | |

## Lesson 4 SB page 34

### Rasha's letter about Fareeda's problem

1. Rasha is telling Jana about her best friend Fareeda.
2. Fareeda is kind and she works hard.
3. Fareeda's friends are **worried**[1] about her.
4. She studies all the time and she is **stressed**[2].
5. She wants to make her parents happy.
6. Fareeda doesn't go out at breaktime and she always asks for **extra**[3] homework.
7. Rasha suggests asking Fareeda to play sports with them or join a club to learn a **skill**[4].
8. They want her to spend her free time with them to **relax**[5].

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) قلق | (2) متوتر | (3) إضافى |
| (4) مهارة | (5) يسترخى | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* The school bazaar
* Learning new skills
* The importance of relaxing

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 32



**Salma :** Hi, Sahar !
**Sahar :** Hi, Salma. What are you drinking ?
**Salma :** Homemade **lemonade**[1]. My friend Shorouk and her brother are selling it from their **stall**[2] at the **bazaar**[3].
**Sahar :** That's a good idea, isn't it ?
**Salma :** Yes, I agree. The weather is so hot.
**Sahar :** I'd love a glass of cool lemonade right now!
**Salma :** Well, why don't you buy some ?
**Sahar :** I don't think so. Our break is almost over.
**Salma :** OK. What's that you're making ?
**Sahar :** It's **jewelery**[4]. Look, I put these **beads**[5] onto some string and there you go - a bracelet!
**Salma :** That's cool. You could sell them at the next school bazaar.
**Sahar :** But they take a long time to make.
**Salma :** That's true. Why don't we sell some of our old toys ?
**Sahar :** **I'm not sure about that**[6]. It would be nice to make something. I know, how about cupcakes ? Everyone loves **cupcakes**[7] !
**Salma :** Great, let's find the **ingredients**[8]....

(1) عصير الليمون
(2) كشك (لبيع السلع)
(3) بازار (سوق تجارى)
(4) مجوهرات
(5) حبات خرز
(6) أنا لست متأكد بشأن هذا.
(7) الكعك المحلى
(8) مقادير - مكونات

### Reading

on Lesson 4 SB page 34

#### "Ask Jana" : Share your problems with Jana



Dear Jana,

I'm writing to you about my best friend Fareeda. She's a good friend and a **kind**[1] person. She works hard at school. My friends and I are really **worried**[2] about her. She studies all the time and she is very **stressed**[3]. Her parents work hard, and they want her to do well at school. She wants to make them happy. She doesn't go out at **breaktime**[4] and she always asks our teacher for **extra**[5] homework.

(1) عطوف | (2) قلق | (3) متوتر | (4) وقت الراحة | (5) إضافي

Last week, she asked him to give her exercises for the weekend. He was surprised ! We want her to spend her free time with us to relax. Is it a good idea to ask her to play sports with us ? It's fun ! Or maybe we can all join a club to learn a new skill ? She is good at it ! What do you think ?

Rasha, 12

## 2. Skills المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات [ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية]

### Agreeing and disagreeing in a discussion : القبول والرفض عند المناقشة :

**1 Learn**

- When we discuss things with other people, we use phrases to agree and disagree with their ideas.
- عندما نناقش أشياء مع أشخاص آخرين، نستخدم عبارات تدل على الاتفاق وعدم الاتفاق مع أفكارهم.

| Agreeing | Disagreeing |
| --- | --- |
| - Yes, I agree.<br>- OK.<br>- That's true. | - I don't think so.<br>- I'm not sure about that. |

- These phrases help to make it clear what we think. تساعد هذه العبارات على توضيح اعتقادنا.
  - When we disagree with someone, it is important to be polite it is okay for people to have different ideas.
  - عندما نقوم برفض رأى شخص ما، من المهم أن نكون مهذبين فلا بأس أن يكون لدى الناس أفكار مختلفة.
  - It's important to give a reason so that the other person can understand why we disagree.
  - من المهم أن تعطى سبب الرفض لكى يستطيع الشخص الآخر فهم سبب اختلافنا.

**2 Practice** **Agree or disagree politely**

* I think it's good to sell drinks online.

.................................................................................................... (agree)

* Why don't we sell our old toys at the bazaar ?

.................................................................................................... (disagree)

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

**Key vocabulary**

1. You need to ............ after the long journey.
   a. run   b. decorate   c. relax   d. walk

2. Talia is selling homemade cookies, on her ............ at the school bazaar.
   a. theatre b. stall c. home d. class
3. All the students and teachers follow the rules that the school ............ said.
   a. student b. principal c. parent d. librarian
4. She puts ............ onto some of string to make a bracelet.
   a. games b. beads c. rocks d. planets
5. I prefer ............ food that mom makes for me.
   a. calm b. fast c. homemade d. outdoor

**SB Exercises**

6. SB We can all ............ a club to learn a new skill.
   a. break b. vote c. take d. join
7. SB When we disagree with someone, it is important to be ............ .
   a. rude b. polite c. nervous d. worried
8. SB She always asks her teacher for ............ homework.
   a. tired b. stressed c. polite d. extra

**El-Moasser Exercises**

9. The ............ is very sunny today.
   a. jewelery b. weather c. sports d. time
10. We can use colored lamps and balloons to ............ our houses in festivals.
   a. sell b. discuss c. vote d. decorate
11. We play in the playground at ............ at school.
   a. timeline b. classtime c. breaktime d. dreamtime
12. To be ............ , you should love people and try to help them.
   a. angry b. worried c. kind d. stressed
13. My parents always ............ our problems with us before they decide.
   a. join b. discuss c. decorate d. make
14. They use gold to make rings, bracelets and necklaces and other ............ .
   a. ingredients b. furniture c. jewelery d. pages

## Language Notes, Expressions & prepositions

15. I'd love ............ fresh juice in that hot day.
   a. drink b. to drink c. drank d. drinks
16. Basim is worried ............ his sick father.
   a. out b. about c. for d. with

## 3. Speaking مهارة التحدث

### ▸ Giving advice to someone. إعطاء النصيحة لشخص ما.

| Advice | Agreeing / disagreeing |
| --- | --- |
| - I think she could ask Fareeda to play sports with her friends.<br>- أعتقد أنها من الممكن أن تطلب من فريدة أن تمارس الرياضة مع أصدقائها. | - I'm not sure about that maybe Fareeda doesn't enjoy.<br>- لست متأكد لهذا الشأن ربما لا تستمتع فريدة بالرياضة. |
| - She could help in community.<br>- من الممكن أن تساعد فى المجتمع. | - Yes, that's a good idea.<br>- نعم إنها فكرة جيدة. |

## III Language

### Subject and object pronouns ضمائر الفاعل والمفعول

**Subject pronouns :** We use them to replace the person, place, or thing doing the action.

- نستخدم ضمير الفاعل بدلًا من الشخص، المكان، أو الشىء الذى يقوم بالفعل.

**Object pronouns :** We use them to replace the person, place, or thing receiving the action.

- نستخدم ضمير المفعول بدلًا من الشخص، المكان أو الشىء المتلقى للفعل.

**1 Subject pronouns**

ضمائر الفاعل تأتى فى بداية الجملة [تحل محل الفاعل]

تستخدم **قبل الفعل**

**2 Object pronouns**

ضمائر المفعول [تحل محل المفعول]

تستخدم **بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر**

| Subject pronouns | | → | Object pronouns |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| I | أنا | → | me |
| You | أنت / أنتم / أنتن | → | you |
| He | هو [للعاقل] | → | him |
| She | هى [للعاقل] | → | her |
| It | هو / هى [مفرد غير عاقل] | → | it |
| We | نحن | → | us |
| They | هم | → | them |

**ex.** - Last week, I visited my grandpa and I bought him some flowers.

grandpa → object المفعول
him → object pronoun ضمير المفعول — refers to grandpa

---

**ex.** - Fareeda is helpful. She helps everyone in her class.

Fareeda → subject فاعل
She → subject pronoun ضمير فاعل — refers to Fareeda

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**SB Exercises**

1. SB We go to parks and walk in nature with ............ at the weekends.
   a. we b. their c. them d. they
2. SB She can help ............ .
   a. I b. you c. my d. she
3. SB ............ take regular exercise and play tennis three times a week.
   a. Us b. My c. We d. Them
4. SB I always ask ............ for advice when I have a problem.
   a. she b. his c. he d. them
5. SB We want Heba to spend ............ free time with us to relax.
   a. he b. she c. her d. him
6. SB You can go with ............ to the club on Tuesday.
   a. I b. me c. you d. he

**El-Moasser Exercises**

7. I need my guitar. Where did you put ............ ?
   a. it b. its c. them d. it's
8. My teachers are friendly and helpful. I really respect ............ .
   a. they b. them c. us d. our

9. ............ always ask my parents for help if I have a problem.
   a. My　　b. I　　c. Mine　　d. Me
10. ............ wants to make a bracelet for her sister.
   a. Us　　b. Him　　c. She　　d. Her
11. Our neighbor invited ............ to his birthday party.
   a. us　　b. we　　c. your　　d. our
12. Can you help ............ with my project ?
   a. her　　b. my　　c. it　　d. me

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

**SB Exercises**

1. SB Why don't ............ (**us**) sell some of our old toys ?
2. SB Do you want to come for a walk with ............ (**I**) ?
3. SB Is it a good idea to ask ............ (**she**) to play sports with us ?
4. SB Why do ............ (**them**) decide to make cupcakes at their home ?
5. SB ............ (**Me**) think she could ask Fareeda to play sports with her friends.

**El-Moasser Exercises**

6. I helped ............ (**she**) plant flowers in the garden.
7. Hazem lives nearer to school than ............ (**I**).
8. My mother asked ............ (**we**) to tidy up our rooms.
9. ............ (**Him**) loves playing football with his brother.
10. Khalid is smart, so his teachers encourage ............ (**he**) to go to university.
11. Why don't ............ (**your**) make homemade drinks ?

## 3. Find and underline the mistakes in the sentences, then correct them :

1. His father wanted he to be an engineer.

   ...................................................................................................

2. Our volunteered in the community garden.

   ...................................................................................................

3. Sports helped she to be healthy and fit.

   ...................................................................................................

4. Dogs are amazing pets. Them love and protect their owners.

   ...................................................................................................

5. My friend asked I to play with him.

   ...................................................................................................

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand  Apply  Create

### 1 Complete the following dialog :

**They are talking about the next school bazaar.**

Aya : Hi, Mariam. What are you going to sell at the school bazaar ?
Mariam : Hi, Aya. (1) .................................................................... .
Aya : Cookies ! (2) ...................................................................... ?
Mariam : No, but mom will help me make them. What about you ?
Aya : (3) ...................................................................... .
Mariam : What do you use to make bracelets ?
Aya : (4) ...................................................................... .
Mariam : Wow ! I like colorful beads ! (5) ...................................................................... ?
Aya : I buy beads from the market.

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Fareeda is a very **busy** student. She loves to study, and she spends most of her free time reading books. She wants to become a doctor, so she studies hard and enjoys learning new things. She also enjoys watching videos about science and medicine. However, Fareeda sometimes feels very stressed from all the studying. She wants to relax. She shared her problem with Jana. Jana advised her to have some rest and to to spend sometime with her family. Fareeda tries to relax by spending time with **her** family, but she doesn't have much time for other activities.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Fareeda watches videos about ............ .
   a. art  b. science  c. social studies  d. games
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**busy**" is "............".
   a. exciting  b. free  c. ancient  d. active
3. Fareeda wants to be a/an ............ .
   a. teacher  b. dentist  c. engineer  d. doctor

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What does the underlined word "**her**" refer to ?

   ..........................................................................................................

5. Why do you think Fareeda sometimes feel stressed ?

   ..........................................................................................................

6. How does Fareeda try to relax ?

   ..........................................................................................................

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do you ............ with my idea or you have another opinion ?
   a. agree  b. spend  c. make  d. grow

2. They are wearing ............ made of gold like rings and necklaces.
   a. activities b. jewelery c. projects d. clothes
3. The math teacher asked ............ to do their school project.
   a. your b. they c. them d. we
4. We need some ............ and a string to make a bracelet.
   a. statues b. beads c. cookies d. lemons
5. My grandpa is old, but ............ usually does sports.
   a. him b. he c. his d. her
6. What ............ do we need to make pizza ?
   a. studies b. bazaars c. ingredients d. toys
7. ............ joined a club to learn how to make bracelets.
   a. Them b. We c. Us d. Him
8. Spending nice time on the beach helps us ............ .
   a. relax b. worry c. stress d. upset
9. She knows a lot about musical instruments, she is a musical ............ .
   a. journal b. volunteer c. expert d. beginner
10. At ............ , we go out of classes to eat and relax for a while.
   a. dinnertime b. breaktime c. timetable d. timeline

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. My best friend gave ............ (I) a nice present.
2. Hana is active and ............ (**her**) does a lot of exercise.
3. How much will ............ (**them**) pay for their tickets ?
4. His mother took ............ (**he**) to the science museum.

## 5 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**To your friend Essam about the school bazaar. Your name is Adel and your email address is adel20@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is essamsam@yahoo.com.**

From
To
Subject

............................................ ,
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
............................................

Lessons **5 & 6**

- Literature
- Writing

SB pages 36 - 39



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hometown (n) | بلد المنشأ - مسقط رأس | geocaching (n) | الجيوكاشينج [هواية البحث عن الكنوز في الهواء الطلق] |
| coordinates (n) | إحداثيات | | |
| geeky (adj) | واسع الاطلاع / شديد الاهتمام | treasure (n) | كنز |
| outdoor (adj) | في الخارج | logbook (n) | سجل |
| clue (n) | دليل - مفتاح اللغز | app (n) | برنامج - تطبيق |
| geocache (n) | حاوية مخبأة / خبيئة | hunt (ed) (v), (n) | يبحث - يفتش - تفتيش |
| interests (n) | اهتمامات | relaxing (adj) | يساعد على الاسترخاء - مريح |
| art club (n) | نادي الرسم | tips (n) | نصائح |
| hobby (n) | هواية | share (d) (v) | يشترك - يشارك |

## Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

art club - outdoor - hobbies - hometown - clues - message

1. When I travel abroad; I miss my .................. .
2. I like to draw and paint in the .................. .
3. I have found some .................. to solve the puzzle.
4. I like to do .................. activities in the fresh air.
5. Taking photos and drawing are my favorite .................. .

## Lesson 5 SB pages 36 & 37

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| message (d) (v) | يرسل رسالة | location (n) | موقع |
| explore (d) (v) | يستكشف | sort (ed) (v), (n) | يصنف - نوع |
| classmates (n) | زملاء الدراسة | record (n) | سجل [أحداث] |
| solve (d) (v) | يحل | suggest (ed) (v) | يقترح |
| events (n) | أحداث | lunchtime (n) | وقت الغداء |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| notice (d) (v) | يلاحظ | geocachers (n) | [الجيوكاشر] الباحثين عن الكنوز |
| hidden (adj) | مخبأ | add (ed) (v) | يضيف |
| challenge (d) (v), (n) | يتحدى - تحدى | included (adj) | مندمج |
| shell (n) | صدفة | lead (v) | يقود - يؤدى |

## Lesson 6

SB pages 38 & 39

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| improve (d) (v) | يُحسن | painting (n) | لوحة - الرسم |
| separate (d) (v) | يفصل | forum post | منشور المنتدى |
| practice (d) (v) | يتدرب | paint (ed) (v) | يلون / يدهن |
| art (n) | الفن - الرسم | theme (n) | فكرة رئيسية - موضوع |
| surprise (n) | دهشة | humor (n) | مزاح - دعابة |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| set | ينشئ/يؤسس | set | set |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| feel | يشعر | felt | felt |
| draw | يرسم | drew | drawn |
| meet | يقابل | met | met |

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **geocache** | a hidden box with small, interesting things in for people to find | حاوية مخبأة - خبيئة |
| **clues** | information that helps you solve a problem or find something | دليل/مفتاح لغز |
| **coordinates** | pairs of numbers used to find the location of something | إحداثيات |
| **geeky** | not cool, very interested in a particular thing | واسع الاطلاع / شديد الاهتمام |
| **logbook** | a written record of events | سجل |
| **treasure hunt** | a game which you play to find something has been hidden | البحث عن الكنوز |

## Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **make** | friends | يكوّن صداقات | **do** | geocaching<br>يقوم بأداء هواية البحث عن الكنوز |
| **feel** | included / happy | يشعر بالاندماج / بالسعادة | | |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▶ Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| quickly بسرعة | fast | slowly بطئ |
| normal طبيعى | usual | abnormal - unusual<br>غير طبيعى - غير عادى |
| beautiful جميل | wonderful | horrible فظيع - سيئ |

### ▶ Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –ed | تحول الفعل لصفة | interested مهتم بـ<br>included مندمج |
| –ing | تحول الفعل لصفة | relaxing مريح |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. "..........." is the opposite of "quickly".
   a. Slowly b. Hard c. Easily d. Fast
2. "Wonderful" is the synonym of "...........".
   a. bad b. horrible c. ugly d. beautiful
3. To get the adjective from the verb "include", we add the suffix "...........".
   a. –ed b. –ir c. –er d. –ness
4. The word "usual" has the same meaning of "...........".
   a. interesting b. special c. normal d. different
5. We add the suffix "..........." to form the adjective of the verb "relax".
   a. –ing b. –ly c. –ness d. –ment

# General Notes on Reading & Listening

## 1 miss - lose

* miss (v) — يفتقد (شخص/ مكان / يفوته وسيلة مواصلات).
  - SB Nermine **misses** her hometown, Alexandria.
* lose (v) — يفقد شيء...
  - SB I **lost** my mobile phone yesterday.

*Reading on lesson 5 SB page 36*

## 2 outdoor – outdoors

* outdoor (adj) + [اسم] — خارجي
  - Geocaching is a special sort of **outdoor treasure** hunt.
* outdoors (adv) — خارجيًا
  - Football is played **outdoors**.

*Reading on lesson 5 SB page 36*

## 3 tip – advice

* tip (n) — نصيحة (اسم يعد)
  - SB We could give each other **tips** to improve our work.
* advice (n) — نصيحة (اسم لا يعد)
  - My mother gave me some **advice** to do better.

*Reading on lesson 6 SB page 38*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| explore the city | يستكشف المدينة | set up | يؤسس - ينشأ |
| solve the clue / problem | يحل اللغز / مشكلة | have fun | يستمتع |
| come over | يزور | the rest of the class | باقى الفصل |
| all over the world | فى جميع أنحاء العالم | work together | يتعاون / يعمل معاً |
| three heads are better than one | ثلاثة عقول تفكر معاً أفضل من عقل واحد | don't mind | لا يبالى / لا يمانع |
| | | count me in | اعتبرنى مشاركًا |
| That sounds fun ! | يبدو هذا ممتعاً! | nice to meet you | سعيد بمقابلتك |
| **Prepositions حروف الجر** | | | |
| move to | ينتقل إلى | put (something) back | يعيد (شئ ما) إلى |
| sort of | نوع من | add to | يضيف إلى |
| pair of | زوج من | decide on | يختار |
| on the phone | على الهاتف | work out | يستنبط |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 5 SB page 36

### An unusual hobby

1. Nermine is interested in an unusual hobby; **geocaching**[1].
2. Geocaching is a sort of **outdoor**[2] treasure hunt.
3. In geocaching, the **clues**[3] come from an app on your phone.
4. When you solve the clues, you get **coordinates**[4], which are pairs of numbers.
5. There are millions of geocaches all over the world.
6. Nermine and her new friends Sarah and Ella decide to play the game together.
7. When they find the geocache, they discuss what to add to it.
8. They decide to make their own geocache.
9. Their geocache could be a challenge for the rest of the class.
10. Finally, they work together to get what they want.

## Lesson 6 SB page 38

### Nabila's Forum post

1. Nabila is posting about her hobby.
2. She loves coloring, drawing and painting.
3. She enjoys going to art club.
4. She likes drawing animals.
5. She suggested **setting up**[5] a group to draw and paint together.
6. They could share ideas and **tips**[6].
7. They give each other tips to improve their work, and **have fun**[7]!

| (1) هواية البحث عن الكنوز | (2) خارجي | (3) مفاتيح اللغز | (4) إحداثيات |
|---|---|---|---|
| (5) تأسيس | (6) نصائح | (7) يستمتع | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* An unusual hobby
* Your favorite hobby

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

### Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 36

## An Unusual Hobby

### The beginning



When Nermine's family moved to Oxford for her dad's job, she misses her hometown, Alexandria. She decides to use her favorite hobby, geocaching, to explore the city. **Geocaching**(1) is a special sort of outdoor **treasure**(2) hunt. Just like a normal treasure hunt, you solve **clues**(3) to help you find something interesting - the treasure. But in geocaching, the clues come from an app on your phone. When you solve the clues, you get **coordinates**(4), which are pairs of numbers. These help you find the treasure - the geocache, a box with small, interesting things in it.

### The middle

In Alexandria, Nermine loved geocaching with her friends. She's worried that her new classmates might think geocaching is **geeky**(5), so she doesn't tell them about it.

Then, one lunchtime, Nermine is looking at a new challenge on her phone. When two girls from her class, Sarah and Ella, come over.

"What's that game ?" asks Sarah.

Nermine explains. "There are millions of geocaches all over the world. When you find one, you don't take the treasure. You write your name in a **logbook**(6) to tell other geocachers that you found it, then you put it back. If you want, you can put something new into the geocache for other people to find".

"That sounds fun!" says Ella. "Can we play, too ?" "Sure ! But this is a really difficult one."

"That's okay. Three heads are better than one, so maybe we will find the treasure more quickly together!" Their classmates notice that Nermine, Sarah, and Ella are spending all their lunchtimes together. They ask questions and soon there are ten of them geocaching. When they find the geocache, they discuss what to add to it. They decide on a school chair and a shell from the beach in Alexandria.

(1) لعبة البحث عن الكنز (2) كنز (3) ألغاز - دلائل (4) إحداثيات (5) واسع الاطلاع (6) سجل

## The end

One day, Nermine, Sarah, and Ella decide to make their own geocache. They tell their math teacher. She thinks their idea is good and says that the geocache could be a challenge for the rest of the class.

The clues **lead**[7] the class all over the school. It's hard work and they have to work together. Nermine feels included and happy. Finally, they work out the coordinates and find the geocache. They all have such a good time that they don't even mind that the treasure is extra math homework !

(7) يقود /يرشد

on Lesson 6 SB page 38

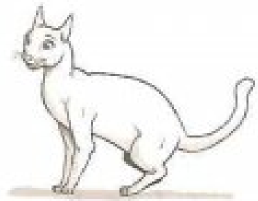
## Nabila's forum post



**Nab_paints**

1 d •

Hi everyone! I love coloring and **painting**[1], and I really enjoy going to art club after school. I also **practice**[2] most days at home. It's so **relaxing**[3]. My favorite thing to draw is animals. I think I can draw cats, dogs, and rabbits quite well! Here's a drawing I did of my cat last week. Do you like **art**[4], too ? I would like to meet other people who share my **hobby**[5] so that we can **set up**[6] a group to draw and paint together. We could share ideas, give each other **tips**[7] to **improve**[8] our work, and have fun! Message me!



5 comments

Like    Comment



**Alex11**
Cool drawing! I love drawing animals, too. Let's share some pictures!



**Hetty_123**
Great idea! Count me in.

(1) الرسم | (2) يتدرب | (3) مريح | (4) الفن | (5) هواية | (6) ينشئ | (7) نصائح | (8) يحَسن

on Lesson 6 SB page 39

## Reply to Nabila's post



**art_ fan55**

Nice to meet you, Nabila! I like your idea. I draw and paint a lot, too, but sometimes I want to practice and **share** [1] my pictures with other people. Also I have an idea for the **group** [2]. We could have a different **theme** [3] every month. Everyone in the group draws or paints a picture on that theme. We can then share them at the end of the month. What do you think ?

(1) يشارك | (2) مجموعة | (3) فكرة

## 2. Skills المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات [ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية]

### Summarizing a story تلخيص القصة :

**1 Learn**

**The story main events are**

| Beginning | Middle | End |
|---|---|---|
| بداية | منتصف | نهاية |

- To summarize a story, we use the key words. لكي تقوم بتلخيص القصة، تستخدم الكلمات المفتاحية.
- It's important to decide the moral of the story. من المهم أن تحدد المغزى الرئيسي من القصة.

**2 Practice**

**Read the summary of the story and complete with the key words.**

challenge – classmates – homework - hobby – included

Nermine and her family move from Alexandria to Oxford. She explores her new city through her favorite(1) .................. , geocaching. However, she misses geocaching with her friends in Alexandria. She doesn't want to tell her new(2) .................. about it. What if they think it's geeky ?

Then, two girls in Nermine's class ask her about her hobby. They want to try it, too. Soon, ten of the classmates are(3) .................. together.

One day, Nermine and her friends make their own geocache. Their math teacher says it can be a(4) .................. for the class. They all work together to find the geocache. It's a lot of fun, even though the treasure is more(5) .................. !

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

**Key vocabulary**

1. Geocaching is an unusual ............ we do in our free time.
   a. job   b. hobby   c. project   d. club
2. He went back to his ............ where he was born.
   a. school   b. university   c. hometown   d. geocache
3. I downloaded a new ............ on my mobile phone for playing games.
   a. treasure   b. house   c. tip   d. app
4. He told me useful ............ to organize my day.
   a. tips   b. clubs   c. interests   d. hobbies
5. The story ends when they find the ............ that includes jewelery and money.
   a. theme   b. treasure   c. turtle   d. shell

**SB Exercises**

6. SB How did geocaching help Nermine to ............ new friends ?
   a. let   b. take   c. do   d. make
7. SB Finally, they work out the coordinates and find the ............ .
   a. geocachers   b. geocaching   c. geocache   d. geocached
8. SB They ............ on a school chair and a shell from the beach in Alexandria.
   a. give   b. take   c. decide   d. practice

**El-Moasser Exercises**

9. He goes for a walk to ............ the new city.
   a. fill   b. miss   c. explore   d. lose
10. You need to practice more to ............ your skills.
    a. improve   b. draw   c. solve   d. relax
11. I want to meet other people who ............ the same interests.
    a. drop   b. solve   c. share   d. stop

**Definitions**

12. ............ are pairs of numbers used to find the location of something.
    a. Clues   b. Messages   c. Coordinates   d. Shells
13. ............ means not cool, very interested in a particular thing.
    a. Favorite   b. Geeky   c. Included   d. Crazy

14. A ........... is a hidden box with small, interesting things in for people to find.
    a. geocache  b. result  c. monument  d. goal

**Language Notes , Expressions & Prepositions**

15. Put the book ........... when you finish it.
    a. off  b. down  c. up  d. back
16. I ........... my father so much. I haven't seen him for a month.
    a. miss  b. lose  c. advise  d. solve

## 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

### Using punctuation correctly

#### Punctuation

- is important in writing because it makes it easier for people to read.

- علامات الترقيم هامة فى الكتابة لأنها تسهل على الأشخاص القراءة.

- The types of punctuation we use most often are :

- أنواع علامات الترقيم التى نستخدمها كثيرًا هى :

- **Periods [ . ]**

  * النقاط

  To show the end of a sentence.

  - تستخدم لتوضيح نهاية الجملة الخبرية.

  ex. - I love coloring and painting.

- **Comma [ , ]**

  * الفاصلة السفلية

  To connect two sentences together.

  - تستخدم لربط جملتين معًا.

  ex. - My favourite animals are cats, lions, and tigers.

- **Question marks [ ? ]**

  * علامات الاستفهام

  To show the end of a question.

  - تستخدم لتوضيح نهاية سؤال.

  ex. - What's your favorite hobby ?

- **Exclamation points [ ! ]**

  * علامات التعجب

  To show surprise.

  - تستخدم للتعبير عن الدهشة.

  ex. - That's a great idea !

## When you write a forum post about your favorite free-time activity, say ...

1. What your favorite activity is. - ما هو نشاطك المفضل.
2. Why you like it. - لماذا تحب هذا النشاط.
3. Why you are writing. - سبب كتابتك للمنشور.
4. Use spelling and punctuation correctly. - استخدم هجاء وعلامات الترقيم بشكل صحيح.
5. Use these expressions : - استخدم هذه التعبيرات :

I love ... أحب ... | I really enjoy ... استمتع حقًا بـ ...

I can .... quite well. أستطيع فعل ... إلى حد ما بطريقة جيدة. | I would like to .... أود أن ...

## Pop Quiz

**A. Punctuate the following sentences :**

1. nermine and her family move from alexandria to oxford

 ..........................................................................................

2. cool drawing ! i love drawing animals too

 ..........................................................................................

**B. Read the text. Add punctuation marks :**

1. hi everyone I love coloring and painting, and i really enjoy going to art club after school

 ..........................................................................................

 ..........................................................................................

2. my favorite thing to draw is animals I think i can draw cats dogs, and rabbits quite well

 ..........................................................................................

 ..........................................................................................

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand · Apply · Create

### 1 Complete the following dialog :

**Fayruz and Samia are talking about geocaching.**

Fayruz : What's your favorite hobby ?
Samia : (1) .................................................................. .
Fayruz : Geocaching ! (2) .................................................................. ?
Samia : It is a special sort of outdoor treasure hunt.
Fayruz : It sounds interesting ! (3) .................................................................. ?
Samia : To find it, I use an app on my phone that gives me clues and coordinates.
Fayruz : Are there a lot of geocaches ?
Samia : (4) .................................................................. . There're millions !

### 2 Match the words to their meaning :

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. coordinates | ☐ a. a written record of events |
| 2. logbook | ☐ b. a hidden box with small, interesting things in for people to find |
| 3. geeky | ☐ c. pairs of numbers used to find the location of something |
| 4. geocache | ☐ d. a game which you play to find something that has been hidden |
| | ☐ e. not cool, very interested in a particular thing |

### 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I am Lara. I'm thirteen years old and I am in prep one. I love my school because I learn interesting subjects there. I really enjoy going to school. I'm good at coloring and painting. **They** make me relax when I am **stressed**. My favorite thing to draw is birds. I want to set up a group who love art to share our ideas.

I would like to meet other people who share my hobby. We could give each other tips to improve our work. It's a great idea to have a different theme every month. I try to share the pictures I draw every month. I want everyone in the group to give me their opinion.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The text is mainly about "Lara's ............ ".
   a. family b. hobby c. house d. job
2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ............ .
   a. singing and reading b. designing and building
   c. coloring and painting d. eating and sleeping

3. The underlined word "**stressed**" is the opposite of ............ .
   a. nervous b. worried c. relaxed d. strong

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Why does Lara love her school ?

...........................................................................................................

5. What are Lara's favorite hobbies ?

...........................................................................................................

6. Why do you think Lara wants to set up a group of art lovers ?

...........................................................................................................

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I worked with my ............ to decorate our classroom.
   a. uncles b. classmates c. parents d. players
2. SB A ............ is a written record of events.
   a. geocache b. logbook c. test d. concert
3. My cousin is twenty-five. ............ is a nurse.
   a. His b. Her c. Him d. She
4. I have a/an ............ that plays music on my phone.
   a. bridge b. machine c. app d. meal
5. What are ............ looking for, Maha ?
   a. your b. us c. me d. you
6. SB A ............ is a hidden box with small, interesting things in for people to find.
   a. clue b. geocache c. shell d. talent
7. SB They are studying ............ in math lessons.
   a. colors b. history c. coordinates d. chemicals
8. She made friends at school and felt ............ in a group.
   a. included b. lonely c. different d. alone
9. My father taught ............ how to catch fish.
   a. my b. I c. me d. mine
10. The last ............ leads them to where the treasure is.
   a. meal b. lunch c. clue d. weather

## 5 Write a forum post of (60 - 80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

*"An unusual hobby"*

...........................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................

Like Comment

# Review on unit 3

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

## Vocabulary

**Lessons 1 & 2**

| | |
|---|---|
| recipe | وصفة طهى |
| skill | مهارة |
| journal | يوميات |
| community | المجتمع |
| nature | الطبيعة |
| first aid | اسعافات أولية |
| chef | طباخ |
| cinema | سينما |
| café | مقهى |
| sports field | ملعب رياضى |
| swimming pool | حمام سباحة |
| tennis court | ملعب تنس |

**Lessons 3 & 4**

| | |
|---|---|
| lemonade | عصير ليمون |
| bazaar | بازار [سوق تجارى] |
| jewelery | مجوهرات |
| expert | خبير |
| beads | حبات الخرز |
| cupcakes | كعك محلى |
| ingredients | مكونات |
| agree | يقبل - يوافق |
| disagree | يرفض |
| stall | كشك لبيع السلع |
| stressed | مجُهد - متوتر |
| breaktime | وقت الفسحة |

**Lessons 5 & 6**

| | |
|---|---|
| geocaching | الجيوكاشينج [لعبة البحث عن الكنوز فى الهواء الطلق] |
| clue | مفتاح لحل اللغز |
| coordinates | إحداثيات |
| geeky | واسع الاطلاع |
| interests | اهتمامات |
| logbook | سجل |
| treasure | كنز |

## Language

### 1. The present continuous tense
زمن المضارع المستمر

| | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | | | am | | | |
| He / She / It | اسم مفرد | + | is | + | inf. المصدر | + ing |
| We / You / They | اسم جمع | | are | | | |

- I'm playing football now.
- She isn't sitting next to her friend.
- Is Hala making a video call ?
- Yes, she is. - No, she isn't.
- What is Nader doing ?
- He is playing football.

### 2. Subject & object pronouns
ضمائر الفاعل والمفعول

| Subject pronouns | Object pronouns |
|---|---|
| I | me |
| He | him |
| She | her |
| It | it |
| We | us |
| They | them |
| You | you |

I (ضمير فاعل) can help him (ضمير مفعول) find the treasure.

## Speaking

### 1. Talking about ways to spend your free time.
التحدث عن طرق قضاء وقت الفراغ

- I learn new skills.
- I take regular exercise.
- I write a journal.

A : How do you spend your free time ?

B : I spend my free time walking in nature.

A : Do you think you use your free time well ? Why ?

B : Yes, I do. Because I learn new skills.

### 2. Agreeing and disagreeing in a discussion.
الموافقة والرفض فى مناقشة

Agreeing :
- Yes, I agree.
- OK.
- That's true.

Disagreeing :
- I don't think so.
- I'm not sure about that.

A : Why don't we sell some of our old toys ?

B : I'm not sure about that.

A : How about cupcakes ? Everyone loves them!

B : That's true. I agree.

# 1 Reading Comprehension

## Summarize the text

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تلخيص النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Read the following and answer the questions :**

Doaa is a good friend and a kind person. She works hard at school. She studies all the time and she is very stressed. Her parents work hard, and they want her to do well at school. She wants to make them happy. She doesn't go out at breaktime and she always asks her teacher for extra homework.

- Summarize the text in one sentence.

.................................................................................... .

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تلخيص نص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة استخدم الكلمات الأساسية فى النص لتتمكن من تلخيصه.

# 2 Speaking

## Spending free time

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialog) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Complete the following dialog :**

**Jana and Lara are talking about spending their free time.**

Jana: Hi, Lara. How do you spend your free time ?

Lara : Hi, Jana. I usually visit parks and green spaces. (1) .................................. ?

Jana: I do sports and other healthy activities.

Lara : That's great. Do you think you use your free time well ?

Jana: (2) .................................................................. .

Lara : (3) .................................................................. ?

Jana: Because I learn new things and relax in my free time.

Lara : Who do you enjoy spending your free time with?

Jana: (4) .................................................................. . What about you ?

Lara : (5) .................................................................. .

التحدى تريد السؤال عن (قضاء وقت الفراغ) وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

# General Exercises on unit 3

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. In the .......... , I write a "To do" list.
   a. summer b. mornings c. evenings d. winter
2. I write a "To do" list of things I need to .......... .
   a. build b. buy c. do d. solve
3. A "To do" list helps me .......... my day.
   a. finish b. waste c. write d. organize
4. I spend my free time in a .......... way.
   a. useful b. quick c. slow d. boring

## 2 Complete the following dialog :

**Yara and Salma are talking about sports.**

**Yara** : What's your favorite sport, Salma ?
**Salma** : (1) .......................................................... .
**Yara** : Is there a swimming pool at the club ?
**Salma** : (2) .......................................................... .
**Yara** : (3) .......................................................... ?
**Salma** : Yes, I can swim. (4) .......................................................... ?
**Yara** : My favorite sport is tennis.
**Salma** : Is there a public tennis court in your city ?
**Yara** : (5) .......................................................... . And there's a nice park.
**Salma** : Great ! Let's play a game there.

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

journal – lovely – chef – walks – community

On the weekends, I spend time with my family. We like to go for (1) .......... in nature. We don't take our phones, so we can enjoy what is around us. There are some really (2) .......... parks and gardens in this city. Sometimes my brother and I help in the community. He is a (3) .......... and we help to make food for hungry people at his restaurant. I love to learn recipes from him. My mom is a good cook, too. I think my brother learned a lot from her ! Every night, before I go to bed, I write a (4) .......... . It helps me to think about what I have done and focus on good things. I think it helps me to sleep better, too.

## 4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

When Nermine's family move to Oxford for her dad's job, she misses her hometown, Alexandria. She decides to use her favorite hobby, geocaching, to explore the city. Geocaching is a special sort of outdoor treasure hunt. Just like a normal treasure hunt, you solve clues to help you find something interesting - the treasure. But in geocaching, the clues come from an app on your phone. When you solve the clues, you get coordinates, which are pairs of numbers. These help you find the treasure - the geocache, a box with small, interesting things in **it**. In Alexandria, Nermine loved geocaching with her friends. She's worried that her new classmates might think geocaching is **geeky**, so she doesn't tell them about it.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the "..........".
   a. class  b. box  c. clue  d. job
2. The best title to the text is " .......... ".
   a. Famous city  b. festivals  c. Hard job  d. Unusual hobby
3. The underlined word "**geeky**" means not "..........".
   a. simple  b. cool  c. boring  d. scary

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What's Nermine's favorite hobby ?

..........................................................................................

5. Where does Nermine live now ?

..........................................................................................

6. What do you think of geocaching ?

..........................................................................................

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We like to collect .......... on the beach.
   a. fruits  b. shells  c. flowers  d. leaves
2. Would you like to go with .......... to the museum ?
   a. mine  b. me  c. I  d. my
3. We watch an amazing movie at the .......... .
   a. cinema  b. moon  c. treasure  d. skill

4. She takes a ............ to learn how to design models.
   a. course  b. clue  c. walk  d. recipe
5. Whales are the biggest animals. ............ live in the sea.
   a. Them  b. It  c. They  d. Their
6. SB Who is ............ lemonade at the school bazaar ?
   a. sells  b. selling  c. sold  d. to sell

## 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB We're helping ............ (**he**) with his homework tonight.
2. Where are they ............ (**play**) now ?
3. She ............ (**read**) a short story at the moment.
4. Do ............ (**your**) like walking in nature ?

## 7 Read the text. Add punctuation marks :

nice to meet you, nabila ! i like your ideas

..........................................................................................

## 8 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

**To your friend Adam about a sports day. Your name is Salim and your email address is salim13@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is adamdoo@gmail.com.**

| | |
|---|---|
| From | |
| To | |
| Subject | |

.............................................. ,
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..............................................

# Review A

SB pages 40 : 43



## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| technology | تكنولوجيا | positions | مواقف |
| camp | تخييم / معسكر | records | سجلات |
| Sweden | دولة السويد | plans | خطط |
| local | محلى | get second place | يحصل على المركز الثانى |
| get in touch with | يبقى على تواصل مع | in person | بشكل شخصى |
| face to face | وجهًا لوجه | surprise | مفاجأة |
| for a walk | للتمشية | against | ضد |

**Study these definitions** ادرس هذه التعريفات

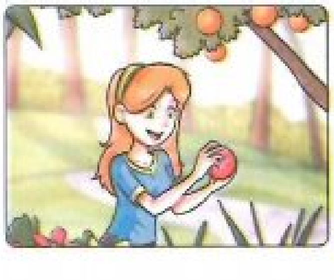
| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **huge** | very big | ضخم |
| **volunteer** | do something without being paid | يتطوع |
| **indoor** | inside a building | فى الداخل |
| **compete** | take part in a competition | يتنافس |
| **tournament** | a sports competition | بطولة / دورة ألعاب |
| **learning** | studying something to understand it better | التعلم |
| **improving** | getting better | يتحس |
| **journal** | a written record of what you do | دفتر يوميات |

## Reading

SB page 40

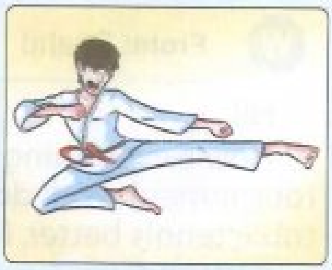
**Ellie, Sweden**

I live next to a **huge**[1] forest, so I like to go on long **walks**[2] in nature. I also volunteer some of my time at the local community garden : I help grow vegetables that later go into meals at the community kitchen. Last summer I also volunteered at the kitchen, but I'm not good at **cooking**[3]!



(1) ضخم | (2) تمشية | (3) الطبخ

**Josh, UK**



I love being **active**[4], so I'm always doing something. I go to the **sports center**[5] nearly every day. I run and swim there. They have a great **indoor**[6] swimming pool. I also do karate three times a week, but I'm still learning. I'm not very good yet, but maybe one day I'll **compete**[7].

**Luca, Italy**



When I'm not at school, I'm usually playing chess (sometimes, at school too!). There's a **tournament**[8] next month, so I'm training for that right now. In my last one, it was **really close**[9]: I got second place! I play a lot of games, usually against the computer, but I also spend a lot of time learning about different positions.

**Nadia, Egypt**



I feel great when I'm helping others. My mom's a teacher, and I help her teach adults to read and write. It's great to see them improving day by day. When I'm not doing that, I like writing about myself. I keep a journal about my life, and I also like to write stories. I often use AI to give me **ideas**[10] about what to write.

(4) نشيط | (5) مركز رياضي | (6) بالداخل | (7) يتنافس / ينافس | (8) مسابقة رياضية | (9) على وشك الفوز | (10) أفكار

SB page 42

My friends and I had a very **busy**[1] weekend. I played in a tennis tournament - and got second place! Eman volunteered at the **community garden**[2], like she does every Saturday. Yehia taught adults to read and write Arabic at his parents' school, and Naglaa helped out at her family's **workshop**[3]. Talia wrote stories on her laptop using AI.

(1) مشغول | (2) حديقة مجتمعية | (3) ورشة عمل

SB page 43

**W** **From:** Shahd **To:** Yara **Subject:** My summer vacation



Hi!

How's everything? Great to know you won the **table tennis**(1) tournament. **Well done**(2)! I'm so **proud**(3) of you! I would like to play table tennis better. Maybe you can teach me one day?

BTW, did you have a good first week back at school? Mine was OK. It was good to see everyone again. There are **a couple of**(4) new students who seem nice.

I do miss the summer vacation, though. I had a great time! Did I tell you that I volunteered at a summer camp for children who can't see? I learned so many skills and met fantastic people. I really enjoy helping other people, and I think I can do it quite well. I'm reading my summer journal again now to remember everything I did. What was your summer like?

TTYL

Shahd

(1) تنس الطاولة | (2) أحسنت | (3) فخور | (4) زوج من

## Listening

SB page 41

### A dialog between Sarah and Mariam about a birthday party

**Mariam :** Hi, Sarah. I saw some photos of you on social media yesterday. You were at a **party**(1). It looked fun!

**Sarah :** Thanks, Mariam. Yes, I had a great time! It was my grandmother's 70th birthday party, and we all wanted it to be **special**(2), so we spent weeks preparing it. It was hard because there was a lot to do and we wanted it to be a **surprise**(3).

**Mariam :** Oh, so she didn't know about the party.

**Sarah :** No, she didn't. Mom **organized**(4) everything, but we all helped. My sister Nadia **got in touch with**(5) all the **family members**(6) on social media. I made the cake, and Dad took the photos on the day.

**Mariam :** And how was the big day ?

**Sarah :** Perfect! My uncle has a café in town, so we had the party there. My grandfather took my grandmother for a walk and said, "Why don't we stop for a coffee at the café?". When they went in, we were all there.

**Mariam :** That's great! And did you know everyone there ?

**Sarah :** No, I met lots of new **relatives**(7). It was also good to see cousins that I usually just message online. It's much better to chat **face-to-face**(8), isn't it ?

**Mariam :** True!

(1) حفلة | (2) مميز | (3) مفاجأة | (4) نظم | (5) يتواصل مع | (6) أفراد العائلة | (7) أقارب | (8) وجهًا لوجه



UNIT FOUR

# Digital life

SB pages 44 : 55

**Unit Objectives :**

- **Reading** : Information about inventions for a sustainable future; An article; Scammed! : a short story
- **Writing** : A blog post about staying safe online; taking part in a technology competition
- **Listening** : Understand a dialog about a new app
- **Speaking** : Talk about staying safe online; Discuss which devices are important and why
- **Language**: Imperatives for instructions; The zero conditional

تنويه أهداف الدروس **"Lessons objectives"** في مقدمة الكتاب.

Lessons **1 & 2**

# ▸ Green technology
# ▸ A new App

SB pages 44 - 47



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| devices (n) | أجهزة | search engine (n) | محرك البحث |
| solar panels (n) | ألواح الطاقة الشمسية | EcoATM | ماكينة صرف آلى صديقة للبيئة |
| charity (n) | جمعية خيرية | advertisement (n) | إعلان |
| sustainable (adj) | مُستدام | ATM | ماكينة صرف النقود |
| app (n) | تطبيق | headphones (n) | سماعات الأذن |
| webcam (n) | كاميرا الويب | ocean (n) | محيط |
| fitness (n) | اللياقة البدنية | solar-powered | تعمل بالطاقة الشمية |

### Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

headphones - advertisement - device - solar panels - charities - fitness

1. We use .................. to make electricity from the sun.
2. I read an .................. on the newspaper for a job.
3. A computer is an important .................. in our life.
4. I like to wear my .................. when I listen to music.
5. You can help to collect money for .................. to help the poor.

### Lesson 1 SB pages 44 & 45

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| fix (ed) (v) | يُصلح | power (n) | قوة - طاقة |
| face (d) (v) | يواجه | machine (n) | آلة |
| battery (n) | بطارية | electricity (n) | كهرباء |
| develop (ed) (v) | يُطَوِّر / يُحسن | inventions (n) | اختراعات |
| infographic (n) | مخطط معلومات بيانى | electronic (adj) | إلكترونى |
| produce (d) (v) | ينتج | emojis (n) | رموز تعبيرية |
| green technology | التكنولوجيا النظيفة | land (n) | اليابسة |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| traditional (adj) | تقليدى | material (n) | مادة خام |
| electric (adj) | كهربي | ships (n) | سُفن |
| airplanes (n) | طائرات | recycling (n) | إعادة تدوير |
| tree-planting project | مشروع غرس الأشجار | | |

## Lesson 2 SB pages 46 & 47

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| change (d) (v) | يتغير - يغير | AppErture (n) | تطبيق تغيير الصور |
| maps (n) | خرائط | icon (n) | أيقونة |
| tap (ped) (v) | ينقر باللمس | effects (n) | مؤثرات |
| bar (n) | شريط | folder (n) | مجلد - ملف |
| drag (ged) (v) | يسحب | save (d) (v) | يحفظ |
| delete (d) (v) | يحذف | video call (n) | مكالمة فيديو |
| address book (n) | دليل | eraser (n) | ممحاة |
| screen (n) | شاشة | point (ed) (v) | يوجه - يصوب |
| scroll (ed) (v) | يمرر - ينتقل | type (d) (v) | يكتب |
| press (ed) (v) | يضغط | sign (n) | لافتة |
| click (ed) (v) | يضغط - ينقر | insert (ed) (v) | يُدخل / يدرج [شيء] |

## Study this definition ادرس هذا التعريف

**An infographic** is a way of showing information quickly and clearly. مخطط معلوماتى / بيانى

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| keep | يبقى - يحتفظ | kept | kept |
| fly | يطير | flew | flown |
| choose | يختار | chose | chosen |
| take | يأخذ | took | taken |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▸ Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| online | متصل بالإنترنت | connected | offline | غير متصل بالإنترنت |
| fix | يصلح | repair - mend | damage | يدمر - يتلف |
| come | يأتى | reach - arrive | leave | يغادر |
| traditional | تقليدى | old / classical | modern / unusual | حديث / غير تقليدى |

### ▸ Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix بادئة / ناهية | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| re– | تعطى معنى القيام بالفعل مرة ثانية | recycle يعيد تدوير |
| –ion | تكوّن الاسم من الفعل | invention اختراع |
| –ing | تكوّن الاسم من الفعل | recycling إعادة تدوير |
| –able | تكوّن الصفة من الفعل | sustainable مُستدام |
| –al | تكوّن الصفة من الاسم | traditional تقليدى |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The mechanic can fix your car. The word "fix" means " ............ ".
   a. reach b. repair c. collect d. damage
2. The antonym of the word "come" is " ............ ".
   a. let b. get c. reach d. leave
3. We add the suffix " ............ " to form the noun from the word "invent".
   a. –ness b. –ion c. –ed d. –ment
4. The suffix " ............ " changes the verb "recycle" into a noun.
   a. –ment b. –ed c. –ing d. –ous
5. We add the suffix "–able" to form the ............ from the verb "sustain".
   a. adjective b. noun c. preposition d. adverb

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

**1 sweet (n) & (adj)**

* sweet (n) حلوى
  ▸ Children like eating **sweets**.
* sweet (adj) لطيف - حلو المذاق
  ▸ SB **Sweet** ! You have a black cat.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 46*

**2 tap / click**

* tap يلمس برفق على سطح شاشة محدثًا صوتًا أحيانًا (ينقر باللمس)
  ▸ **Tap** the app to open it.
* click يضغط باستخدام الفأرة
  ▸ **Click** on the picture of a webcam.

*Listening on lesson 2 SB page 46*

### 3 thanks for / thanks to

* Thanks for (n/inf. + ing) — شكرًا لـ / على
  - Thanks for telling me about AppErture.
* Thanks to + (n) — بفضل / بسبب
  - Thanks to your help, I passed my exams.

*Listening on lesson 2 SB page 46*

### 4 help + مفعول + (inf.) — يُساعد فى

- Eco-friendly ATMs **help us recycle** old electronic devices.

*Reading on lesson 1 SB page 45*

### 5 run (v) — يجرى / يُشغل / يدير

- Hassan **runs** quickly.
- Batteries produce enough power to **run** electric cars. *Lesson 1 SB page 45*
- Rokaya **runs** a factory for producing electric devices.

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

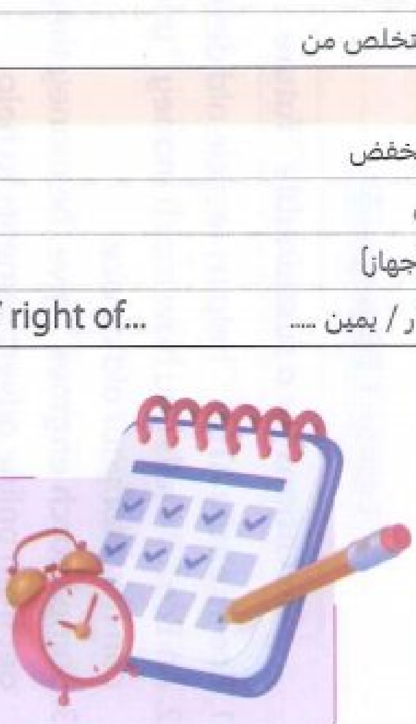
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| take care of | يعتنى بـ | keep money | يحتفظ بالمال |
| make electricity | يولد الكهرباء | take it back to | يسترده / يعيده لـ |
| easy-to-read | سهلة القراءة | take away | يزيل - يتخلص من |
| **Prepositions حروف الجر** | | | |
| around the world | حول العالم | put down | ينزل - يخفض |
| full of | ممتلئ بـ | click on | ينقر على |
| bad for | ضار لـ | switch on | يشغل (جهاز) |
| press on | يضغط على | on the left / right of... | على يسار / يمين ..... |

Aweek is enough

مراجعة المنهج
و التمكن منه فى
اسبوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER



# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts



## Lesson 1 SB page 45

### Inventions for a sustainable[1] future

1. **Eco-friendly ATMs**[2] help us recycle old devices.
2. An EcoATM tells you how much **money**[3] you can have for your old device.
3. Some **search engines**[4] give the money they get from online advertisements to help tree-planting projects.
4. Scientists are developing new **batteries**[5] that work using materials from plants.
5. These batteries may produce power to run electric cars.
6. Solar-powered airplanes fly using power that comes from **solar panels**[6].
7. The planes can **fly**[7] around the world, day or night.
8. Plastic in oceans is bad for life.
9. Ocean clean-up projects collect rubbish in the water for recycling.
10. Ships take **plastic rubbish**[8] to land for recycling.

## Lesson 2 SB page 46

### Apps on your phone

1. Selim shows Amir how to use **AppErture**[9].
2. Selim gives him some **instructions**[10].
3. Amir can change his cat color using the **color bar**[11].
4. Amir can save the photo by dragging it to "Save" **folder**[12].

## Lesson 2 SB page 47

### How to use video call app

1. Switch on your laptop and open the video call program.
2. Don't forget to connect your headphones.
3. Click the address book. It's on left of your screen.
4. Find the name you want to call and click on it.
5. Remember to open your webcam.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) مستدام | (2) ماكينة صرف آلي صديقة للبيئة | (3) نقود |
| (4) محرك البحث | (5) بطاريات | (6) ألواح شمسية |
| (7) يطير | (8) مخلفات بلاستيكية | (9) تطبيق تعديل الصور |
| (10) تعليمات | (11) شريط الألوان | (12) ملف |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Inventions for sustainable future
* Solar energy
* Giving instructions to use an app

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 45

### Inventions for a sustainable[1] future

Our world has many problems. We need new ways to help us take care of our **planet**[2] and fix some of the problems it faces. Here are some exciting new **inventions**[3] which will help us.

#### EcoATMs



We use regular **ATMs**[4] to take money out or put money into our banks. Eco-friendly ATMs help us recycle old electronic **devices**[5]. When you put your old device in it, the machine tells you how much money you can have for it . You can keep the money or give it to a charity !

#### Tree-planting projects



When we go online, we see online **advertisements**[6]. Some search engines give the money they get from advertisements to help **tree-planting projects**[7] around the world.

#### Plant-based batteries



Scientists are developing batteries that work using material from plants. The way these batteries are made is better for the environment than **traditional**[8] batteries. In the future, they could even **produce**[9] enough power to run electric cars!

#### Solar-powered airplanes



Most airplanes aren't good for our planet. Solar-powered airplanes fly using power that comes from **solar panels**[10]. It is very clean power. The planes can fly around the world, day or night. It's an exciting new invention for the future!

(1) مستدام | (2) كوكب | (3) إختراعات | (4) ماكينات الصراف الآلي | (5) أجهزة | (6) إعلانات | (7) مشاريع غرس الأشجار | (8) تقليدى | (9) ينتج | (10) ألواح الطاقة الشمسية

### Ocean clean-up projects[11]



The world's oceans are full of plastic which is very bad for life in the ocean. Ocean clean-up projects collect rubbish in the water, then ships **take it back to**[12] land for recycling.

(11) مشاريع تنظيف المحيطات | (12) يعيدها إلى

## Reading

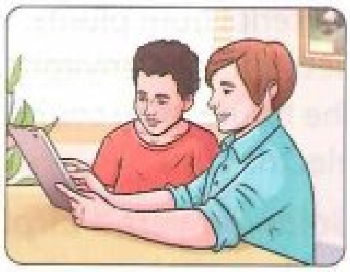
on Lesson 2 SB page 47

**Amira :** Can you tell me how to use the video call app ?
**Samia:** Sure, it's really easy. **Switch on**[1] your laptop!
**Amira :** Done! What's next ?
**Samia:** Open the video call program. And don't forget to connect your headphones!
**Amira :** Ok.
**Samia:** Then click the **address book**[2].
**Amira :** Is it on right of my **screen**[3]?
**Samia:** No, it's on the left. Next, find the name you want.
**Amira :** I found Nermine. What now ?
**Samia:** Finally, just click on her name to call her! Remember to open your **webcam**[4] too !
**Amira :** Thank you Samia !

(1) يشغل | (2) دليل | (3) شاشة | (4) كاميرا الانترنت

## Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 46



**Amir :** Hi Selim. Thanks for telling me about **AppErture**[1]! I'm really excited!
**Selim :** No problem! I can show you how to use it if you want. Have you got the app on your phone yet ?
**Amir :** Yes, I have ! I want to try it now! Show me how to use it!
**Selim :** OK. First, **tap**[2] the app to open it. Can you see the camera **icon**[3] ?
**Amir :** Here? Yes.
**Selim :** Press on the icon for one second and it will open your photos. Don't stop pressing. Wait until they open. Then **choose**[4] a photo you want to change.

(1) تطبيق تغيير الصور | (2) ينقر باللمس | (3) أيقونة | (4) يختار

**Amir** : Right. Here's a photo of my cat, Fluffy !
**Selim** : Sweet ! You have a black cat.. do you want to make it another color ?
**Amir** : OK !
**Selim** : Open the color bar and choose the color you want.
**Amir** : Haha! I have a purple cat! What about these **effects**(5) ? Look! I can use the eraser to **take away**(6) your bed. You **look like**(7) you're flying now! How can I save the photo ?
**Selim** : Keep your finger on the photo and **drag**(8) it to the 'Save' folder. Now share it with me, please! I love it!
**Amir** : I will! Thanks, Selim.

(5) تأثيرات | (6) يتخلص من | (7) يشبه/يبدو | (8) يسحب

## 2. Skills
المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات (ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية)

### Using visual clues to identify a text type :
المؤشرات البصرية لتحديد نوع النص :

**1 Learn**

**The way a text looks can give us clues about what type of text it is.**

شكل النص يعطي لك معلومات عن نوع النص.

**An infographic uses**

pictures | diagrams | symbols

- They present key data and ideas. - يقومون بتقديم البيانات والأفكار المفتاحية.
- Any text is written in sort and simple paragraphs. - أي نص يكتب بشكل مختصر وفقرات بسيطة.

**2 Practice on lesson 1** SB page 45

**Read the text again and answer the question :**

- What kind of text is it ?

..............................................................................................

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

**Key vocabulary**

1. Computers, smart phones and laptops are modern ............ .
   a. devices  b. forks  c. plants  d. engines

2. Doing exercise regularly is very important for your ............ .
   a. invention b. furniture c. community d. fitness
3. Solar-powered airplanes and plant-based batteries are new inventions for ............ future.
   a. sustainable b. unclear c. polluted d. dirty
4. I'll take cash money out of a/an ............ .
   a. CD b. LCD c. AI d. ATM
5. ............ are important organizations for helping poor people.
   a. Airplanes b. Batteries c. Charities d. Engines

**SB Exercises**

6. SB Solar-powered ............ can fly around the world, day or night.
   a. projects b. batteries c. airplanes d. machines
7. SB We can ............ our problems with some new inventions.
   a. increase b. remember c. ignore d. face
8. SB In the future, plant-based ............ could even produce enough power to run electric cars.
   a. projects b. ATMs c. batteries d. oceans
9. SB Use the eraser to ............ something in a photo.
   a. keep b. save c. open d. delete

**El-Moasser Exercises**

10. Using ............ helps many people find directions for their destination.
    a. batteries b. maps c. panels d. drawings
11. AppErture is an app for ............ photos.
    a. saving b. changing c. deleting d. opening
12. ............ the app to open it.
    a. Break b. Hit c. Tap d. Throw
13. We need ............ to light our home and use electronic devices.
    a. airplanes b. information c. electricity d. emojis
14. EcoATMs are great inventions that help us ............ old electronic devices.
    a. ask b. learn c. cycle d. recycle

## Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. ............ my father, I could succeed in my life.
    a. Thanks at b. Thanks to c. Thanks of d. Thanks about
16. He forgot to ............ the alarm, so he was late for his school.
    a. set b. take c. drag d. send

## 3. Speaking مهارة التحدث

**Playing a guessing game with your partner :** القيام بلعبة التخمين مع زميل لك :

| Stimulus | Response |
|---|---|
| A : These make electricity using the sun.<br>هذه الأشياء تنتج الكهرباء باستخدام الشمس. | B : Solar panels ألواح الطاقة الشمسية |
| A : These help us to take money out or put money into our banks.<br>هذه الأشياء تساعدنا أن نأخذ الأموال أو نضعها في البنوك. | B : ATMs ماكينات الصراف الآلي |
| A : These fly using power that comes from solar panels.<br>تقوم بالطيران باستخدام ألواح الطاقة الشمسية. | B : Solar-powered airplanes<br>طائرات الطاقة الشمسية |

# III Language

## The imperative صيغة الأمر

### Usage الاستخدام

- When you give instructions, you use the imperative form of the verb.
  - تستخدم صيغة الأمر للفعل عند إعطاء تعليمات.
- We don't add the personal pronoun (e.g. you) before the verb.
  - لا تقوم بإضافة ضمير الفاعل للجملة مثل "you" قبل مصدر الفعل.

### Formation التكوين

- It's formed of the infinitive of the verb without "to".

الأمر المثبت → Inf. مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

ex. - Turn left. 

- Insert the money in here. 

ex. - Tap the app to open it.

- Open the video call program.

- When you tell someone not to do something, you use "Don't" before the imperative form of the verb.

الأمر المنفى → Don't + inf. مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

ex. - Don't use your phone here. 

- Don't take photographs here. 

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB ............ use your phone here.
   a. Aren't b. Don't c. Didn't d. Won't
2. SB ............ the photo you want to change.
   a. Choose b. Choosing c. Chooses d. Chose
3. SB Don't ............ pressing. Wait until photos open.
   a. to stop b. stopped c. stop d. stops
4. SB I want to try the app now ! ............ me how to use it !
   a. Shows b. Show c. Showing d. To show

El-Moasser Exercises

5. ............ and take a break when you're tired.
   a. To relax b. Relax c. Relaxing d. Relaxed
6. Don't ............ the quiz with the red pen.
   a. answers b. to answer c. answering d. answer
7. ............ notes on the book you read.
   a. Made b. Making c. Make d. Makes
8. ............ spend all your money on toys.
   a. Hasn't b. Don't c. Aren't d. Didn't

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. SB ............ (**Pressed**) on the camera icon to open your photos.
2. SB ............ (**Keeping**) your fingers on the photo and drag it to the "Save" folder.
3. SB ............ (**To turn**) on your laptop.
4. SB ............ (**Used**) the eraser to delete something in a photo.
5. SB ............ (**Not take**) photographs here.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. Don't ............ (**ate**) in the classroom.
7. ............ (**Planning**) your free time to learn new skills.
8. ............ (**Worked**) with your partner on the school project.
9. ............ (**Didn't**) give plants too much water.
10. ............ (**To plant**) a tree to help the environment.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand   Apply   Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Most airplanes aren't good for our ............ .
   a. school   b. planet   c. city   d. project
2. Solar-powered airplanes fly using power that comes from ............ .
   a. sea water   b. plants   c. solar panels   d. fossil fuels
3. It is very ............ power.
   a. clean   b. cheap   c. solid   d. liquid
4. The planes can fly around the ............ , day or night.
   a. space   b. planets   c. time   d. world

### 2 Complete the following dialog :

**Omar and Mohab are talking about ATMs.**

**Omar** : I don't have enough money to pay for the jacket !

**Mohab** : (1) .............................................................................. ?

**Omar** : I will use the visa card to get money from any ATMs.

**Mohab** : (2) .............................................................................. ?

**Omar** : ATM is a machine we use to take money out or put money into our banks.

**Mohab** : Great ! Do you know how to use it ?

**Omar** : (3) .............................................................................. . It's very easy. Look! It's the Eco-friendly ATM!

**Mohab** : What is the Eco-friendly ATM?

**Omar** : (4) .............................................................................. .

**Mohab** : A machine for our old devices! Do you get money when you put old devices?

**Omar** : (5) .............................................................................. . You can give it to a charity, too.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ocean clean-up projects collect ............ in the water.
   a. rubbish   b. ATM   c. batteries   d. airplanes
2. Google and Yahoo are famous search ............ .
   a. machines   b. engines   c. devices   d. films

3. We can ............ plastic bags to make new things from plastic.
   a. recycle b. destroy c. bake d. make
4. I need to charge my phone. The ............ is empty.
   a. airplane b. panel c. battery d. pot
5. ............ the questions carefully before answering the exam.
   a. Reads b. Reading c. Read d. Didn't read
6. Eat healthy food and ............ regular exercise.
   a. took b. takes c. taken d. take
7. Kids always use a/an ............ to correct mistakes when they're writing.
   a. panel b. eraser c. ATM d. battery
8. ............ are the natural habitats for a lot of sea animals and plants.
   a. Trees b. Oceans c. Forests d. Airplanes
9. He saw an online ............ about selling new electric cars.
   a. advertisement b. airplane c. world d. language
10. We use ............ to recycle old devices to help our planet.
   a. ATMs b. BMW c. EcoATMs d. GPS

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ............ (**Calling**) me when you need any help.
2. ............ (**Not throw**) plastic trash into oceans.
3. Don't ............ (**is**) late for the meeting tomorrow.
4. ............ (**Gives**) the money to the charity.

## 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*"Inventions for a sustainable future"*

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

Lessons

# 3 & 4

- Staying safe online
- Science and technology

SB pages 48 - 51



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| accept (ed) (v) | يقبل | post (ed) (v),(n) | ينشر - منشور |
| hacker (n) | مخترق الإنترنت | rude (adj) | قاسى / وقح |
| cyberbullying (n) | التنمر الإلكترونى | hide behind | يختبئ خلف / وراء (شيء / شخص) |
| record (ed) (v) | يسجل | nasty (adj) | بذئ / بغيض |
| efficiently (adv) | بكفاءة | design (ed) (v) | يصمم |
| cool (ed) (v) | يُبرد / يخفض درجة حرارة | aim (n) | هدف |
| technology (n) | التكنولوچيا | prove (d) (v) | يثبت - يبرهن |

### Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

rude - aim - efficiently - devices - cool

1. The new machine works ................. . It saves time and money.
2. My ................. is to win the competition.
3. Air conditioning helps to ................. our houses in summer.
4. Don't be ................. when you talk to your friends.

### Lesson 3 SB pages 48 & 49

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| account (n) | حساب على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى | link (n) | رابط |
| password (n) | كلمة مرور | behavior (n) | سلوك |
| false name | اسم مستعار | download (ed) (v) | يحمل (تطبيق) |
| bully (ied) (v),(n) | يتنمر / متنمر | friend request (n) | طلب صداقة |
| mobile phone (n) | الهاتف المحمول | characters (n) | رموز |
| tablet (n) | كمبيوتر لوحى | guess (ed)(v) | يخمن |
| cyberbully (ied) (v), (n) | يتنمر عبر الإنترنت / المتنمر | position (n) | مكان - موضع |
| delete (d) (v) | يحذف | forever (adv) | إلى الأبد |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| top tip (n) | نصيحة هامة | platform (n) | منصة |
| treat (ed) (v) | يعامل - يتعامل مع | | |

## Lesson 4

SB pages 50 & 51

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| press (ed) (v) | يضغط | headphones (n) | سماعات الأذن |
| sea level (n) | مستوى البحر | science (n) | العلوم |
| technological (adj) | تكنولوجى | results (n) | نتائج |
| fact (n) | حقيقة | button (n) | زر |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| upset | يضايق / يزعج | upset | upset |
| hide | يختبئ | hid | hidden |
| understand | يفهم | understood | understood |
| lose | يفقد | lost | lost |
| freeze | يجمد | froze | frozen |

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **hacker** | a person who uses computers to get hold of private information | مخترق الإنترنت |
| **post** | put on social media | ينشر [على موقع التواصل] |
| **nasty** | very bad or unkind | بذئ - بغيض |
| **accept** | agree to something | يقبل |
| **cyberbullying** | treating someone badly either online or through electronic messaging | التنمر الالكترونى |
| **hide behind** | to put yourself in a position where you cannot be seen | يختبئ خلف / وراء |
| **prove** | to show that something is true | يثبت - يبرهن |
| **aim** | what you want to achieve when you do something | هدف |
| **freeze** | to turn water into ice | يُجمد |
| **cool** | to lose heat | يُبرد / يخفض درجة حرارة |
| **efficiently** | quickly and with good results | بكفاءة |
| **device** | a small electronic machine | جهاز |

## Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **post** | a comment | ينشر تعليق | **download** | an app | يحمل تطبيق من على الإنترنت |
| | a photo | ينشر صورة | **do** | jobs | يقوم بوظائف |
| | a message | ينشر رسالة | | tests | يجرى اختبارات |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▸ Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| download يحمل [ملفات] من على الانترنت | transfer | upload يرفع [ملفات] على الانترنت |
| efficiently بكفاءة | effectively | awfully بشكل سيء |
| accept يقبل | agree | disagree / refuse يرفض |
| appear يظهر | come out | disappear / hide يختفى |

### ▸ Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix بادئة / ناهية | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –er | تحويل الفعل إلى اسم | hacker مخترق |
| –ly | تحويل الصفة إلى حال | efficiently بكفاءة |
| –cal | تحويل الاسم إلى صفة | technological تكنولوجى |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The word "............" is the synonym of "accept".
   a. refuse b. agree c. hide d. disagree
2. The word "............" is the opposite of "upload".
   a. download b. freeze c. cool d. accept
3. We add the suffix "............" to turn the word "technology" into an adjective.
   a. –er b. –ing c. –cal d. –ment

# General Notes on Reading & Listening

## 1 safe – save

* safe (adj) آمن

▸ These rules keep you **safe**.

* save (d) (v) ينقذ - يوفر

▸ Online shopping can **save** time.

▸ The brave man **saved** the girl from drowning.

*Lesson 3 SB page 48*

## 2 bullies – hackers

متنمرين / مخترق حسابات الآخرين

▸ **Bullies** write bad comments on their friends online.

▸ **Hackers** can use others' personal information to hurt them.

*Lesson 3 SB page 48*

## 3 cyberbullying - cyberbully

التنمر عبر الإنترنت / متنمر عبر الإنترنت

▸ **Cyberbullying** is a big problem for young people.

▸ What do **cyberbullies** use when they post horrible messages online ?

*SB page 48*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | Prepositions حروف الجر | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stay safe = keep safe | يبقى آمنًا | a mix of | خليط من |
| hard to guess | يصعب تخمينها | turn ... into ... | يحول .......... إلى .......... |
| get hold of | يصل إلى / يحصل على | click on | ينقر على |
| spend a lot of money | ينفق الكثير من المال | chat with | يقوم بدردشة مع |
| get tired | يصاب بالارهاق | delete ... from ... | يحذف .... من .... |
| on the other hand | من ناحية أخرى | careful of | حذر / حريص بشأن |
| in other words | بمعنى آخر | as a result of | كنتيجة لـ |
| in short | باختصار | | |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 3 SB page 48

### Ways to stay safe online

▶ There are a few **rules**[1] that can keep you safe online.

1. **Choose strong passwords.**
   - The strong **password**[2] is a mix of letters, numbers and special **characters**[3].
   - Long passwords are hard to guess.
   - Never use anything that hackers can guess.
2. **Think before you post.**
   - Don't post or share anything **nasty**[4] or false.
3. **Be careful of friend requests.**
   - Don't accept **friend requests**[5] from people you don't know.
   - Never **share**[6] personal information with anyone.
4. **Be kind online.**
   - **Cyberbullies**[7] can post horrible messages online easily.
   - They can hide behind a false name.
   - Tell an adult if someone is bullying you.

## Lesson 4 SB page 50

### Science and technology

1. Science tries to **increase**[8] our understanding of how the world and everything in it works.
2. Technology tries to solve problems and help us to do things more efficiently.
3. In science, when we believe something is true, we do tests to check our ideas.
4. To understand the **relationship**[9] between science and technology, think about electricity.
5. Many devices use electricity.
6. Technology is about doing things to help the world.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) قواعد | (2) كلمة مرور | (3) رموز |
| (4) بغيض | (5) طلبات صداقة | (6) يشارك |
| (7) متنمر إلكتروني | (8) يزيد | (9) علاقة - صلة |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* How to stay safe online    * The problem of cyberbullying    * Science and technology

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

## Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

• on Lesson 3 SB page 48

### An article : Staying safe online



When you go online to send messages, play video games, **download**[1] an app, or just check your **social media**[2], it's important to remember a few simple rules that can keep you safe.

**1. Choose strong passwords**

It's important to use a password that is a mix of letters, numbers, and special **characters**[3] like !, &, or $. Long passwords are also a good idea as they are hard to guess. Never use your name or date of birth, your pet's name, or anything that **hackers**[4] can guess from your social media.

**2. Think before you post**

When you post a comment or photo on social media, it stays there forever-even if you **delete**[5] it from your account. Don't post or share anything **nasty**[6] or false.

**3. Be careful of friend requests**



Don't **accept**[7] friend requests from people you don't know. Always tell your parents if someone you don't know sends you messages or wants to chat with you, and don't click on any links they send you. Never share personal information with anyone.

**4. Be kind online**

**Cyberbullying**[8] is a big problem for young people. It's easier for bullies to post horrible messages online as they can hide behind a false name. Cyberbullying can happen any time you are online - at home, at school, or out with your friends. Tell an adult if someone is bullying you. And always be kind online.

(1) تحميل / تنزيل
(2) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
(3) رموز
(4) قراصنة / مخترقين
(5) يحذف
(6) بذئ / ردئ
(7) يقبل
(8) التنمر الإلكترونى

**Answer the following questions.**

- Critical thinking skill. مهارة التفكير النقدى.

Learn 1. Why do you think cyberbullying is a big problem ?
***- Because bullies can post horrible messages easily.***

Practice 2. It's dangerous to share your personal information. Why ?
.................................................................

## Listening

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

### A talk about science and technology

**Reader M1:**

Science and technology - so what's the **difference**[1] ?

The main difference between science and technology is that they have different aims. Science tries to increase our understanding of how the world and everything in it works. Technology tries to solve problems and help us to do things more **efficiently**[2] .

Science is about asking questions about the natural world, questions like, if this happens, why does this always happen next ? It's about looking carefully and recording exactly what wee see. In science, when we believe something is true, we do tests to check our ideas. If we can use science to **prove**[3] something, we know it is a **fact**[4]. For example, we can do tests to show that , at sea level, if fresh water cools to a **temperature**[5] of zero degrees Celsius, it always freezes into solid ice.

Technology uses the information we learn from science to **solve problems**[6] and find new ways to do things. Sometimes it does this by designing devices which can help us, like phones and computers. If you want to understand the relationship between science and technology, think about electricity. Many devices use electricity . We can't design a new phone if we don't understand how electricity works. Science can explain this for us . **In short**[7], science is about **understanding**[8] the world, but technology is about doing things to help the world.

(1) اختلاف | (2) بكفاءة | (3) يثبت | (4) حقيقة | (5) درجة الحرارة | (6) يحل المشكلات | (7) باختصار | (8) فهم - استيعاب

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

▸ **Key vocabulary**

1. The architect is the person who ............ buildings.
   a. mixes b. sells c. designs d. matches
2. His ............ comment on my photo makes me angry.
   a. electronic b. nasty c. proud d. kind
3. He ............ my friend request so that we can chat.
   a. refused b. deleted c. accepted d. guessed

4. Water ............ in cold places and turns into snow.
   a. freezes  b. heats  c. calms  d. mixes

SB Exercises

5. SB It's easier for ............ to post horrible messages online as they can hide behind a false name.
   a. requests  b. advertisements
   c. bullies  d. polite people
6. SB ............ helps us to do jobs more quickly.
   a. Account  b. Cyberbullying  c. Profile  d. Technology
7. SB When you post a ............ or photo on social media, it stays there forever.
   a. comment  b. friend  c. shop  d. device

El-Moasser Exercises

8. We use strong passwords to keep our ............ safe on social media.
   a. role  b. account  c. space  d. place
9. You have to write your ............ to log on your account on social media.
   a. opinion  b. address  c. result  d. password
10. Amal was disappointed because she couldn't achieve her ............ .
   a. platforms  b. accounts  c. profiles  d. aims

▸ **Definitions**

11. ............ means treating someone badly either online or through electronic messaging.
   a. Behavior  b. Cyberbullying  c. Technology  d. Social media
12. A ............ is a person who uses computers to get hold of private information.
   a. worker  b. volunteer  c. hacker  d. waiter

▸ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

13. This drink is a mix ............ lemons and green apples.
   a. in  b. of  c. on  d. at
14. Noha deleted some things ............ the shopping list.
   a. off  b. with  c. out  d. from
15. ............ your money. Don't waste it.
   a. Safe  b. Save  c. Bully  d. Cool
16. ............ a result of getting up late, Bassim missed the bus.
   a. As  b. Like  c. For  d. With

## 2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

### ▸Talking about staying safe online :

الحديث عن البقاء آمنا عبر الإنترنت :

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| - How can I stay safe online ?<br>- كيف يمكن أن أبقى آمنًا عبر الإنترنت ؟ | - Choosing strong passwords can help you.<br>- اختيار كلمات مرور قوية يمكن أن يساعد على ذلك. |
| - What makes a password strong ?<br>- ما الذى يجعل كلمة المرور قوية ؟ | - The strong password is a mix of letters, numbers, and special characters.<br>- كلمة المرور القوية هى مجموعة من الحروف والأرقام والرموز الخاصة. |
| - How can I deal with friend requests ?<br>- كيف أتعامل مع طلبات الصداقة ؟ | - Don't accept friend requests from people you don't know.<br>- لا تقبل طلبات صداقة من أشخاص لا تعرفها. |

### ▸Asking and answering about the most important technological devices :

السؤال والإجابة عن أهم الأجهزة التكنولوجية :

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| - Which device do you think is the most important ?<br>- أى جهاز تعتقد أنه الأكثر أهمية ؟ | - I think phones are the most important.<br>- أعتقد أن الهواتف هى الأكثر أهمية. |
| - Why do you think phones are the most important ?<br>- لماذا تعتقد أن الهواتف هى الأكثر أهمية ؟ | - Because we use them for so many things.<br>- لأننا نستخدمهم للعديد من الأشياء. |
| - What's the difference between science and technology ?<br>- ما الفرق بين العلوم والتكنولوجيا ؟ | - Science is about understanding the world, while technology is about using understanding of the world.<br>- العلوم هى فهم العالم، بينما التكنولوجيا هى استخدام هذا الفهم للعالم. |

**تذكر :**

- تستخدم [Which] بمعنى أى للاختيار ما بين مجموعة أشياء.
- لإعطاء رأى شخصى يمكن استخدام [I think] فى بداية الجملة.
- تستخدم [Why] للسؤال عن السبب وللإجابة تستخدم [ جملة + because] أو [to + inf.].

# III Language

## The Zero Conditional " If " الحالة الشرطية الصفرية " If "

**Usage** الاستخدام

- We use the "zero conditional " to talk about facts and things that are always true.
- تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الصفرية لتعبر عن حقائق وأشياء دائمًا حقيقية.

**Formation** التكوين

### 1 Affirmative and Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتــة والمنفية

| If | + present simple جملة مضارع بسيط | , | present simple جملة مضارع بسيط |
|---|---|---|---|
| If | you press this button | , | it takes a photo. [جملة زمنها مضارع بسيط] |
| If | we don't understand how electricity works | , | we can't design a new phone. [جملة بها فعل ناقص] |

- لاحظ يمكن استخدام can / can't فى جملة جواب الشرط

Conditional sentences usually have two parts : the if-clause and the main clause.

عادةً ما تحتوى الجمل الشرطية على جزئين : جملة "if" والجملة الأساسية.

**ex.** - If fresh water cools to a temperature of 0°C, it always freezes into solid ice.

(If fresh water cools to a temperature of 0°C → if-clause; it always freezes into solid ice → main clause)

- We use the present simple tense in both clauses.
- نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط فى كلًا من الجملتين.

**ex.** - I wear a jacket if it is cold.

### Notes

- When the "if - clause" comes first, we put a comma (,) between the two clauses.
- عندما تأتى الجملة التى بها "if" فى البداية نضع فاصلة سفلية "," بين الجملتين.

**ex.** - If you press this button, the tablet switches off.

- When the "if - clause" comes second, we don't use a comma ( , ).
- عندما تأتى الجملة التى بها "if" فى النهاية لا نضع فاصلة سفلية ",".

**ex.** - The tablet switches off if you press this button.

## 2 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

### A Yes/No question السؤال بـ "هل"

Do / Does / Can + subj. الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + if + present simple جملة مضارع بسيط ?

| Does | the door | open | if | you press that button ? |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Can | you | tell me | if | you need anything ? |

### B Wh- question السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام

Question word + do / does / can + subj. الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل + if + present simple جملة مضارع بسيط ?

How | can | we | get | to Giza | if | we | miss | the bus ?

**Note**

- In questions, the clause with (if) usually comes at the end.

◄ في السؤال، الجملة التي بها (if) عادة تأتي في النهاية.

**ex.** - What happens if you play lots of video games ?
**ex.** - Do plants grow if we don't water them?

**Note**

◄ يمكننا أيضاً استخدام الحالة الصفرية لإعطاء التعليمات أو تقديم اقتراحات. وللقيام بذلك، نستخدم (if) وصيغة الأمر :

- If + present simple مضارع بسيط , imperative صيغة الأمر

**ex.** - If you see Kamal, tell him to call me.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB If you ............ a lot, you learn more words.
   a. reads  b. read  c. reading  d. to read

2. SB What ............ if you add some oil ?
   a. happening   b. happen   c. happened   d. happens
3. SB If it ............ in the desert, plants can suddenly appear.
   a. rain   b. raining   c. rains   d. rained
4. SB If I go to bed late, I ............ always tired the next morning.
   a. 've   b. 'm   c. 're   d. 'll
5. SB If it ............ rain for a long time, it can cause a drought.
   a. didn't   b. isn't   c. don't   d. doesn't
6. SB You can a hear video call better ............ you wear your headphones.
   a. if   b. where   c. how   d. or

El-Moasser Exercises

7. If you water a tree, it ............ .
   a. grew   b. grow   c. grows   d. growing
8. If I am sick, I ............ to the doctor.
   a. goes   b. go   c. going   d. to go
9. Babies ............ sleep if they're hungry.
   a. hadn't   b. can't   c. doesn't   d. didn't
10. What happens if you don't............ for a test ?
   a. study   b. studying   c. to study   d. studied

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. SB She can't use her computer if she ............ (**not remember**) the password.
2. SB If you ............ (**deleting**) something, you get rid of it.
3. SB If you want a dessert, you can ............ (**ordered**) one now.
4. SB If I ............ (**not/wear**) my glasses, I can't see well.
5. SB If we cycle to the beach, it ............ (**are**) much quicker.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. If you add two and three, you ............ (**gets**) five.
7. If they ............ (**listens**) to loud music, they get headache.
8. Call me if you ............ (**had**) a problem with the machine.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

Understand   Apply   Create

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. Cyberbullying is a big ............ for young people.
   a. project   b. activity   c. problem   d. dream
2. It's easier for bullies to ............ horrible messages.
   a. click   b. post   c. check   d. save
3. Bullies can hide behind a false ............ .
   a. site   b. message   c. video   d. name
4. Cyberbullying can happen any time you are ............ .
   a. weak   b. online   c. famous   d. busy

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

hackers - Don't - guess - stays - accept

It's important to use a password that is a mix of letters, numbers, and special characters like !, &, or $. Long passwords are also a good idea as they are hard to (1) ...................... . Never use your name or date of birth, your pet's name, or anything that (2) ...................... can guess from your social media.

When you post a comment or photo on social media, it (3) ...................... there forever-even if you delete it from your account. (4) ...................... post or share anything nasty or false.

### 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB It's a good idea to have a /an ............ password because it's hard to guess.
   a. easy   b. short   c. strong   d. clear
2. " ............ " means quickly and with good results.
   a. Usually   b. Efficiently   c. Carefully   d. Friendly
3. ............ can get hold of your private information.
   a. Charities   b. Panels   c. Hackers   d. Engines
4. I ............ an app on my phone to help me read English.
   a. posted   b. downloaded   c. controlled   d. wrote

5. **A :** What ............ if you throw a stone in the lake ? **B :** It sinks to the bottom.
   a. happening b. happens c. happened d. happen
6. If you ............ eat healthy food, you get sick.
   a. aren't b. didn't c. don't d. hasn't
7. If you forget your keys, ............ your parents to help you.
   a. telling b. tell c. told d. tells
8. I think smart phones are the most important ............ today.
   a. devices b. rules c. records d. jobs
9. SB Don't post or share anything ............ or false online.
   a. useful b. nasty c. kind d. true
10. If you ............ water, it turns into ice.
   a. boil b. heat c. freeze d. cook

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If it ............ (**rained**) heavily, streets get wet.
2. If you heat water, it ............ (**boil**) .
3. If children ............ (**studies**) hard, they pass their exams.
4. If you ............ (**cycling**), you help the environment.

## 5 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**To your friend Kareem to tell him how to stay safe online. Your name is Ahmed and your email address is ahmedali@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is kemoo90@yahoo.com.**

| | |
|---|---|
| From | |
| To | |
| Subject | |

...................................................... ,
..........................................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................................................
......................................................

Lessons **5 & 6**

- Literature
- Writing

SB pages 52 - 55



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| scam (med) (v), (n) | يغش - يخدع / غش - خداع | fair (n) | معرض |
| limited-edition (n) | ذات الاصدار المحدود | awesome (adj) | جميل - رائع |
| expensive (adj) | غال الثمن | cautious (adj) | حذر - حريص |
| official seller (n) | بائع رسمى / معتمد | embarrassed (adj) | محرج - مرتبك |
| problem-solving (n) | حل المشكلات | scammer (n) | محتال - نصاب |
| detect (ed) (v) | يكشف / يوضح | tech = technology (n) | تكنولوجيا |
| ISEF (the International Science and Engineering Fair) | المعرض الدولى للعلوم والهندسة | trouble (n) = problem (n) | مشكلة |
| | | scientific (adj) | علمى |

## Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

detect - embarrassed - expensive - official - scientific

1. New ................ inventions make our lives easier .
2. I bought a / an ................ dress yesterday . It cost a lot of money.
3. She was ................ when she lost her friend's pen.
4. You have to buy the car from an ................ seller.

## Lesson 5 SB pages 52 & 53

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| carefully (adv) | بعناية - بحرص | seller (n) | بائع |
| gaming forum | منتدى ألعاب | profile (n) | ملف شخصى |
| games console (n) | وحدة التحكم فى الألعاب | price (n) | سعر |
| part-time job (n) | وظيفة بدوام جزئى | payment (n) | الدفع |
| savings (n) | مدخرات | realize (d) (v) | يدرك |
| shopping online (n) | التسوق عبر الانترنت | proudly (adv) | بفخر |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| trust (ed) (v) , (n) | يثق - ثقة | reply (ied) (v), (n) | يرد - رد |
| message (d) (v), (n) | يرسل رسالة - رسالة | eventually (adv) | فى النهاية / أخيرًا |
| gamers (n) | لاعبين | reviews (n) | تقييمات / آراء |

## Lesson 6

SB pages 54 & 55

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| participate (d) (v) | يشارك | catchy (adj) | جذاب |
| international (adj) | دولى - عالمى | life jacket (n) | سترة النجاة |
| winners (n) | فائزين | provide (d) (v) | يمد - يساند |
| prize (n) | جائزة | scientist (n) | عالم |
| rescue (d) (v) | ينقذ | loud (adj) | عالٍ [الصوت] |
| vote (n) | تصويت | introduction (n) | مقدمة |
| develop (ed) (v) | يطور | reading difficulties (n) | صعوبات القراءة |
| event (n) | حدث | | |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| sell | يبيع | sold | sold |
| cost | يتكلف | cost | cost |
| begin | يبدأ | began | begun |
| read | يقرأ | read | read |

## Study these descriptions

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **awesome** | something really good or amazing | جميل - رائع |
| **cautious** | someone who does something slowly and carefully | حذر - حريص |
| **limited-edition** | something of which there are only a few | ذات الإصدار المحدود |
| **embarrassed** | someone who feels ashamed [خجلان] by something they did | محرج - مرتبك |
| **expensive** | something that costs a lot of money | غالِ الثمن |

## Vocabulary Study

### Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| famous مشهور | well-known / popular | unknown غير معروف |
| catchy جذاب | attractive | boring ممل |
| detect يكتشف / يوضح | find out | ignore / hide يتجاهل / يخفي |
| embarrassed محرج | ashamed | confident واثق من نفسه |
| expensive غالي الثمن | costly – valuable | cheap رخيص الثمن |
| cautious حذر / حريص | careful | careless مهمل |

### Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –er | تُكوّن اسم الفاعل من الاسم | scammer محتال - نصاب<br>gamer لاعب |
| –ment | تكون الاسم من الفعل | payment الدفع |
| –ing | تكون الاسم من الفعل | savings مدخرات |
| –ed | تكون الصفة من الاسم | talented موهوب |
| –ion | تكون الاسم من الفعل | invention اختراع |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "............" has the same meaning as "popular".
   a. Unknown b. Strange c. Famous d. Relaxed
2. To get the noun from the verb "save" , we add the suffix " ............ ".
   a. –er b. –ly c. –ing d. –ness
3. The word "embarrassed" can be replaced with the word "............" .
   a. costly b. ashamed c. attractive d. confident
4. The word "detect" is the opposite of "............" .
   a. lead b. find c. ignore d. hurt
5. We add the suffix "............" to form the noun from the verb "pay".
   a. –ly b. –ment c. –ous d. –ed

# General Notes on Reading & Listening

**1 "scam – scammer"** غش - خداع

* scam (n)

- It was a scam. They took a lot of money from my bank account.

* scam (v) يغش - يخدع

- Be careful not to get **scammed** by online sellers.

* scammer (n) محتال

- They helped him report the **scammer.**

*Reading on lesson 5 SB page 52*

**2 part-time job / full-time job** وظيفة ذات دوام جزئي / وظيفة ذات دوام كامل

- SB Ali had some savings from his **part-time job.** *Lesson 5 SB page 52*
- I have a **full-time job** in a factory.

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| no way | غير ممكن / مستحيل | get attention = catch ....... eye | يجذب الانتباه |
| his money was gone | خسر ماله | as fast as possible | بأسرع ما يمكن |
| feel much better | يشعر بتحسن | eye-catching | جاذب للعين |
| report scammers | يبلغ عن المخادعين | scientific research skills | مهارات البحث العلمي |
| save up money | يدخر المال | message back | يرسل رسالة مرة أخرى |
| feel glad | يشعر بالسعادة | (be) half price | بنصف الثمن |
| on their own | بأنفسهم - بمفردهم | | |
| **Prepositions حروف الجر** | | | |
| wait for | ينتظر لأجل | in trouble | في مشكلة / في ورطة |
| for advice | للنصيحة | participate in | يشارك في |
| at first | في البداية | work in groups | يعمل في مجموعات |
| for sale | للبيع | speak up | يرفع صوته |
| go by مكان | يمر بـ مكان | | |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 5 SB page 52

### Scammed !

1. Ali saw a post about a **limited-edition**[1] games console.
2. Ali wanted to buy this **games console**[2].
3. Ali had some savings from his part-time job in a restaurant.
4. The seller had a good **profile**[3] and positive reviews.
5. Ali sent him a **message**[4] and asked why the games console was half **price**[5].
6. Ali sent the money to the **seller**[6].
7. Ali felt excited and waited for the console to arrive. However, it hasn't arrived yet.
8. He sent many messages to the seller.
9. The seller didn't **reply**[7] and Ali knew it was a **scam**[8].
10. Ali talked to his parents and warned his friends.
11. Ali learned to be **cautious**[9] when shopping online.
12. Ali worked hard and bought a console from an **official seller**[10].

## Lesson 6 SB page 54

### Solve it with tech!

1. Some **talented**[11] students from Egypt participated in (ISEF) competition.
2. ISEF is an international competition to develop science
3. The students have to use scientific research skills to solve problems.
4. This year, Egyptian students won many prizes for their inventions.
5. A smart life jacket can help people in trouble at sea.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) ذات الإصدار المحدود | (2) وحدة التحكم فى الألعاب | (3) ملف شخصى |
| (4) رسالة | (5) ثمن / سعر | (6) بائع |
| (7) يرد | (8) خداع | (9) حذر / حريص |
| (10) بائع رسمى | (11) موهوب | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Online scam
* New inventions
* Online problems

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

## Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 52

### Scammed!

Ali read the post carefully, and then read it again.

"No way!" he thought.



He was on his favorite **gaming forum**[1]. Usually, he used it to chat to other gamers, but this morning another type of post caught his eye. In it, someone wanted to sell a **limited-edition**[2] games console. Consoles like that were very expensive, and they weren't many of them. Ali wanted it!

Ali checked the time of the post : 2 am. It was now 8 am. Maybe he could be the first person to message the seller!

From his part-time job in a restaurant, Ali had some savings. He also had LE 500 from his grandma for his birthday. He checked his account : yes, he had enough for the console!

The seller had a good **profile**[3] and lots of positive reviews. So, Ali sent him a message.

This console looks **awesome**[4]! Why is it half price ?

The seller replied quickly. He explained that the console was a present, but he already had one. He sent Ali some photos and videos of it.

Thanks, Ali messaged back. I'll take it !

The seller told Ali where to send the money, and Ali made the payment. He felt excited – his friends would be amazed when he told them !

Every day, Ali waited for the console to arrive. After three days, he messaged the seller again.

(1) منتدى ألعاب | (2) ذات إصدار محدود | (3) ملف شخصي | (4) رائع



The console hasn't arrived yet. When did you send it ?

Another three days went by. No reply. No console. Ali began to worry. He messaged the seller again.

The console still hasn't arrived. Please reply!

Nothing. A whole week went by, and then another, until finally Ali realized it was a **scam**[5]. He felt terrible, and very **embarrassed**[6]. All his money was gone and he had nothing to show for it.

**Eventually**[7], Ali knew that he needed to tell someone.

"Mom, Dad, I need to talk to you .... "

Ali felt much better after speaking to his parents. They helped him report the scammer.

The next time Ali went onto the gaming forum, the post was gone. He felt glad about speaking up, so the scammer couldn't do the same thing to someone else. He also learned to be **cautious**[8] when shopping online. It was a difficult lesson, but an important one.

Over the next few months, Ali worked hard at the restaurant and saved up enough money to buy the console from an **official seller**[9].

"Remember," he said to his friends when he **proudly**[10] showed them his new console. "If something doesn't seem right, stop, think, and speak to your parents or another adult for advice. It could be a scam!"

(5) خداع - غش | (6) محرج | (7) في النهاية - أخيرًا | (8) حذر - حريص | (9) بائع معتمد | (10) بفخر

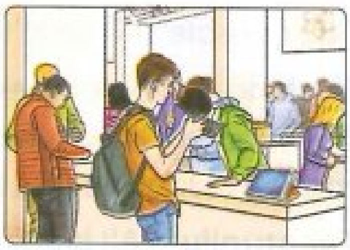
Master
your skills
يهدف إلى تنمية
مهـــارات
اللغة الإنجليزية
EL-MOASSER



on Lesson 6 SB page 54

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

## Solve it with tech[1]!

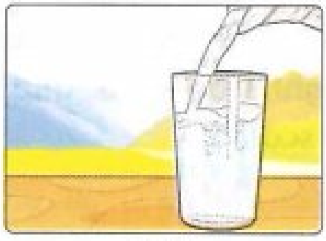


Catchy title — **Students lead the way !**

Question to get attention. — Do you think great **inventions**[2] only come from adults and famous **scientists**[3] ? Think again!

Introduction — This month, 24 **talented**[4] students from Egypt, aged 14-18, participated in the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF) in the United States. It's a **competition**[5] to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem. Students from 80 countries participated in the event. They have to use their **scientific**[6] research skills and work in groups or on their own. Winners can study for one year in the United States. This year, Egyptian students won many **prizes**[7] for their inventions! Some of them had great new ideas for technologies that solve problems !







List of examples — **Some project ideas in the competition :**

- A smart **life jacket**[8] that can help people in trouble at sea to be rescued as fast as possible.
- A technology that cleans dirty water in a way that doesn't hurt the planet.
- A mobile phone app that can **detect**[9] when a student has reading **difficulties**[10] and help them.

Which new technology do you think is the most important ? Why ? Please add your votes in the comments box. — Call-to-action

comments

(1) تكنولوجيا | (2) اختراعات | (3) علماء | (4) موهوب | (5) مسابقة | (6) علمى | (7) جوائز | (8) سترة النجاة | (9) يكتشف | (10) صعوبات

## 2. Skills

المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات (ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية)

### Finding specific information : (numbers, dates, and times)

إيجاد معلومات محددة فى نص (أرقام - تواريخ - أوقات)

#### 1 Learn

• **Sometimes, we have to find numbers in a text.**

أحيانًا نحتاج للعثور على رقم فى النص للإجابة عن سؤال.

**: Information in number form**

تنقسم المعلومات الواردة فى شكل أرقام إلى :

- quantities كميات
- dates تواريخ
- times وقت

**To find the information :** كيفية إيجاد المعلومات :

**1. First ,** look at the question to see what type of number it asks about.

• انظر إلى السؤال ليساعدك فى معرفة نوع الرقم الذى تحتاجه للإجابة.

The question word can help you decide this :

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| How many | (كم عدد) | → numbers | (أعداد) |
| When | (متى) | → dates / times | (تاريخ - وقت) |
| How much | (كم كمية) | → quantities | (كمية) |

**2.** Think about how we usually express numbers of this type.

• فكر كيف نعبر عادة عن الأرقام من هذا النوع.

**3.** Look for them in the text.

• ابحث عنهم فى النص.

#### 2 Practice

**⊙ Read the text again and answer the questions :**

1. When did the seller post the advertisement ?

.........................................................................................

2. How much did Ali's grandma give him for his birthday ?

.........................................................................................

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

### Key vocabulary

1. The ............ students won the competition easily.
   a. worried b. nervous c. talented d. lazy
2. ............ steal people's money.
   a. Scammers b. Competitions c. Blogs d. Sellers
3. There are a few copies of this book, it's ............ .
   a. careful b. limited-edition c. scientific d. part-time
4. It's safer to buy machines from ............ sellers.
   a. expensive b. new c. official d. catchy

**SB Exercises**

5. SB Egyptian students won many ............ for their inventions.
   a. reviews b. troubles c. blogs d. prizes
6. SB A mobile phone app can ............ when a student has reading difficulties.
   a. grab b. lead c. detect d. relax
7. SB The seller had a good profile and lots of positive ............ on his account.
   a. scammers b. reviews c. hackers d. sights

**El-Moasser Exercises**

8. Smart life jackets ............ the boys from drowning (الغرق) at sea.
   a. introduced b. rescued c. detected d. voted
9. This timetable will ............ you with all information you need.
   a. develop b. hurt c. provide d. improve
10. Students from all over the world participate in this ............ competition.
   a. local b. international c. national d. scam

### Definitions

11. ............ means costs a lot of money.
   a. Modern b. Far c. Difficult d. Expensive
12. ............ is someone who does something slowly and carefully.
   a. Smart b. Cautious c. Lazy d. Friendly
13. ............ means really good or amazing.
   a. True b. Terrible c. Awesome d. Normal

### Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Online advertisements ............ our eyes.
   a. cost b. hit c. catch d. sell
15. My brother ............ up money to buy a game console.
   a. waited b. saved c. felt d. caught
16. He has a part- ............ job for 4 hours after school day to earn some money.
   a. time b. price c. game d. life

## 3. Speaking مهارة التحدث

**Asking about scamming online :** السؤال عن الخداع عبر الانترنت :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| - What is a "scam" ? <br> - ما هو المقصود "بالاحتيال" ؟ | It's being tricked by someone online. <br> - هي أن يتم خداعك عن طريق شخص ما عبر الانترنت. |
| - How were you scammed ? <br> - كيف تم خداعك ؟ | I saw an online advertisement to sell a very expensive console for half price. So, I decided to buy it. But it was a scam. <br> - رأيت إعلان لبيع وحدة تحكم الألعاب باهظة الثمن مقابل نصف الثمن، لذلك قررت شرائها. لكنها كانت عملية احتيال. |
| - Why did you trust the seller at first ? <br> - لماذا وثقت فى البائع فى البداية ؟ | Because I checked his account, it was a good profile and there were lots of positive reviews. <br> - لأن عند فحص الحساب الالكترونى الخاص به كان جيدًا وهناك الكثير من التعليقات الإيجابية. |

## 4. Writing مهارات الكتابة

### A blog

When you're writing a blog post, think about what you need to make the blog interesting for readers.
عندما تقوم بكتابة مدونة ، فيما تحتاجه لكى تكون المدونة مشوقة للقارئ.

**How we organize our ideas using blog features**

**blog features** سمات المدونة

1. Catchy title عنوان جذاب للمدونة → The title should be exciting and eye-catching. يجب أن يكون العنوان مشوق وجاذب للعين.
2. Question to get attention سؤال لجذب الانتباه → Ask an interesting question. أسأل سؤالًا يثير الاهتمام.
3. Introduction مقدمة → Provide clear information in your first paragraph. دعم الفقرة الأولى الخاصة بك بمعلومات واضحة.
4. List of examples قائمة من الأمثلة → Use images and lists to make reading easy. استخدم صور وقوائم لتجعل القراءة أسهل.
5. Call-to-action دعوة للقيام بفعل → Ask readers to respond. اطلب من القراء الرد.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand  Apply  Create

### 1 Complete the following dialog :

**Arwa tells Basma great news.**

**Arwa** : I have great news !

Basma : (1) .................................................................... ?

**Arwa** : Egyptian students won many prizes at an international competition.

Basma : (2) .................................................................... ! What is the competition ?

**Arwa** : (3) .................................................................... .

Basma : What is the ISEF ?

**Arwa** : It's a competition to develop a science or engineering project.

Basma : Where was it ?

**Arwa** : (4) .................................................................... .

Basma : The United States ! (5) .................................................................... ?

**Arwa** : Twenty four Egyptian students participated in the event.

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

This month, 24 talented students from Egypt, aged 14 - 18 **participated** in the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF) in the United States. It's a competition to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem. Students from 80 countries participated in the event. They have to use their scientific research skills and work in groups or on their own. Winners can study for one year in the United States. This year, Egyptian students won many prizes for **their** inventions ! Some of them had great new ideas for technologies that solve problems !

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The text talks about "A ............".
   a. city  b. competition  c. problem  d. student
2. The underlined word "**participated**" means to " ............ ".
   a. get up  b. give up  c. take part in  d. turn off
3. How many students from Egypt participated in the competition this month ?
   a. 14  b. 18  c. 80  d. 24

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Where is the ISEF ?

   ....................................................................................................

5. What does the underlined pronoun " **their**" refer to ?

   ....................................................................................................

6. Why do you think the science competitions are important ?

   ....................................................................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you run for a long time, ............ you feel tired quickly ?
   a. to do   b. does   c. did   d. do
2. The scientist won the Nobel Prize for his amazing ............ .
   a. vote   b. invention   c. difficulty   d. comment
3. The smart student won the science ............ in our school.
   a. competition   b. app   c. match   d. skill
4. Omar is ............ . He always thinks carefully before doing any thing.
   a. selfish   b. careless   c. cautious   d. harmful
5. Technology helps us ............ a lot of our daily problems.
   a. rescue   b. hurt   c. solve   d. add
6. ............ make noise. The baby is sleeping.
   a. Haven't   b. Don't   c. Didn't   d. Aren't
7. Children wear ............ if they can't swim.
   a. bandages   b. headphones   c. life jackets   d. sweaters
8. ............ means something of which there are only a few.
   a. Limited-edition   b. Awesome   c. Prize   d. Vote
9. The brave firefighters ............ the baby's life from fire.
   a. rescued   b. studied   c. invented   d. included
10. If you plant a seed, a tree ............ .
   a. growing   b. grow   c. grows   d. grew

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If she watches a scary movie, she can't ............ (**slept**) easily.
2. The teacher gets angry if we ............ (**speaks**) loudly at the playground.
3. SB ............ (**Not take**) photographs here.
4. ............ (**Reading**) the message and reply as fast as possible, please.

## 5 Write a blog post of about EIGHTY (80) words about "a great invention":

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

.............................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................

.............................................................................................................

# Review on unit 4

**قيم مستواك** يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

## Vocabulary

**Lessons 1 & 2**

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| device | جهاز |
| solar panels | ألواح شمسية |
| ATM | ماكينة الصراف الآلي |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير |
| charity | جمعية خيرية |
| advertisement | إعلان |
| power | طاقة / قوة |
| airplanes | طائرات |
| invention | اختراع |
| ocean | محيط |
| rubbish | قمامة |

**Lessons 3 & 4**

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| social media platform | منصة التواصل الاجتماعي |
| rude | وقح / قاسي |
| accept | يقبل |
| download | يُحمل من الإنترنت |
| remember | يتذكر |
| check | يفحص / يختبر |
| hackers | قراصنة الإنترنت |
| account | حساب على الإنترنت |
| nasty | بذئ / كريه |
| false | خاطئ / مزيف |

**Lessons 5 & 6**

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| scam | خداع - غش / يخدع |
| problem-solving | حل المشكلات |
| cautious | حذر - حريص |
| detect | يكتشف / يوضح |
| headphones | سماعات أذن |
| limited-edition | ذات الإصدار المحدود |
| rescue | ينقذ |
| winners | فائزين |
| participate | يشارك |

## Language

**1. The imperative :** ١. صيغة الأمر :

الأمر المثبت

• Inf. (مصدر الفعل) + باقي الجملة

**ex.** - Keep your personal information safe.

الأمر المنفي

• Don't + inf. (مصدر الفعل) + باقي الجملة

**ex.** - Don't eat too much sweets.

**2. Zero conditional (If) :**

٢. الحالة الصفرية (If)

تستخدم للحديث عن أشياء دائمًا ما تكون صحيحة (حقائق).

• If present simple (مضارع بسيط) , present simple (مضارع بسيط)
(can / can't) + inf.

**ex.** If it rains, we get water.

If you don't understand anything, you can ask for help.

• Present Simple (مضارع بسيط) if present simple (مضارع بسيط)

**ex.** I wear my jacket if it is cold.

## Speaking

**1. Talking about staying safe online**

١. الحديث عن البقاء آمنًا عبر الإنترنت.

- Choose strong passwords.
- Don't post or share anything nasty or false.
- Don't accept friend requests from people you don't know.

**2. Asking and answering about the most important technological devices**

2. السؤال والإجابة عن أهم الأجهزة التكنولوجية.

• Which device do you think is the most important ?

- I think phones are the most important.

• Why do you think that ?

- Because we use them for so many things !

Skills

# 1 Reading Comprehension

## Identifying a text type

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تحديد نوع النص].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Read the following and answer the questions :**

When you go online, it's important to remember a few simple rules.

**1. Think before you post**

When you post a comment or photo on social media, it stays there forever-even if you delete it from your account. Don't post or share anything nasty or false.

**2. Be careful of friend requests**

Don't accept friend requests from people you don't know. Always tell your parents if someone you don't know sends you messages or wants to chat with you, and don't click on any links they send you. Never share personal information with anyone.

- The text is a/an .................... about staying safe online.

a. email b. article c. diary d. blog

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد نوع النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أنه يمكن تحديد نوع النص من خلال طريقة كتابته.

# 2 Speaking

## Staying safe online

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialog] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Complete the following dialog :**

**Omar and Walid are talking about staying safe online.**

Omar : Hi, Walid, how are you ?

Walid : (1).............................. . What are you doing, Omar ?

Omar : I'm playing video games online.

Walid : I think it's important to stay safe online.

Omar : (2).............................................................. ?

Walid : By following some rules you can keep safe online.

Omar : What are these rules ?

Walid : (3).............................................................. .

Omar : What do you mean by choosing strong passwords ?

Walid : (4).............................................................. .

Omar : (5).............................................................. ?

Walid : You should also be kind online.

التحدى تريد السؤال عن [كيفية البقاء آمنًا عبر الإنترنت] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

# General Exercises on unit 4

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب]

1. The world's ………… are full of plastic trash.
   a. ponds b. lakes c. rivers d. oceans
2. Plastic is very ………… for the life in the ocean.
   a. important b. useful c. bad d. true
3. Ocean clean-up projects collect ………… in the water.
   a. plants b. news c. rubbish d. fish
4. The ………… take it back to land for recycling.
   a. rockets b. planes c. trucks d. ships

## 2 Complete the following dialog :

**Ghada and Jana are talking about mobile apps.**

**Ghada** : What do you think of mobile apps ?

Jana : (1) …………………………………………………… .

**Ghada** : I agree with you that they're useful. (2) …………………………………… ?

Jana : I have many kinds of apps on my phone: music, health, and maps.

**Ghada** : Which app do you use most ?

Jana : (3) …………………………………………………… .

**Ghada** : AppErture ! (4) …………………………………… ?

Jana : Because AppErture really helps me with photos.

**Ghada** : Can you download music from it ?

Jana : (5) …………………………… . It's an app for changing photos only.

## 3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

event - them - can - competition - smart

This month, 24 talented students from Egypt, aged 14-18, participated in the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF) in the United States. It's a (1) ……………… to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem. Students from 80 countries participated in the (2) ……………… . They have to use their scientific research skills and work in groups or on their own. Winners (3) ……………… study for one year in the United States. This year, Egyptian students won many prizes for their inventions! Some of (4) ……………… had great new ideas for technologies that solve problems !

## 4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

When you go online to send messages, play video games, download an app, or just check your social media, it's important to remember a few simple rules that can keep you safe.

First, choose strong passwords. It's important to use a password that is a mix of letters, numbers, and special characters like !, &, or $. Long passwords are also a good idea as <u>they</u> are hard to guess. Never use your name or date of birth, your pet's name, or anything that hackers can guess from your social media.

Second, think before you post anything. When you post a comment or photo on social media, it stays there forever-even if you delete it from your account. Don't post or share anything <u>nasty</u> or false.

Finally, be careful of friend requests. Don't accept friend requests from people you don't know. Always tell your parents if someone you don't know sends you messages or wants to chat with you, and don't click on any links they send you. Never share personal information with anyone.

**A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. You should choose ........... password.
   a. modern b. short c. strong d. easy
2. The underlined word "<u>nasty</u>" means " ........... ".
   a. awful b. friendly c. clean d. wonderful
3. The underlined pronoun "<u>they</u>" refers to ........... .
   a. hackers b. long passwords c. video games d. numbers

**B. Answer the following questions :**

4. Summarize the last paragraph in one sentence.

   ..........................................................................................

5. What should you do if someone you don't know sends you a message ?

   ..........................................................................................

6. What do you think we should do to stay safe online ? (Mention two)

   ..........................................................................................

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The ........... students from our school won the English competition.
   a. unlucky b. lazy c. talented d. slow
2. To " ........... " means to show that something is true.
   a. move b. provide c. improve d. prove

3. ............ to the teacher carefully before you answer.
   a. Listening  b. Listens  c. Listened  d. Listen
4. I liked your ............ that you wrote on my post on Facebook.
   a. photo  b. comment  c. address  d. design
5. You can't get on the train if you ............ have a ticket.
   a. aren't  b. don't  c. didn't  d. won't
6. If you ............ to Sinai, try the Bedouin food.
   a. traveled  b. travels  c. travel  d. traveling

## 6 Match the words to their definitions :

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. prove | a. quickly and with good results |
| 2. cool | b. to turn water into ice |
| 3. device | c. to lose heat |
| 4. efficiently | d. a small electronic machine |
| | e. to show that something is true |

## 7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ............ (**Showing**) me how you draw a tree.
2. ............ (**Not shout**) at your friends. That's a bad behavior.
3. SB If you ............ (**plays**) lots of video games, your eyes get tired.
4. What happens if you ............ (**be**) late for the exam ?

## 8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

*"Green Technology"*

............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................
............................................................



UNIT FIVE

# In nature

SB pages 56 : 67

**Unit Objectives :**

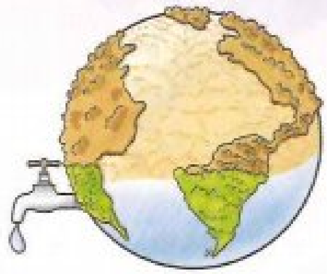
- **Reading** : An article about how climate change is affecting people; An article about water scarcity; Helping the Earth : a poem
- **Writing** : A blog post about becoming more eco-friendly
- **Listening** : Understand a talk about geology
- **Speaking** : Talk about the effects of climate change; Making comparisons
- **Language** : Comparatives and superlatives; Articles

تنويه أهداف الدروس "Lessons objectives" فى مقدمة الكتاب.

Lessons **1 & 2**

# ▸ Climate change ▸ Water scarcity

SB pages 56 - 59



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| drought (n) | جفاف | storm (n) | عاصفة |
| wildfire (n) | حرائق الغابات | water scarcity | نقص / ندرة المياه |
| heatstroke (n) | ضربة شمس | average (adv) | معدل / متوسط |
| climate change (n) | تغير المناخ | temperature scale | مقياس درجة حرارة |
| hygiene (n) | النظافة الشخصية | resources (n) | مصادر |
| surface (n) | سطح | transportation (n) | نقل - وسائل النقل |
| lack (n) | نقص | technologies (n) | تقنيات |
| effect (n) | تأثير | suffer (ed) (v) | يعاني |
| impact (n) | أثر / انعكاس | cover (ed) (v) | يغطي |
| worrying (adj) | مزعج / مقلق | flood (n) | فيضان |

### Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

drought – wildfire – heatstroke – flood – storm

1. A .................. is the strong wind.
2. Many trees were burnt because of .................. .
3. Water from the river is coming into our house. There's a .................. .
4. She was out in the sun for too long. She had .................. yesterday.

### Lesson 1 SB pages 56 & 57

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| strong (adj) | قوى | fortunately (adv) | لحسن الحظ |
| dry (adj) | جاف | enough (adj) | كافٍ |
| situations (n) | مواقف | tired (adj) | متعب |
| leaves (n) | أوراق شجر | | |

| village (n) | قرية | wind (n) | الرياح |
|---|---|---|---|
| Spain | دولة أسبانيا | Andalusia | الأندلس (مدينة فى أسبانيا) |
| affect (ed) (v) | يؤثر على | region (n) | إقليم |
| °C = degree Celsius | درجة مئوية | fever (n) | حُمى / سخونة |

## Lesson 2

SB pages 58 & 59

| planet (n) | كوكب | level (n) | مستوى |
|---|---|---|---|
| negative (adj) | سلبى | develop (ed) (v) | ينمى / يطور |
| metal (n) | معدن | crops (n) | محاصيل |
| illnesses (n) | أمراض | thirsty (adj) | عطشان |
| produce (d) (v) | ينتج | action (n) | فعل / تصرف |

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **drought** | when there is no rain for a long time | جفاف |
| **flood** | when there's too much rain | فيضان |
| **storms** | bad weather, with wind, rain, thunder and lightning | عواصف (برق) |
| **climate change** | changes in the weather over time | تغير المناخ |
| **water scarcity** | where there isn't enough clean, fresh water for everyone | ندرة المياه |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| pay | يدفع | paid | paid |
| feel | يشعر | felt | felt |
| fight | يقاتل / يقاوم | fought | fought |
| grow | يزرع | grew | grown |

## Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **have** | heatstroke | يصاب بضربة شمس | **earn** | money | يكسب نقود |
| | a problem | لديه مشكلة | | | |
| **miss** | a friend | يفتقد صديق | **grow** | crops | يزرع محاصيل |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▸ Synonyms and Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym / Opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| scarcity نقص | shortage / lack | plenty وفرة |
| strong قوى | powerful | weak ضعيف |
| dry جاف | dehydrated | wet مبتل |
| flood فيضان | overflow | drought جفاف |
| higher أكثر ارتفاعًا | greater | lower أكثر انخفاضًا |
| ill مريض | sick / unwell | well بخير |
| tired متعب | exhausted | energetic نشيط |
| clean نظيف | pure / fresh | dirty / polluted ملوث / غير نظيف |
| safe آمن | protected | dangerous /risky خطير |
| illness مرض | disease / infection | health صحة |

### ▸ Prefixes & Suffixes
مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –ness | تحويل الصفة لاسم | illness مرض |
| –ly | تحول الصفة لحال | normally بطريقة طبيعية |
| –y | تحول الاسم لصفة | healthy صحى |
| –ous | تحويل الاسم لصفة | dangerous خطير |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. "............" is the opposite of higher.
   a. Harder b. faster c. slower d. Lower
2. We get the noun from the adjective "ill" by adding the suffix "............" .
   a. –er b. –less c. –ness d. –tion
3. The word "dirty" is the antonym of "............" .
   a. polluted b. safe c. clean d. hard
4. The word "powerful" has the same meaning as "............" .
   a. exhausted b. soft c. strong d. weak

# General Notes on Reading & Listening

## 1 effect - affect

* effect (n) — تأثير - نتيجة
  - What is the **effect** of climate change ?
* affect (v) + obj. [بدون حروف جر] مفعول — يؤثر على
  - Smoking can **affect** your health badly.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 58*

## 2 worrying - worried

* worrying (adj) — مقلق [تصف شيء]
  - Water scarcity is one of the most **worrying** problems.
* worried (adj) — قلق [تصف شخص]
  - We were very **worried** about her.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 58*

## 3 suffer - suffering

* suffer (v) + (from) — يعانى من
  - He **suffers** from a serious illness.
* suffering (n) — معاناة
  - Now she is happy and her **suffering** is over.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 58*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | Prepositions حروف الجر | |
|---|---|---|---|
| as much as possible | بقدر الإمكان | in the south of | فى جنوب |
| getting smaller | تزداد صغرًا فى الحجم | for too long | لمدة طويلة للغاية |
| make it harder | يجعله أكثر صعوبة | on a farm | فى مزرعة |
| feel better | يشعر بتحسن | on average | فى معدل / متوسط |
| get heatstroke | يصاب بضربة شمس | in different ways | بطرق مختلفة |
| be hotter than usual | يصبح أكثر سخونة من المعتاد | pay for | يدفع لـ |
| fight the illnesses | يقاوم الأمراض | come into | يدخل |
| take action | يتخذ إجراء | because of | بسبب |
| | | lack of | نقص فى |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 1 SB page 57

### How climate change is affecting me

1. Leonie is talking about how **climate change**[1] is affecting her.
2. She lives in a village in Andalusia in Spain.
3. This summer has the highest **temperature**[2].
4. Her family is having many problems because of the hot weather.
5. Her family lives on a farm.
6. They suffer from a **drought**[3], so the plants can't grow.
7. They don't have enough tomatoes to sell.
8. Her dad is looking for a second job to earn more money.
9. They are also having some health problems.
10. Mom had **heatstroke**[4] and a fever.
11. The worst problem for Leonie was that her school closed for a week.
12. It was dangerous for Leonie and his friends to be at school because of the **heat**[5].

## Lesson 2 SB page 58

### Thirsty Planet

1. **Water scarcity**[6] is a **worrying**[7] problem.
2. Two billion people don't have enough clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food.
3. Climate change is one of the **reasons**[8] for water scarcity.
4. Farmers can't grow many crops.
5. Dirty water can make people ill.
6. The biggest **impact**[9] of dirty water can be on children.
7. The children's bodies are less able to **fight**[10] the **illnesses**[11].
8. Solving the problem of water scarcity isn't easy.
9. We should look for new water sources and develop new technologies.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) تغير المناخ | (2) درجة الحرارة | (3) جفاف |
| (4) ضربة شمس | (5) الحرارة | (6) ندرة المياه |
| (7) مقلق | (8) أسباب | (9) أثر - إنعكاس |
| (10) يقاوم | (11) أمراض | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Climate change
* Water scarcity

# II Skills

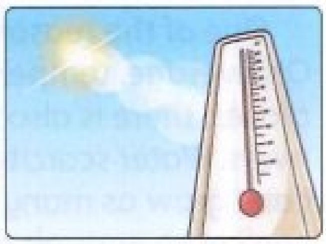
## 1. Reading and Listening

## Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 57

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

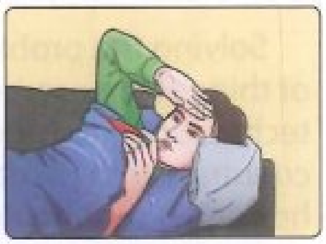
### How climate change is affecting me



Hi, I'm Leonie. I live in a village in Andalusia in Spain. Hot weather in summer is normal for us, but this summer the highest **temperature**[1] was 46 °C. That's about five degrees warmer than it **normally**[2] is. My family is having a lot of problems because of the hot weather here.



My family lives on a farm. Because of the hot weather, there's a **drought**[3] in the south of Spain right now. The tomato plants on our farm are getting smaller and some of their leaves are brown. Because of the drought, we can't give the plants as much water as they need. My family therefore don't have enough tomatoes to sell. My dad is looking for a second job so he can **earn more money**[4].



We're also having some problems with our **health**[5]. My mom had **heatstroke**[6] last week and she stayed in bed for three days because she was too ill to get up. She had a **fever**[7] and she was really tired all the time. We were very worried about her, but, fortunately, she's feeling better now. Some of my friends had heatstroke, too. I'm trying to stay inside as much as possible, so I don't get heatstroke as well.



The worst thing about this summer for me was that our school closed for a week. The teachers said it was **dangerous**[8] for us to travel to school because it was so hot. It was also too hot for us to be at school because we don't have **air conditioning**[9] there. I missed my friends when we couldn't go to school. I hope that never happens again!

**Choose the correct answer.**

- Extracting information. استخراج معلومات.

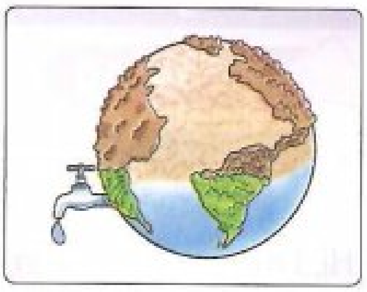
Learn 1. Leonie's family grow ............ on their farm.
a. mangoes b. tomatoes c. onions d. apples

Practice 2. This summer the school is closed for ............ .
a. two weeks b. a week c. a year d. all summer

(1) درجة حرارة | (2) بشكل طبيعي | (3) جفاف | (4) يكسب نقود أكثر | (5) صحة | (6) ضربة شمس | (7) حمى | (8) خطير | (9) تكييف هواء

on Lesson 2 SB page 58

## Thirsty planet



Water scarcity is one of the most worrying problems **facing**[1] the world today. Although water covers more than 70% of Earth's **surface**[2], two billion people don't have enough fresh, clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food. Even in countries where there are good water **resources**[3], the water cannot always reach the people who need it.

One of the reasons for water scarcity is **climate change**[4]. On average, temperatures are higher than they were in the past. In some places, there is also less rain, so there isn't as much water in lakes and rivers. Water scarcity affects people in different ways. Farmers, for example, can't grow as many crops as they used to. Without crops to sell, they can't earn enough money to pay for clean water. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it, which can have a **negative**[5] effect on their health. The biggest impact can be on children, who have less time to spend in school.

(1) تواجه
(2) سطح
(3) مصادر / موارد
(4) تغير المناخ
(5) سلبى
(6) بكتيريا
(7) أمراض
(8) وفرة

Another problem is that people often can't find clean, safe water. The dangerous metals and **bacteria**[6] in dirty water can make them very ill. This can be more dangerous for children than for adults because their bodies are less able to fight the **illnesses**[7].

Solving the problem of water scarcity is not simple. However, there are lots of things that can help such as finding new water sources and developing new technologies to produce and clean water. It is also important that people who live in countries with **plenty**[8] of water don't use too much of it. The worst thing that could happen is that no action is taken, and more people suffer.

**Answer the following questions.**

Critical thinking skill. مهارة التفكير النقدى.

Learn 1. What shouldn't people who live in countries with plenty of water do?
*- They shouldn't waste water and keep it clean.*

Practice 2. Why do you think drinking dirty water can be worse for children than adults?
....................................................................................................

**Remember**

- We use capital letters for the names of cities, regions, countries (Cairo, Andalusia, Spain)
نستخدم الحروف الكبيرة مع أسماء المدن، الأقاليم، الدول.
- "degrees Celsius" (°C) → Celsius is the name of the person who invented this temperature scale.
تبدأ كلمة "Celsius" بحرف كبير لأنها اسم مخترع مقياس الحرارة .

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

### Key vocabulary

1. There's too much rain and the river flows. There might be a ........... .
a. drought b. present c. flood d. festival
2. ........... can cause a lot of problems and make our lives worse.
a. Exercise b. Walking c. Climate change d. Doing sports
3. It's better to ........... your problems and not to ignore them.
a. read b. forget c. face d. watch
4. Egypt has a lot of natural ........... .
a. tablets b. games c. resources d. comments

**SB Exercises**

5. SB The last time we had any rain was three years ago. There's a ........... .
a. flood b. drought c. rain d. storm
6. SB Water ........... is one of the most worrying problems facing the world today.
a. clock b. cycle c. ice d. scarcity
7. SB My sister is feeling ill because she was out in the sun for too long. She has ........... .
a. backache b. toothache c. heatstroke d. stomach ache

**El-Moasser Exercises**

8. The ........... destroys our environment. It's dangerous.
a. grass b. plant c. sun d. wildfire
9. Water scarcity has a ........... effect on us.
a. useful b. positive c. negative d. good
10. When we use dirty water, it causes a lot of ........... .
a. storms b. illnesses c. protection d. sources
11. When you have a cold, ........... your mouth and nose with a tissue.
a. open b. cut c. cover d. throw

### Definitions

12. "..........." is when there is no rain for a long time.
a. Wildfire b. Wind c. Flood d. Drought
13. When there is too much rain, this is called ........... .
a. fever b. heatstroke c. flood d. cooking

### Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Smoking has a bad ........... on our health.
a. affect b. effect c. flood d. drought

15. In some areas , people ............ from the water scarcity.
   a. suffer    b. borrow    c. choose    d. come
16. He works very hard to ............ more money.
   a. buy    b. earn    c. sell    d. lose

## 2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

**Talking about the effects of climate change :** الحديث عن تأثيرات تغير المناخ :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| - What are the effects of climate change? ماهى تأثيرات تغير المناخ ؟ | - Water scarcity is one of the effects. ندرة المياه هى إحدى هذه التأثيرات . |
| - How does water scarcity affect you? كيف يؤثر نقص المياه عليكم ؟ | - We don't have enough water to drink in our village .. فى قريتنا ، لا يوجد ما يكفى من الماء للشرب |
| - Do you think climate change will affect us in the future ? هل تعتقد أن تغير المناخ سيؤثر علينا فى المستقبل ؟ | - I think so, because the weather is getting hotter and drier. أعتقد ذلك ، لأن الطقس يزداد حرارة وجفافًا . |

# III Language

## Comparatives and superlatives

### A Comparatives صيغ المقارنة

**Usage**

- **We use comparatives to say what is the same or different about two things, people or situations.**

نستخدم صيغ المقارنة عندما نقول ما هو التشابه أو الاختلاف بين اثنين من الأشياء، الأشخاص أو المواقف.

**Formation**

**A Short adjectives :** الصفات القصيرة

adj. صفة + er + than

تتحول الصفات القصيرة (ذات مقطع واحد) إلى صيغة المقارنة بإضافة ( er– ) إليها، وتأتى بعدها ( than ) :

- fast → faster    deep → deeper

**ex.** - Aswan is hotter than Alexandria.

• لاحظ أن :

١. يُضاف [ r ] فقط فى نهاية الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [e] :

- large → larger    close → closer

٢. يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف [ er ] لنهاية الصفة القصيرة :

- big → bigger    thin → thinner    hot → hotter    fit → fitter

٣. الصفات المنتهية بحرف [ y ] مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول [ y ] إلى [ i ] ونضيف [er–] :

- dry → drier    happy → happier.

**B Long adjectives :** الصفات الطويلة :

◀ تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة المقارنة كالتالى :

**more أكثر / less أقل + adj. صفة + than**

- more / less beautiful than    أكثر / أقل جمالاً من

**ex.** - Reading is more interesting than video games.

## B Superlatives صيغ التفضيل

**Usage** الاستخدام

- **We use superlatives to express the highest degree of something.**

◀ تستخدم صيغة التفضيل للتعبير عن أعلى درجة لشيء ما.

**Formation**

**A Short adjectives :** الصفات القصيرة :

**the + adj. صفة + est**

◀ تتحول الصفات القصيرة إلى صيغة التفضيل بإضافة [est] للصفة القصيرة ونضع قبلها [the] كالتالى :

**ex.** - fast → the fastest

• لاحظ أن :

١. يُضاف [ st ] فقط بعد الصفة القصيرة المنتهية بـ [e] :

**ex.** - large → the largest    close → the closest

٢. يضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير إذا كان مسبوقًا بصوت متحرك قصير ثم يُضاف [ est ] :

**ex.** - big → the biggest    thin → the thinnest    wet → the wettest

٣. الصفات المنتهية بحرف [ y ] مسبوقًا بحرف ساكن تتحول [ y ] إلى [ i ] ثم يضاف [est] :

**ex.** - dry → the driest    happy → the happiest

## B Long adjectives : الصفات الطويلة :

تتحول الصفات الطويلة إلى صيغة التفضيل كالتالى :

**the most الأكثر / the least الأقل + adj. صفة**

the most / the least beautiful الأكثر / الأقل جمالًا

**ex.** - We bought the most expensive house in the city.

### Irregular Comparative and Superlative Form صيغة المقارنة والتفضيل للصفات غير المنتظمة

- **Some adjectives have an irregular comparative and superlative and don't follow these rules :**

هناك بعض الصفات غير المنتظمة عند إستخدام صيغة المقارنة أو التفضيل ولا تتبع القواعد السابقة (تحفظ كما هى):

| ① Adjective | ② Comparative | ③ Superlative |
|---|---|---|
| bad سيئ | worse than أسوأ من | the worst الأسوأ |
| far بعيد | farther than أبعد من<br>further than أبعد من | the farthest الأبعد<br>the furthest الأبعد |
| good جيد | better than أفضل من | the best الأفضل |
| late متأخر | later than لاحق - تالى | the latest الأحدث<br>the last الأخير |
| little قليل (الكمية) | less than أقل من | the least الأقل |
| many كثير (العدد)<br>much كثير (الكمية) | more than أكثر من | the most الأكثر |

**ex.** - The traffic in a city is worse than in the countryside.
- Yasser is the best boy in our class.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB The ............ impact of dirty water can be on children.
   a. big as b. bigger c. biggest d. bigger than
2. SB Water scarcity is one of the ............ worrying problems facing the world.
   a. much b. most c. more d. less
3. SB On average, temperatures are ............ than they were in the past.
   a. highest b. high c. higher d. the highest

4. SB Dirty water can be ............ dangerous for children than for adults.
   a. most b. more c. least d. many
5. SB The ............ thing that could happen is that no action is taken to solve the problem.
   a. bad b. worse c. worst d. bad as
6. SB The temperature in Andalusia was 5 degrees ............ then usual this summer.
   a. high b. higher c. highest d. as high

**El-Moasser Exercises**

7. The tower is ............ than the pyramid.
   a. the tall b. taller c. tall as d. tall
8. Bracelets are ............ than rings.
   a. most expensive b. the expensive c. expensive d. more expensive
9. The desert is the ............ habitat on Earth.
   a. driest b. dry c. dry as d. drier
10. Playing video games isn't ............ than learning new skills.
   a. useful as b. more useful c. useful d. as useful
11. Social studies is ............ difficult subject for me.
   a. more b. the most c. as d. most
12. I think Hurghada is the ............ place for summer vacations.
   a. well b. good c. better d. best

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

**SB Exercises**

1. SB The Great Pyramid is ............ (**famous**) than the Pyramids at Saqqara.
2. SB Climate change is the ............ (**more**) dangerous problem that affects the planet.
3. SB The River Nile is ............ (**long**) than the River Thames.
4. SB The whale shark is the ............ (**big**) fish in the world.
5. SB Lake Baikal is the ............ (**deep**) lake in the world.

**El-Moasser Exercises**

6. What is the ............ (**exciting**) place to visit in Egypt?
7. August is the ............ (**hot**) month in Egypt.
8. Your bike is ............ (**newest**) than my bike.
9. Who has ............ (**heaviest**) bag in the classroom?
10. Wearing sandals is more comfortable ............ (**then**) wearing shoes.
11. Mount Everest is the ............ (**tall**) mountain in the world above sea level.

# General Exercises

**On Lessons 1 & 2**

Understand Apply Create

## 1 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

bigger – affects – biggest – temperatures – can't

One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change. On average, (1) ............ are higher than they were in the past. In some places, there is also less rain, so there isn't as much water in lakes and rivers. Water scarcity (2) ............ people in different ways. Farmers, for example, can't grow as many crops as they used to. Without crops to sell, they (3) ............ earn enough money to pay for clean water. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it, which can have a negative effect on their health. The (4) ............ impact can be on children, who have less time to spend in school.

## 2 Read the following , then answer the questions :

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

I'm Leonie. I live in a village in Andalusia in Spain. Hot weather in summer is <u>normal</u> for us, but this summer the highest temperature was 46 °C. That's about five degrees warmer than it normally is. My family is having a lot of problems because of the hot weather. The climate change has some bad effects on us.

My family lives on a farm. Because of the hot weather, there's a drought in the south of Spain right now. The tomato plants on our farm are getting smaller and some of their leaves are brown. Because of the drought, we can't give the plants as much water as <u>they</u> need. So, my family don't have enough tomatoes to sell. My dad is looking for a second job so he can earn more money.

How is the weather in your area ?
Leave a comment below

Like Comment : 23 comments

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. What is the type of the text ? A/An ............ .
   a. paragraph b. email c. blog d. biography
2. The underlined word **"normal"** means " ............ " .
   a. irregular b. usual c. strange d. unusual

3. The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ............ .
   a. plants b. Leonie's family c. tree leaves d. hot countries

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Where does Leonie live ?

..........................................................................................

5. How can the weather affect the tomato plants ?

..........................................................................................

6. What is the best title for the text ?

..........................................................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Cars are ............ than motorbikes.
   a. more expensive b. expensive as c. most expensive d. expensive
2. Eyad is the ............ student in our class.
   a. intelligent as b. most intelligent c. intelligent d. more intelligent
3. There is usually a ............ in the desert because it doesn't rain very often there .
   a. flood b. drought c. river d. water
4. The ............ is used to cool our house in hot weather.
   a. microwave b. air conditioning c. cooker d. fridge
5. Pollution has a negative ............ on our health.
   a. source b. effect c. rule d. metal
6. Arabic is ............ than French for me.
   a. easy b. easy as c. easiest d. easier

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. The library is ............ (**quiet**) than the park.
2. He is the ............ (**successful**) teacher at my school.
3. Butterflies are ............ (**colorful**) than bees .
4. She won a prize for the ............ (**good**) invention.

## 5 Read the text. Add punctuation marks :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

i m ali. I live in Cairo

..........................................................................................

## 6 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

*"The effects of climate change"*

..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................

Lessons **3 & 4**

- Saving energy
- Geology

SB pages 60 - 63



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| air conditioning (n) | تكييف الهواء | consume (d) (v) | يستهلك - يستنفذ |
| on stand-by | في حالة استعداد | hanging basket (n) | أصيص معلق [للنبات] |
| bird feeder (n) | وعاء لتغذية الطيور | recycle (d) (v) | يعيد تدوير |
| save energy | يوفر طاقة | resources (n) | مصادر / موارد |
| electronic devices | أجهزة إلكترونية | layers (n) | طبقات |
| minerals (n) | معادن | rocks (n) | صخور |
| eco-friendly (adj) | صديق للبيئة | (be) grouped | يتم تقسيمها [إلى مجموعات] |

## Rock types

أنواع الصخور

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sandstone | حجر رملي | basalt | حجر البازلت [حجر بركاني] |
| marble | حجر الرخام | | |

## Pop Quiz

تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

Surface – minerals – feeder – recycle – on stand-by – save

1. Don't leave electronic devices .................. .
2. We put a bird .................. in the garden to feed birds.
3. There are a lot of .................. under the ground.
4. We should .................. old things and use them again.
5. We should .................. energy at home.

## Lesson 3

SB pages 60 & 61

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bath (n) | حمام - استحمام | reuse (d) (v) | يعيد استخدام |
| tips (n) | نصائح | machine (n) | آلة / ماكينة |
| electricity (n) | كهرباء | power (n) | طاقة |
| tablet (n) | كمبيوتر لوحي | games consoles (n) | وحدات التحكم بالألعاب |
| trash (n) | قمامة - نفايات | plastic bottles | زجاجات بلاستيكية |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ideal (adj) | مثالى | materials (n) | مواد خام |
| alarm (n) | منبه | fuel (n) | وقود |
| recycling bins | سلات إعادة التدوير | task (n) | مهمة |
| results (n) | نتائج | | |

## Lesson 4
SB pages 62 & 63

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| bottom (adj) | أسفل | features (n) | عناصر |
| geology (n) | علم دراسة طبقات الأرض | broken (adj) | مكسور / مفتت |
| crust (n) | قشرة الأرض | press (ed) (v) | يضغط |
| form (ed) (v) | يتكون - يتشكل | statue (n) | تمثال |
| cool (ed) (v) | يبرد | Earth (n) | الأرض |
| solid (n), (adj) | مادة صلبة / صلب - متين | melt (ed) (v) | يذوب - ينصهر |
| natural (adj) | طبيعى | liquid (n), (adj) | مادة سائلة / سائل |

## Famous places & cities
أماكن ومدن مشهورة

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| the Giant's Causeway | ممر العمالقة (فى إيرلندا) | the Sphinx at Giza | تمثال أبو الهول بالجيزة |
| Ireland | دولة إيرلندا | Ancient Greece | اليونان القديمة |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| come | يأتى | came | come |
| set | يضبط | set | set |
| find | يجد | found | found |
| become | يصبح | became | become |
| break | يكسر | broke | broken |

## Study these definitions
ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **air conditioning** | a machine to cool your home | تكييف هواء |
| **bird feeder** | a garden container of food for birds | وعاء لتغذية الطيور |
| **consume** | to use something | يستهلك - يستنفذ |
| **hanging basket** | a container for plants | أصيص معلق (للنبات) |
| **on stand- by** | not switched on but still using power | فى حالة الاستعداد |
| **save energy** | not waste electricity or fuel | يوفر طاقة |

## Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| have | a shower | يأخذ دش |
| make | electricity | يولد كهرباء |
| | a difference | يحدث تغيير |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▸ Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| save | يوفر | keep | waste | يهدر |
| switch off | يغلق (جهاز) | turn off | switch on / turn on | يشغل (جهاز) |
| great | عظيم - رائع | wonderful / fantastic | terrible | سيئ / فظيع |
| agree | يوافق | accept | disagree / refuse | يرفض |
| bottom | أسفل | base | top | أعلى |

### ▸ Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة | |
|---|---|---|---|
| -ity | تكون الاسم من الصفة | electricity | الكهرباء |
| re- | تعنى يقوم بالفعل مرة ثانية | recycle<br>reuse | يعيد تدوير<br>يعيد استخدام |
| -er | تكوّن الاسم من الفعل | container | وعاء - إناء |
| -ion | تكوّن الاسم من الفعل | action | حدث - إجراء |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Turn on the fan, it's really hot. The antonym of "turn on" is " ............ ".
   a. switch on b. turn down c. switch off d. turn up
2. We need to save energy to help our planet. The word "save" means to " ............ ".
   a. use b. waste c. keep d. spend
3. The synonym of the word "agree" is " ............ ".
   a. accept b. think c. refuse d. disagree
4. We add the suffix " ............ " to form the noun of the verb "contain".
   a. -ed b. -er c. -ment d. -ly
5. The prefix " ............ " means to do something again.
   a. ir- b. un- c. re- d. ab-

# General Notes on Reading & Listening

## 1 device - advice

* **device** — جهاز (اسم بعد) يؤدى وظيفة معينة
  - Electronic **devices** in our homes use a lot of electricity.
* **advice** — نصيحة (اسم لايعد)
  - My **advice** to you is to exercise regularly.

*Reading on lesson 3 SB page 60*

## 2 made of - made from

* **made of** — مصنوع من (مادة لا تتغير بعد التصنيع)
  - The Giant's Causeway is made **of** basalt.
* **made from** — مصنوع من (مادة تتغير بعد التصنيع)
  - These cookies are made **from** flour, sugar, and butter.

*Lesson 4 SB page 62*

## 3 electronic – electric

* **electronic** — إلكترونى
  - The mobile is an **electronic** device.
* **electric** — كهربى
  - You should turn off **electric** devices at night to save electricity.

*Lesson 3 SB page 60*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| a five - minute shower | حمام لمدة خمس دقائق | It's possible to | إنه من الممكن أن ... |
| save water / electricity | يوفر الماء / الكهرباء | set the alarm | يضبط المنبه |
| waste electricity | يهدر الكهرباء | (be) in use | مُستخدم (قيد الاستخدام) |
| **Prepositions حروف الجر** | | | |
| agree on | يوافق على | switch off lights | يغلق الأضواء |
| layers of | طبقات من | at the same time | فى نفس الوقت |
| at the bottom | فى القاع | melt into liquid | يذوب / ينصهر إلى سائل |
| the ideal time for | الوقت المثالى لـ | a type of | نوع من |
| a container for | وعاء لـ | depend on | يعتمد على |
| for five minutes | لمدة خمس دقائق | | |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 3 SB page 60

### Tips to be more eco-friendly in the home

1. **Electronic devices**[1] in our homes use a lot of electricity.
2. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's **resources**[2].
3. This can make **climate change**[3] worse.
4. There are some **tips**[4] to be **eco-friendly**[5] at home.
5. We should switch off electronic devices when they aren't in use.
6. Don't leave electronic devices on stand-by as this still **consumes**[6] a lot of energy.
7. Don't use more than one device at the same time.
8. Don't take long showers to save water and energy.
9. We can reuse plastic bottles to make other things.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) أجهزة الكترونية | (2) مصادر | (3) تغير المناخ |
| (4) نصائح | (5) صديق للبيئة | (6) يستهلك |

### Types of rocks

1. The Earth's surface is made up of **layers of**[1] rocks.
2. Rocks can be **grouped**[2] into three types; sandstone, basalt and marble.
3. The youngest layers of **sandstone**[3] are at the top and the oldest are at the bottom.
4. Ancient Egyptians used sandstone to build things like **Sphinx**[4] at Giza.
5. Basalt is formed when **liquid**[5] rock cools again and becomes solid.
6. Marbel is found in the bottom layers of the Earth's **surface**[6].
7. **Marble**[7] is a very strong type of rock.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (1) طبقات | (2) يصنف | (3) حجر رملى | (4) أبو الهول |
| (5) سائل | (6) سطح | (7) الرخام | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* How to be eco-friendly at home
* Recycling
* Climate change

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 60

### Tips to be more eco-friendly in the home



**Air conditioning**(1), hot water, and **electronic devices**(2) in our homes all use a lot of electricity. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's **resources**(3), which can make climate change worse. Let's help our planet - let's **save energy**(4) at home!

**Switch off lights!**

Remember to always switch off lights, TVs, computers, games consoles, tablets, and all of your electronic devices when they aren't in use. Don't leave them **on stand-by**(5) as this still **consumes**(6) a lot of energy. And don't use more than one device at the same time !

**Have a shower, not a bath !**



There are about 150 to 200 liters of water in an **average**(7) bath, but there's only between 30 and 80 liters in a five-minute shower. Showers are a great way to save water and energy. But don't spend a long time in the shower: **set the alarm**(8) on your phone for five minutes and then stop!

**Reuse everything !**

There are lots of things in our trash that we can **recycle**(9) or even reuse at home. **Plastic bottles** (10) are a good example. Reuse them to make other things, for example a **bird feeder**(11), or a **hanging basket**(12) for your plants.

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| (1) تكييف الهواء | (2) أجهزة إلكترونية | (3) مصادر | (4) يوفر الطاقة | (5) في وضع الاستعداد | (6) يستهلك / يستنفذ |
| (7) معدل - متوسط | (8) يضبط المنبه | (9) يعيد تدوير | (10) زجاجات بلاستيكية | (11) وعاء لتغذية الطيور | (12) أصيص معلق للنبات |

# Listening

on Lesson 4 SB page 62

## Types of rocks

**Teacher :**

Good morning class. Today we're looking at different types of rocks for module 3 on the **composition**[1] of the Earth. Tarek, please show the first slide. That's it, thank you.

The **Earth's surface**[2] is, as you can see, made up of **layers**[3] of rocks. Rocks are **solids**[4] which are made of **minerals**[5]. Rocks can be **grouped**[6] into three types depending on which minerals they **contain**[7] and how they were formed.

**Teacher :**

The three types of rock we're looking at today are **sandstone**[8], basalt, and marble.

Sandstone is usually found near the Earth's surface. It's formed from the broken parts of other rocks and material when they **press**[9] together. The youngest layers of sandstone are at the top. The oldest layers are at the bottom. The Ancient Egyptians used sandstone to build things, like the Sphinx at Giza.

Now, if rock becomes very, very hot, it **melts**[10] into liquid. Basalt is a type of rock that forms when liquid rock **cools**[11] again and becomes solid. We find these rocks in the **bottom**[12] layers of the Earth's surface. It can make some amazing natural **shapes**[13]. Here's an example. This is the Giant's Causeway in Ireland.

Lastly, let's look at **marble**[14]. Marble is also found in the bottom layers of the Earth's surface. It forms when other types of rock change because of extreme heat or extreme pressure. These conditions cause the rocks change because of extreme heat or extreme pressure. These conditions cause the rocks to get very hot and compressed. They don't melt, but the minerals in them changes form. Marble is a very strong type of rock. It is often used to make statues, like this one here from Ancient Greece.

| (1) تركيب / بناء | (2) سطح الأرض | (3) طبقات | (4) صلب | (5) معادن | (6) تصنف إلى مجموعات | (7) تحتوى على |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| (8) حجر رملى | (9) يضغط | (10) يذيب | (11) يبرد | (12) قاع | (13) أشكال | (14) رخام |

## 2. Skills

المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات [ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية]

### Mind mapping ideas

أفكار الخرائط الذهنية

**Learn**

#### Why is mind mapping useful ? ما هى أهمية الخرائط الذهنية ؟

- Mind mapping is a good way to generate ideas in a group.

الخرائط الذهنية هى وسيلة جيدة لإنتاج أفكار فى مجموعة.

#### How to do mind mapping : كيف نقوم بعمل الخرائط الذهنية :

1. One person writes the topic on a big piece of paper .

١. يقوم شخص بكتابة اسم الموضوع الذى يريدون التفكير فيه على ورقة.

2. The other group members look at the topic and share any expressions or ideas that come into their minds about it.

٢. ينظر باقى أفراد المجموعة إلى الموضوع ويشاركون التعبيرات والأفكار التى قد وصلوا إليها بعد التفكير.

3. The first person writes all the ideas on the paper. ٣. يكتب الشخص الأول [المسئول] كل الأفكار على الورقة.

4. Then, the group looks at the ideas again and decides which ones are useful.

٤. ثم تتطلع المجموعة مرة أخرى على الأفكار وتقرر أيهما مفيد.

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

**Key vocabulary**

1. We should ............ old things to help our environment.
   a. destroy  b. burn  c. throw  d. recycle
2. Magda planted beautiful flowers in a/an ............ .
   a. bird feeder  b. electronic device  c. games console  d. hanging basket
3. Our bodies need vitamins, ............ , and fiber.
   a. presents  b. minerals  c. fuel  d. containers
4. When you leave your electronic devices on stand-by, they ............ energy.
   a. grow  b. help  c. save  d. consume

**SB Exercises**

5. SB It's possible to ............ materials from the recycling bins at home.
   a. grow  b. reuse  c. charge  d. build
6. SB Basalt is a type of ............ .
   a. cotton  b. air  c. rock  d. wood
7. SB Saving energy at home ............ a difference to climate change.
   a. makes  b. gives  c. goes  d. put

El-Moasser Exercises

8. .......... products are safe for the environment.
   a. Eco-friendly  b. Plastic  c. Unhealthy  d. Electric
9. We saw many .......... in the Egyptian Museum.
   a. statues  b. trees  c. rocks  d. stores
10. When rocks become very hot, they .......... into liquid.
   a. freeze  b. melt  c. cool  d. save

**Definitions**

11. A/An .......... is a machine to cool your home.
   a. television  b. oven  c. microwave  d. air conditioning
12. A .......... is a garden container of food for birds.
   a. hanging basket  b. washing machine  c. bird feeder  d. games console

**Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

13. Please, switch .......... lights before you leave the room.
   a. on  b. off  c. at  d. of
14. When you want to get up early for work, .......... the alarm on your phone.
   a. send  b. waste  c. set  d. hang
15. Don't touch .......... wires with wet hands.
   a. electronic  b. electricity  c. electric  d. electrically
16. Good students always follow their teachers' .......... .
   a. advice  b. device  c. voice  d. cycle

## 3. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

**Asking and answering about ways to protect the environment :**

السؤال عن طرق لحماية البيئة والإجابة عليها :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| - How can we protect the environment ?<br>- كيف يمكننا حماية البيئة ؟ | - Saving energy is one of the ways that can protect the environment.<br>- توفير الطاقة إحدى الطرق التى يمكن أن تساعد فى الحفاظ على البيئة. |
| - How can we be eco-friendly at home ?<br>- كيف نصبح أصدقاء للبيئة بالمنزل ؟ | - Always switch off light, TVs, computers, games consoles when they aren't in use.<br>- اطفى دائمًا الأضواء، التلفاز، أجهزة الكمبيوتر ووحدات الألعاب عندما لا تحتاج لاستخدامها. |
| - Why can't we leave the electric devices on stand-by ?<br>- لماذا لا يمكننا ترك الأجهزة الكهربائية فى وضع الإستعداد؟ | - Because when you leave them on stand-by, this still consumes a lot of energy.<br>- لأن عندما تترك الأجهزة فى وضع الاستعداد، هذا يجعلها تستهلك الكثير من الطاقة . |
| - How can we recycle at home ?<br>- كيف نقوم بإعادة التدوير فى المنزل؟ | - Use old plastic bottles to make bird feeders.<br>- استخدام الزجاجات البلاستيكية القديمة لتضع أوعية طعام للطيور . |

# III Language

## Articles (a / an / the) أدوات النكرة والمعرفة

- **Articles** are short words that we use before a noun to show whether we are talking about something in general or something specific.

- أدوات النكرة والمعرفة هى عبارة عن كلمات قصيرة تستخدم قبل الاسم لتوضح إذا ما كنا نتحدث عن شيء على وجه العموم أو شيء محدد.

### A The article (the) : أداة المعرفة (the) :

- When we talk about something specific, we use (the).

- تستخدم (the) عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما محدد.

ex :- The Earth's surface.
- The oldest layers are at the bottom.

### B The articles (a/an) : أدوات النكرة (a/an) :

1. When we talk about something singular in general, we use (a) or (an).

١. تستخدم (a) أو (an) عندما نتحدث عن اسم مفرد ما بوجه عام.

ex :- Basalt is a type of rock.
- Here's an example.

2. We use (an) before singular nouns that start with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u).

٢. نستخدم (an) قبل الأسماء (المفرد التى تعد) والتى تبدأ بصوت متحرك (a, e, i, o, u).

ex :- an egg - an orange

3. We use (a) before singular nouns that start with other letters (consonants).

٣. نستخدم (a) قبل الأسماء (المفرد التى تعد) وتبدأ بحرف من الحروف الأخرى (الحروف الساكنة).

ex :- a mango - a potato

### C No article :

- **We don't use an article before :**

1. the name of a person or place.
١. لا نستخدم أداة قبل اسم شخص أو اسم مكان.

ex :- Mr Hussein - Nabila - Cairo - Egypt

2. the plural form of countable nouns.

٢. لا نستخدم أداة قبل صيغة الجمع للأسماء المعدودة ( إذا كنا نتحدث عن النوع كله أو الفصيلة ).

ex :- cars - camels

3. uncountable nouns.
٣. لا نستخدم أداة قبل الأسماء غير المعدودة.

ex :- sugar, water, rain, marble, cotton

## Extra information : معلومات إضافية :

◀ تستخدم (the) فى الحالات التالية :

١. قبل اسم سبق ذكره فى سياق الحديث :

**ex :** - My dad works in an office. The office is in Nasr City in Cairo.

٢. تستخدم (the) قبل الاسم الفريد من نوعه (أى الذى لا يوجد منه سوى واحد فقط).

**ex :** - the Earth الأرض - the sun الشمس
- the Red Sea البحر الأحمر - the moon القمر

◀ تستخدم (a/an) فى الحالات التالية :

١. قبل اسم مفرد معدود يتم ذكره لأول مرة.

**ex :** - There is a book on the shelf. - There is an apple in the fridge.

٢. قبل اسم وظيفة عند التحدث عن وظيفة شخص ما.

**ex :** Adam is a doctor. - Noha is an engineer.

٣. توضع (a) أمام الكلمات المفرد التى تبدأ بحرف (u) إذا نطقت بنفس صوت الحرف (u).

**ex :** a uniform - a unit - a university

**لاحظ:** توضع (an) إذا نطقت (u) بغير صوت الحرف (u).

**ex :** an umbrella - an ugly man

# Exercises on Language

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB There are lots of pyramids in ........... Egypt.
   a. an b. the c. no article d. a
2. SB There is ........... area in our town with lots of trees.
   a. a b. no article c. the d. an
3. SB Yara is ........... new girl in our class this term.
   a. no article b. a c. an d. the
4. SB We find these rocks in the bottom layers of ........... Earth's surface.
   a. an b. the c. no article d. a
5. SB This is ........... photo of the Sphinx in Giza.
   a. the b. a c. an d. no article
6. SB Many statues from ........... Ancient Greece are made of marble.
   a. an b. the c. no article d. a

El-Moasser Exercises

7. We played with ........... elephant in the wildlife park.
   a. a b. no article c. the d. an
8. Alexandria is ........... famous city in Egypt.
   a. the b. an c. a d. no article
9. Neil Armstrong was the first to walk on ........... moon .
   a. no article b. a c. the d. an
10. He is carrying ........... bag of gold coins.
   a. an b. a c. the d. no article

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. SB ........... (An) Giant's Causeway in Ireland is made of basalt.
2. SB Plastic bottles are ........... (an) good example. Reuse them to make other things.
3. SB I live in a village in Andalusia in ........... (a) Spain .
4. SB Making electricity uses a lot of ........... (a) planet's resources.

El-Moasser Exercises

5. Our teacher, ........... (an) Mr Mohamed, is from Cairo.
6. I want to travel around ........... (a) world.
7. We need ........... (a) egg and some cheese.
8. Mickey Mouse is ........... (a) interesting cartoon character.
9. We planted ........... (the) mango tree in our garden.
10. Coconut is ........... (an) type of fruit.

## 3. Circle the correct answer :

1. **A/The** sun is a star.
2. She wants to be **a/an** engineer.
3. I read **a/an** story about a kind man yesterday.
4. He found **the/an** orange under a tree.
5. They invited **the/no article** Tarek to their wedding.
6. We spend the summer vacation in **no article/an** Alexandria.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ○ Create

### 1 Complete the following dialog :

**Munir and Basel are discussing how to be eco-friendly.**

**Munir :** Basel, what does eco-friendly mean ?

**Basel :** (1) ................................................ .

**Munir :** Not harmful to the environment ! (2) ................................................ ?

**Basel :** To be eco-friendly, you can save energy.

**Munir :** (3) ................................................ ?

**Basel :** To save energy, switch off TVs, tablets and computers when they aren't in use.

**Munir :** Do electronic devices consume energy when I leave them on stand-by ?

**Basel :** (4) ................................................ .

**Munir :** Oh ! I didn't know that. What do you think of recycling ?

**Basel :** (5) ................................................ . It saves a lot of energy.

### 2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

It's important to be eco-friendly at home to help the environment. Air conditioning, hot water, and electronic devices in our homes all use a lot of electricity. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources. To save energy at home switch off lights, TVs, computers, games consoles, tablets, and all of your electronic devices when they aren't in use. Don't leave them on stand-by as this still **consumes** a lot of energy. Showers are a great way to save water and energy. But don't spend a long time in the shower : set the alarm on your phone for five minutes and then stop! We can recycle a lot of things in our trash or even re-use them at home. Plastic bottles are a good example. Re-use **them** to make other things, for example a bird feeder, or a hanging basket for your plants.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Making electricity uses a lot of ............ .
   a. resources b. homework c. trash d. plants
2. The underlined word "**consumes**" means to "............ " .
   a. save b. use c. keep d. prevent
3. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to the ............ .
   a. devices b. resources c. plastic bottles d. games consoles

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

................................................................................................

5. How can short showers help ?

..............................................................................................................

6. How can you save energy at home ?

..............................................................................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Set the ........... to help you get up at 7:30 am for work.
   a. minerals  b. shower  c. alarm  d. energy
2. To save energy means not to ........... electricity or fuel.
   a. cool  b. waste  c. keep  d. protect
3. A/An ........... is a container for plants.
   a. oven  b. hanging basket  c. bird feeder  d. air conditioning
4. My grandpa always fills the bird ........... for birds to eat.
   a. eater  b. fence  c. feeder  d. map
5. Do you have ........... red pen ?
   a. the  b. a  c. an  d. no article
6. Wood floats on the ........... of the water.
   a. underground  b. middle  c. bottom  d. surface
7. I have ........... apple and a mango.
   a. no article  b. a  c. an  d. the
8. We waste a lot of water when we have a long ........... .
   a. home  b. shower  c. plant  d. basket
9. ........... Fahmy needs a lot of water to grow crops.
   a. A  b. No article  c. The  d. An
10. You can ........... plastic bottles to make creative objects.
    a. burn  b. plant  c. reuse  d. damage

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. We have ............................... (an) new teacher for PE classes .
2. They moved to ............................... (the) Alexandria last year .
3. He helped ............................... (a) old man to cross the road .
4. ............................... (A) River Nile is very important for Egypt.

## 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*"How to save energy at home"*

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

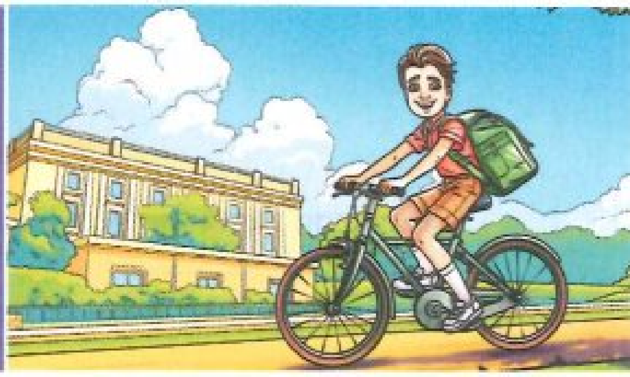
..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

Lessons **5 & 6**

- Literature
- Writing

SB pages 64 - 67



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| wetter (adj) | اكثر رطوبة | dive (v) | يغطس - يغوص |
| look after (phr - v) | يعتنى بـ | dolphins (n) | الدرافيل |
| worth (n), (adj) | ذو قيمة - مستحق | poet (n) | شاعر |
| eco = environmental (adj) | بيئى [خاص بالبيئة] | poem (n) | قصيدة |
| recycling bin (n) | سلة إعادة التدوير | documentary (n) | فيلم - برنامج وثائقى |
| recyclable (adj) | قابل لإعادة التدوير | trash (n) | قمامة - مهملات |

## Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

cycle – Earth - trash - poet - poem

1. A .................. is the person who writes poems.
2. He bought a bike to .................. to school.
3. .................. is the planet we live on.
4. Don't throw .................. in rivers. It's dangerous.

## Lesson 5 SB pages 64 & 65

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| stanza (n) | مقطع شعرى | blank (adj) | فارغ |
| lights (n) | مصابيح الإضاءة | rhyme (d) (v), (n) | يُقفّى - يتناغم - قافية |
| suggest (ed) (v) | يقترح | tap (n) | صنبور المياه |
| value (n) | قيمة | | |

## Lesson 6 SB pages 66 & 67

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| changes (n) | تغييرات | below (prep) | اسفل |
| human (adj) | بشرى - انسانى | bin (n) | سلة مهملات |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|
| understand يدرك / يفهم | understood | understood |
| ride يركب | rode | ridden |

## Study these definitions
ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **look after** | take care of | يعتنى بـ |
| **worth** | the value of something | قيمة - فائدة |
| **dive** | jump into the water | يغوص |
| **Earth** | the planet we live on | كوكب الأرض |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▸ Synonyms and Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| fun ممتع | enjoyable | boring ممل |

### ▸ Prefixes & Suffixes
مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –able | لتحويل الفعل إلى صفة | recyclable قابل لإعادة التدوير |
| –ly | تحول الصفة إلى ظرف | easily بسهولة |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. To get the adjective from the verb "recycle", we add the suffix "............" .
   a. –less b. –ness c. –able d. –re
2. "............" is the antonym of "fun".
   a. Boring b. enjoyable c. Dry d. Ugly
3. To get an adverb of the adjective "easy", we add "............".
   a. –al b. –ly c. –ous d. –er

# General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 poem - poet - poetry

* **poem** — قصيدة
  - I read a beautiful **poem** written by Ahmed Shawqi.
* **poet** — شاعر
  - Ahmed Shawqi was a famous **poet** in Egypt.

*Lesson 6 SB page 64*

* **poetry** — الشاعر (فن كتابة القصائد)
  - He began his speech with a few lines of **poetry**.

### 2 planet – plant

* **planet** — كوكب
  - I watched a documentary about our **planet**.
* **plant** — نبات / يزرع
  - I watered the **plants** yesterday.

*Reading on lesson 6 SB page 66*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| **Expressions** التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| travel to school | يذهب للمدرسة | no matter | لا يهم |
| it takes 15 minutes | تستغرق ١٥ دقيقة | in need | محتاج |
| rather than | بدلًا من | | |
| **Prepositions** حروف الجر | | | |
| switch off = turn off | يطفئ - يغلق (جهاز) | put (something) in | يضع شيئ فى |
| good for | جيد لـ - مفيد لـ | | |


**Aweek is enough**

مراجعـة المنهج
و التمكـن منـه فى
اسبـوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER



# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 5 SB page 64

### Poem[1] : Helping the Earth

1. Moira Dutton is the writer of the poem.
2. The poet says that the **Earth**[2] gets hotter and wetter.
3. The poet **suggests**[3] ways to **look after**[4] the earth which including :
   a. Turn off the lights you don't need.
   b. Walk or cycle **rather than**[5] drive.
   c. Turn off **taps**[6] when you don't need water.
   d. Don't throw plastic in water.
   e. Plant more flowers and trees.
4. At the end of the poem, the poet asks the readers to try because they're worth.
5. The poet says we can save our earth.

## Lesson 6 SB page 66

### Rami's eco blog

1. Rami watched a **documentary**[7] about the effects of **humans**[8] activities on the planet.
2. Rami decided to be more eco-friendly.
3. He rides his bike to school.
4. He looks for the right type of **recycling bin**[9].
5. He tries to switch off his tech devices.
6. He **makes changes**[10] to save energy.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| (1) قصيدة | (2) كوكب الارض | (3) يقترح | (4) يعتنى بـ |
| (5) بدلًا من | (6) صنبور المياه | (7) فيلم وثائقى | (8) البشر |
| (9) سلة إعادة التدوير | (10) يحدث تغيرات | | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* How to save energy
* How to help your environment

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

### Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 64

**Helping the Earth**

**Stanza 1**

As the Earth grows hotter and **wetter**[1],
We need to learn to look after it better.
A drought here, a flood there,
We can help, no matter where!

**Stanza 2**

Turn off lights that you don't need,
Turn off that **tap**[2], others are **in need**[3],
Walk or recycle **rather than**[4] drive.
Don't throw plastic where dolphins **dive**[5]!

**Stanza 3**

Plant more flowers, plant more trees,
For the birds and for the bees.
We must try for all we're **worth**[6],
So we can save our Planet Earth!

**Moira Dutton**

(1) اكثر رطوبة
(2) صنبور
(3) محتاج
(4) بدلًا من
(5) يغوص
(6) ذو قيمة - مستحق

## 2. Reading skills مهارة القراءة

### Identifying the structure of a poem التعرف على تركيب القصيدة

Every poem has a different structure that .....
- shows us what the poem is about. تبين لنا موضوع القصيدة.
- shows us how the poet felt when he or she wrote it. توضح كيف كان شعور الشاعر عندما كتب القصيدة.

## It's important to note ....

### 1. How many stanzas the poem has :
١. كم مقطع شعرى بالقصيدة :

- Stanzas are the different parts of a poem.
- المقاطع الشعرية هى الأجزاء المختلفة للقصيدة.
- There's a blank line between stanzas.
- يوجد سطر فارغ بين أجزاء القصيدة.

**ex. - "Helping the Earth" poem consists of three stanzas.**

| Stanza 1 | Stanza 2 | Stanza 3 |
|---|---|---|
| The poet shows the Earth's problems that we should solve. يوضح الشاعر مشكلات كوكب الأرض التى لابد أن نقوم بحلها. | The poet asks us to stop doing some actions to save the planet. يطلب الشاعر منا أن نتوقف عن بعض الأفعال لننقذ الكوكب. | The poet suggests we can look after the planet by planting more trees and plants. يقترح الشاعر أنه يمكننا الاعتناء بالارض من خلال زراعة المزيد من الاشجار والنباتات. |

### 2. Which words rhyme :
٢. مدى تناغم الكلمات :

**ex. :** When two words have the same sound, they rhyme.

- عندما تشترك كلمتان فى صوت واحد فإن هذا هو التناغم أى لهما نفس القافية.

**ex. : (wetter – better) → in lines (1 & 2)** • **(there – where) → in lines (3 & 4)**

### 3. Personification :
٣. التشخيص :

- When the poet gives qualities of a person to a thing.
- عندما يعطى الشاعر صفات بشرية إلى شيء غير عاقل.

**ex. :** The Earth talked as if it was a person.

**on Lesson 6 SB page 66**

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD — Helping the planet

## Rami's eco blog



Hi, my name's Rami. Last year, I watched a **documentary**(1) about the **effects**(2) of human activities on the planet. After that, I decided to make some changes in my life because I wanted to be more **eco-friendly**(3). In the past, I always traveled to school by bus, but now I ride my bike to school. It only takes 15 minutes, it's healthy, and it's fun !

(1) برنامج وثائقى (2) تأثيرات (3) صديقة للبيئة

Before, I never put my trash in the recycling bins and I never thought about if it was **recyclable**[4] or not. Now, I always look for the right type of recycling bin and put my trash in it , because I understand how important it is to reuse the Earth's **resources**[5].

Now, I also try to **switch off**[6] all my tech devices - like my laptop and my games **console**[7] - when I'm not using them, because I know that this saves energy and that's good for the planet, too.

We can all do things that help in small ways!

What changes have you made to help the planet ? Leave a comment below.

Like | Comment : | 23 comments

**Choose the correct answer.**

- Understanding reference. فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير.

Learn 1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .................. .
a. trash b. bin c. documentary d. bike

Practice 2. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to ?
a. recycling bins b. changes c. school buses d. tech devices

(4) قابلة لإعادة التدوير | (5) موارد / مصادر | (6) يطفىء | (7) وحدة تحكم (اللعبة)

## Exercise on Vocabulary

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**Key vocabulary**

1. He is a great poet. He writes ............ .
   a. rules b. poems c. mistakes d. sports
2. Our planet becomes hotter and ............ in summers.
   a. cooler b. wetter c. noisier d. quieter
3. Paper is ............ . We can use it again.
   a. solid b. recyclable c. active d. messy
4. A ............ is the person who writes poems.
   a. farmer b. reader c. researcher d. poet

**SB Exercises**

5. SB How many ............ does the poem consist of ?
   a. stanzas b. rooms c. classes d. leaves
6. SB To be more eco-friendly, I decided to make some ............ in my life.
   a. changes b. results c. questions d. reasons
7. SB It's important to ............ the Earth's resources.
   a. waste b. reuse c. destroy d. leave

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Ahmed Shawqi is a famous ............ who wrote many famous poems.
   a. singer b. framer c. poet d. actor
9. Turn off the ............ to save water.
   a. tape b. tab c. tap d. tip
10. Don't throw ............ in streets. Try to recycle it.
   a. plant b. air c. rain d. trash
11. I saw a ............ in TV about how to save energy.
   a. documentary b. match c. song d. music

▶ **Definitions**

12. The ............ of something is the value of it.
   a. color b. material c. moving d. worth
13. To look after something means to take ............ of it.
   a. photo b. reason c. sweet d. care

▶ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. Human activities have a great ............ on the environment.
   a. affect b. effect c. offer d. order
15. Switch ............ the tech-devices when you don't use them.
   a. on b. over c. out d. off
16. Earth is the ............ we live on.
   a. planet b. plant c. plan d. plane

## 3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

**Learn**

**To write a blog post :** لكتابة مدونة :

1. compare actions in the past to actions in the present.
   ◀ مقارنة الأحداث فى الماضى مع الأحداث فى المضارع.
2. use conjunctions correctly.
   ◀ استخدام الروابط بطريقة صحيحة.
3. have correct spelling and punctuation.
   ◀ استخدام هجاء وعلامات ترقيم صحيحة.

**Practice**

⊙ **Write a blog post about the changes you made to be eco - friendly. Write 100 - 120 words.**

| My changes | In the past, I ... | Now, I ... |
|---|---|---|
| Travel | traveled by car. | ride my bike to school. |
| Trash | never put my trash in the recycling bins. | put my trash in the right type of the recycling bin. |
| Technology | didn't save energy. | switch off my tech devices to save energy. |

○ HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD < > ⋮ ✕


**Master your skills**

يهدف إلى تنمية
مهـــارات
اللغة الإنجليزية

EL-MOASSER



## III Language

### Using conjunctions "and , but & because" استخدام الروابط

- **Conjunctions** are words we use to join two parts of a sentence together.
- الروابط هى كلمات تستخدم لربط جزئين من الجملة معًا.

**and** و We use it to add information.
تستخدم (and) لإضافة معلومات.

ex. : I look for the right type of recycling bin **and** put my trash in it.

**but** لكن We use it to contrast information.
تستخدم (but) عند التعبير عن تناقض فكرتين.

ex. : I always traveled to school by bus, **but** now I ride my bike to school.

**because** لأن We use it to explain information or give a reason for something.
تستخدم (because) لتوضيح معلومات أو إعطاء تفسير لشىء ما.

ex. : I prefer cycling to school **because** I want to be more eco-friendly.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**SB Exercises**

1. SB I decided to make some changes ............ I wanted to be eco-friendly.
   a. because b. but c. so d. of
2. SB I switch off my laptop ............ my games console when I'm not using them.
   a. but b. and c. because d. or
3. SB I put my trash in the recycling bin ............ I understand it's importance.
   a. so b. but c. because d. or
4. SB I switch off all tech devices ............ I know that this saves energy.
   a. or b. and c. but d. because

**El-Moasser Exercises**

5. The movie was funny, ............ it had a sad ending.
   a. because b. or c. but d. so
6. She stayed home ............ she was feeling ill.
   a. so b. and c. or d. because

7. She baked a cake ............ decorated it with chocolate chips.
   a. so  b. and  c. because  d. or
8. He bought a new laptop, ............ it broke down after a week.
   a. but  b. because  c. or  d. so
9. She exercises very hard ............ she wants to win a gold medal.
   a. because  b. or  c. and  d. but
10. Our family packed their suitcases ............ went for the trip.
   a. or  b. and  c. but  d. because

**2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

**SB Exercises**

1. SB My mom had heatstroke ............ (**but**) she stayed in bed for 30 days.
2. SB I turn off electricity before I go out ............ (**and**) I know that this saves energy.
3. SB Air conditioning ............ (**but**) electronic devices use a lot of electricity.

**El-Moasser Exercises**

4. They were poor, ............ (**and**) they were generous and happy.
5. She studies hard ............ (**but**) she wants to be a vet.
6. He could ride a bike, ............ (**and**) he couldn't swim.
7. She bought a present ............ (**and**) it was her mother's birthday.
8. We need to hurry ............ (**but**) we are late.
9. She wrote a poem ............ (**but**) shared it with her friends.

Aweek is enough

مراجعــة المنهج
و التمكــن منــه فى
اسبــوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER



# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand Apply Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب)

1. They studied a poem ............ .
   a. last year b. today c. yesterday d. last week
2. They studied the poem in ........... class.
   a. geology b. geography c. English d. history
3. The poem is about ........... the earth.
   a. damaging b. helping c. moving d. planting
4. The poet suggests ............ to look after the earth.
   a. ways b. places c. jobs d. games

## 2 Complete the following dialog :

**Sama is reading a blog post about things you can do to be eco-friendly :**

**Randa :** What are you doing, Sama ?

Sama : (1) ............................................................................ .

**Randa :** What is the blog post about ?

Sama : (2) ............................................................................ .

**Randa :** (3) ............................................................................ ?

Sama : To be eco-friendly, you should ride your bike instead of your car.

**Randa :** (4) ............................................................................ ?

Sama : Because cycling doesn't cause any pollution and it's healthy.

**Randa :** What else can I do to be eco-friendly ?

Sama : (5) ............................................................................ . We use a lot of energy, so we must save it as much as we could.

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB I watched a ............ about the effects of human activities on the planet.
   a. game b. documentary c. match d. bag
2. They learned how to recycle ............ reuse a lot of the trash.
   a. because b. but c. and d. or
3. The shoemaker was kind ............ honest.
   a. because b. but c. and d. or
4. Some of our trash is ............ , so we can use it in different things.
   a. possible b. fast c. recyclable d. tired

5. I do some research about different ............ to be eco-friendly.
   a. results b. ways c. shapes d. poems
6. You should choose the right type of ............ before putting your trash in them.
   a. junk food b. chemicals c. tech devices d. recycling bins
7. I like ............ under water to see the coral reefs.
   a. asking b. diving c. recycling d. reading
8. My favorite poet shared a new ............ online.
   a. match b. game c. poem d. exam
9. I could understand her easily ............ I'm good at French.
   a. but b. and c. on d. because
10. People should be ............ to save the planet which we live on.
   a. eco-friendly b. rich c. careless d. helpless

## 4 Match the words to their definitions :

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. worth | ☐ a. the planet we live on |
| 2. dive | ☐ b. take care of |
| 3. look after | ☐ c. jump into the water |
| | ☐ d. the value of something |

## 5 Write a blog post of (60 - 80) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

about what things you do to be eco-friendly.

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

# Review on unit 5

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

## Vocabulary

**Lessons 1 & 2**

| | |
|---|---|
| climate change | تغير المناخ |
| drought | جفاف |
| wildfire | حرائق الغابات |
| flood | فيضان |
| water scarcity | نقص المياه |
| heatstroke | ضربة شمس |
| storm | عاصفة |
| air conditioning | تكييف هواء |
| resources | مصادر |

**Lessons 3 & 4**

| | |
|---|---|
| rocks | صخور |
| device | جهاز |
| electricity | كهرباء |
| games console | وحدة تحكم الألعاب |
| consume | يستهلك / يستنفذ |
| layers | طبقات |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير |
| bird feeder | وحدة تغذية الطيور |

**Lessons 5 & 6**

| | |
|---|---|
| effects | تأثيرات |
| documentary | فيلم وثائقى |
| recyclable | قابل لإعادة التدوير |
| look after | يعتنى بـ |
| tap | صنبور المياه |
| dive | يغوص |
| worth | قيمة |
| wetter | أكثر رطوبة |

## Language

**Comparative adjectives :**
المقارنة بين اثنين فى صفة معينة

صفة قصيرة + er + than

**ex.** Now, temperatures are hotter than they were in the past.

more + صفة طويلة + than

**ex.** It's more useful to stay home than getting outside when you're ill.

**Superlative adjectives :**
المقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين فى صفة

the + صفة قصيرة + est

**ex.** The biggest impact of dirty water can be on children.

the most + صفة طويلة

**ex.** The most dangerous thing is that people can get sick from dirty water.

**Articles** (a) , (an) , (the)

- **the** → To talk about something specific.
  - the Earth
- **an** → before singular nouns that start with a vowel.
  - an egg - an orange
- **a** → before singular nouns that start with consonants.
  - a pen - a potato

## Speaking

**1. Talking about the effects of climate change**

التحدث عن تأثيرات تغير المناخ

A: What are the effects of climate change ?

B: Water scarcity is one of its effects.

**2. Asking and answering about ways to protect the environment.**

السؤال عن طرق لحماية البيئة والإجابة عليها.

A: How can we protect the environment ?

B: Saving energy is one of the ways that can protect the environment.

A: How can we be eco-friendly at home ?

B: Always switch off light, TVs, computers, games consoles when they aren't in use.

Skills

## 1 Reading Comprehension

### Understanding reference

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة تحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة فى النص.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Read and answer the questions :**

One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change. Water scarcity affects people in different ways. Farmers, for example, can't grow as many crops as they used to. Without crops to sell, they can't earn enough money to pay for clean water. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it, which can have a negative effect on their health. The biggest impact can be on children, who have less time to spend in school.

- The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ............... .

a. crops b. farmers
c. climate changes d. children

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التى تحتها خط فى الفقرة.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن هناك دلالات للضمائر / الكلمات الموجودة فى الفقرة.

## 2 Speaking

### Talking about the effects of climate change

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialog) قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Complete the following dialog:**

**Noha is asking her mom to help her with her homework.**

**Noha:** Can you help me with my homework, mom ?
**Mom :** (1) ................................. . What is it about ?
**Noha:** (2) ................................................................. .
**Mom :** Climate change ! It's very dangerous.
**Noha:** (3) ................................................................. ?
**Mom :** Because it has many harmful effects.
**Noha:** Tell me about some of these effects.
**Mom :** Water scarcity is one of them.
**Noha:** (4) ................................................................. ?
**Mom :** Yes, it has many negative effects especially on farmers.
**Noha:** (5) ................................................................. ?
**Mom :** Because lack of water affects growing food.

التحدى تريد السؤال عن (تغير المناخ) وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

# General Exercises on unit 5

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار الكترونيا وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

## 1 Listen and answer the questions :
استمع وأجب عن الأسئلة [نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب] :

1. What did Ali watch last week ?

..........................................................................................

2. Who did he watch it with ?

..........................................................................................

3. What was it about ?

..........................................................................................

4. What did Ali decide to do to be more eco-friendly ?

..........................................................................................

## 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

isn't – energy – aren't – don't – resources

Air conditioning, hot water, and electronic devices in our homes all use a lot of electricity. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's (1) ............, which can make climate change worse. Let's help our planet - let's save (2) ............ at home! Remember to always switch off lights, TVs, computers, games consoles, tablets, and all of your electronic devices when they (3) ............ in use. Don't leave them on stand-by as this still consumes a lot of energy. And (4) ............ use more than one device at the same time !

## 3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Water **scarcity** is one of the most worrying problems facing the world today. Although water covers more than 70% of Earth's surface, two billion people don't have enough fresh, clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food. Even in countries where there are good water resources, the water cannot always reach the people who need **it**.

One of the reasons for water scarcity is climate change. On average, temperatures are higher than they were in the past. In some places, there is less rain, so there isn't as much water in lakes and rivers. Water scarcity affects people in different ways. Farmers, for example, can't grow as many crops as they used to. Without crops to sell, they can't earn enough money to pay for clean water.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The underlined word "**scarcity**" means ............ .
   a. plenty b. lack c. much d. a lot of
2. Temperatures are ............ than they were in the past.
   a. cooler b. lower c. higher d. similar
3. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ............ .
   a. money b. rain c. climate change d. water

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Summarize the second paragraph in one sentence.

..........................................................................................................................................

5. What do people use water for ?

..........................................................................................................................................

6. Why do you think water scarcity can affect farmers ?

..........................................................................................................................................

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We have ............ English competition on Sunday.
   a. an b. a c. the d. no article
2. SB A ............ started and burnt trees down.
   a. storm b. flood c. drought d. wildfire
3. Climate change is the ............ problem we face today.
   a. dangerous b. more dangerous c. most dangerous d. dangerous as
4. It's very cool in the metro ............ there is air conditioning.
   a. of b. but c. because d. and
5. SB Water covers more than 70 % of Earth's ............ .
   a. past b. surface c. post d. metal
6. ............means the value of something.
   a. Speed b. Worth c. Affect d. Health

## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ............ (A) honest man helped us.
2. They went to the cinema ............ (but) ate popcorn.
3. Honesty is ............ (important) than money.
4. Today, we had the ............ (easy) test.

## 6 Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**To your friend Ashraf about water scarcity. Your name is Medhat and your email address is medhat@yahoo.com. His email address is ashraffriend@yahoo.com.**

| | |
|---|---|
| From | |
| To | |
| Subject | |

..................................................... ,

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

...........................................................................................................................

.....................................................



UNIT SIX

# Food for thought

SB pages 68 : 79

**Unit Objectives :**

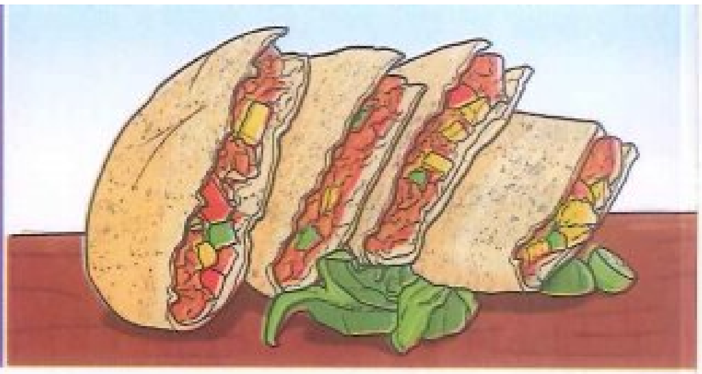
- **Reading** : An article about traditional food; A menu; An article about recipe; The Living Café : a short story
- **Writing** : A blog post about favorite foods
- **Listening** : Understand descriptions of celebration favorite foods
- **Speaking** : Discuss food choices; Talk about celebration foods
- **Language** : Wh- questions in the past simple; Adverbials of time and place

تنويه أهداف الدروس "Lessons objectives" فى مقدمة الكتاب.

Lessons **1 & 2**

- Traditional food
- At a restaurant

SB pages 68 : 71



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| traditional food (n) | الطعام التقليدى (الشعبى) | service (n) | خدمة |
| spices (n) | توابل | ingredients (n) | مكونات - مقادير |
| snack (n) | وجبة خفيفة | taste (d) (v), (n) | يتذوق - مذاق |
| oven (n) | فرن | pan (n) | مقلاة |
| menu (n) | قائمة طعام | main course (n) | طبق رئيسى |
| café (n) | مقهى | cook (n) | طاه - طباخ |
| meal (n) | وجبة | customer (n) | زبون |
| dessert (n) | الحلوى - تحلية | starters (n) | مقبلات |
| waiter (n) | نادل / جرسون | | |

## Foods

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| hummus | طحينة الحمص | om Ali | أم على |
| eggah | عجة | shawerma | شاورما |
| fish kebabs | سمك مشوى | hawawshi | حواوشى |
| ruz sayadieh | أرز صيادية (أرز مع السمك) | corn-on-the-cob | ذرة مشوية |
| chipsi mayai = zege | وجبة من البطاطس والبيض فى دولة تنزانيا | maakouda | معقودة (أكلة شعبية) |
| | | sweet potatoes | بطاطا |
| baklawa | بقلاوة | chickpea paste | عجينة الحمص |
| sayadieh el samak | سمك صيادية | | |

## Pop Quiz
تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

dessert – oven – snacks – spices – customer

1. My mom puts ................ on food to make it tasty.
2. I bake the cake in the ................ .
3. Chips and fries are unhealthy ................ .
4. She loves to have ice cream for ................ .

## Lesson 1

SB pages 68 & 69

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| reader (n) | قارئ | favorite (adj) | مفضل |
| dish (n) | طبق [وجبة] | the Middle East | الشرق الأوسط |
| fry (ied) (v) | يقلى | apartment (n) | شقة |
| warm (adj) | دافئ | try (ied) (v) | يجرب - يحاول |
| fried (adj) | مقلى | boil (ed) (v) | يغلى |
| serve (d) (v) | يقدم طعام | | |

## Lesson 2

SB pages 70 & 71

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| baked (adj) | مشوى [فى الفرن] | regards (n) | تحيات |
| unfortunately (adv) | لسوء الحظ | quick (adj) | سريع |
| sweet shop (n) | محل حلويات | anyway (adv) | بأى طريقة |
| madam (n) | سيدتى | daughter (n) | ابنه |
| definitely (adv) | بالتأكيد | improve (d) | يحسن - يطور |
| order (ed) (v) | يطلب طعام | green peppers | فلفل اخضر |

## Countries and cities

بلدان

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tanzania | دولة تنزانيا | Algeria | دولة الجزائر |
| Morocco | دولة المغرب | Tunisia | دولة تونس |
| Agadir | مدينة اكادير [فى المغرب] | Arusha | مدينة اروشا [فى تنزانيا] |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| put | يضع | put | put |
| say | يقول | said | said |
| bring | يحضر | brought | brought |
| pay | يدفع | paid | paid |

## Vocabulary Study

### Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد |
|---|---|---|
| delicious لذيذ | tasty / yummy | terrible/awful ردئ / سيئ |
| special خاص - مميز | unusual | normal/usual عادى - طبيعى |
| leave يغادر | go away | stay يبقى |
| comfortable مريح | relaxing | uncomfortable غير مريح |

### Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –d | تحويل الفعل لصفة | baked مخبوز |
| –er | تحول الفعل إلى اسم | waiter جرسون / نادل<br>starters مقبلات |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The word "............" can be replaced with "tasty".
   a. terrible  b. delicious  c. salty  d. ugly
2. When we add "–d" to the verb "bake", we get a/an "............" .
   a. adverb  b. noun  c. adjective  d. pronoun
3. The word "stay" is the antonym of "............" .
   a. leave  b. order  c. take  d. say

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

**1 keep + (noun / inf. + ing)** يحفظ / يستمر

- We **keep** different kinds of food in the fridge. يحفظ
- We **keep running** for 30 minutes. يستمر

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 10*

## 2 plate – dish

* plate — وجبة / طبق مسطح

▸ SB Why did your cook put no tomatoes on our **plates** ?

* dish — صنف من الطعام / طبق عميق

▸ Fish is my favorite **dish** today.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 70*

## 3 dessert – desert

* dessert — الحلو (يقدم بعد الأكل)

▸ SB We weren't sure if we wanted to have **desserts**.

*Reading on lesson 2 SB page 70*

* desert — صحراء

▸ The Western **Desert** in Egypt is very large.

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| come back | يعود - يرجع | food on the go | وجبات سريعة (الطعام أثناء التنقل) |
| take a long time | يستغرق وقت طويل | make some changes | يحدث بعض التغيرات |
| food for thought | أمر يستحق التفكير | | |
| **Prepositions حروف الجر** | | | |
| at all | على الإطلاق | a type of | نوع من |
| make ... with ... | يصنع ... باستخدام ... | at that point | عند تلك النقطة |
| for dessert | للتحلية | pay for | يدفع مقابل |
| from other countries | من دول أخرى | in different parts of | في أجزاء مختلفة من |

Master
your skills
يهدف إلى تنمية
مهـــارات
اللغة الإنجليزية
EL-MOASSER



# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 1 SB page 69

### Food on the Go

1. We asked our readers about the **traditional food**[1] that they love.
2. Samir says that most Egyptians know hawawshi.
3. Hawawshi is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it.
4. People **bake**[2] hawawshi in the **oven**[3] and eat it warm.
5. Elizabeth says that chipsi mayai is a very **popular**[4] traditional food in Tanzania.
6. People make chipsi mayai with fries and eggs fried in oil.
7. Youssef says that maakouda are very popular in Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia.
8. People make maakouda with potatoes.
9. Sometimes people put meat, fish, or cheese in maakouda, too.

## Lesson 2 SB page 70

### Randa's email to a restaurant

1. Randa sent an email to a Nile View **restaurant**[5] last Wednesday.
2. She said that they didn't enjoy their **meal**[6] at all.
3. It took a long time for our **starters**[7] to arrive.
4. Randa and her family ordered sayadieh el samak as their **main course**[8].
5. There weren't any tomatoes on sayadieh el samak.
6. Randa advised them to make some changes to their restaurant.
7. Randa's family doesn't want to eat at this restaurant again unless they improve the service.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) مأكولات شعبية | (2) يخبز | (3) فرن |
| (4) مشهور / معروف | (5) مطعم | (6) وجبة |
| (7) مقبلات | (8) طبق رئيسى | |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Popular traditional food
* An email to a restaurant

# II Skills

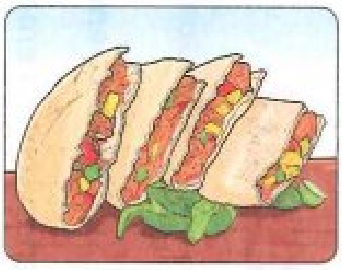
## 1. Reading and Listening

### Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 69

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

## Food on the Go



We asked our **readers**[1] to tell us about the traditional food that they love. Here's what they said!

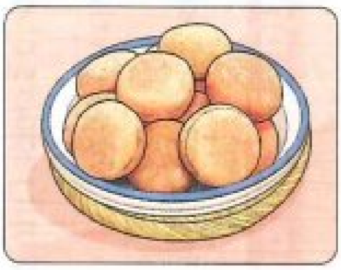
Most Egyptians know hawawshi. It is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and **spices**[2] inside it. Some people like to add cheese to it, too. You bake it in the oven and eat it warm. Delicious! You can also find it in some parts of the **Middle East**[3].

**Samir, Cairo**



Chipsi mayai, which is also sometimes called zege, is a very **popular**[4] traditional food here in Tanzania. We make it with fries and eggs **fried**[5] in oil. I love it, but I don't think it is a very healthy **snack**[6], so I don't eat it very often!

**Elizabeth, Arusha**



Maakouda are very popular in Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia. We make them with potatoes. We boil the potatoes in hot water, then make them into small balls. Sometimes we put meat, fish, or cheese in them, too. Finally, we **fry**[7] them in a lot of oil and **serve**[8] them in a sandwich. They're so good!

**Youssef, Agadir**

(1) قراء | (2) توابل | (3) الشرق الأوسط | (4) مشهور / شائع | (5) مقلي | (6) وجبة خفيفة | (7) يقلي | (8) يقدم طعام

## 2. Skills

المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات (ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية)

### Finding information in different parts of a text : البحث عن معلومات في أجزاء مختلفة من النص :

**1 Learn**

**First** think about the type of information you want to find.

أولًا، فكر في نوع المعلومات التي تريد البحث عنها.

- Are you looking for a noun or a verb ? هل تبحث عن اسم أم فعل ؟

**Next** scan each part of the text. بعد ذلك، قم بفحص كل جزء من النص.

- Does it contain key words relating to the information ?

  هل يحتوي على كلمات رئيسية تتعلق بالمعلومات ؟

- Look at headings or other features (such as the names and locations of the writers) that tell you what each part of the text is about.

  انظر إلى العناوين أو المميزات الأخرى (مثل أسماء ومواقع الكتاب) التي تخبرك بما يتعلق بكل جزء من النص.

**2 Practice**

- **Read the text then complete the missing information in the given table.**

Egyptians know hawawshi. It is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it. Some people like to add cheese to it, too. You bake it in the oven and eat it warm Delicious! You can also find it in some parts of the Middle East.

| Name of dish | Main ingredients | How do they cook it ? | Where do people eat it ? |
|---|---|---|---|
| Hawawshi | bread, meat ............ and ............ | ............ in the oven | Cairo |

• on Lesson 2 SB page 70

## Nile View Café

**Menu**

| Starters | Main courses | Desserts |
|---|---|---|
| Special salad (tomatoes, cucumbers, onions, green peppers) | Fish kebabs | Baklawa |
| | | Om Ali |
| | Koshari | Basbousa |
| Hummus (chickpea paste with bread) | Ruz sayadieh (fish with rice) | Chocolate ice cream |
| Eggah (eggs with onions and tomatoes) | Sayadieh el samak (baked fish with tomatoes) | |

### An email from a customer at the Nile View Restaurant

**Dear Sir or Madam,**

My family and I ate at your restaurant last Wednesday. The restaurant is clean and comfortable, but **unfortunately**[1], we did not enjoy our meal very much at all.

It took a long time for our **starters**[2] to arrive. We kept saying to each other: "When did we order our food ?I think it was 40 minutes ago!" I ordered a special salad which must be quick and easy to make. After 50 minutes, the **waiter**[3] brought our starters to us. The starters tasted delicious, but then our **main courses**[4] came about one minute after we finished eating the starters! We didn't like that at all.

We all ordered sayadieh el samak as our main course. When it arrived, there weren't any tomatoes on our plates. "Why did your cook put no tomatoes on our plates?" we asked the waiter. He said, "We don't have any tomatoes today."

After all of that, we weren't sure if we wanted **desserts**[5]. But, as it was my daughter's birthday, we decided to order them anyway. Five minutes after we ordered, the waiter came back to our table and asked us, "What did you order for dessert?"At that point, we decided to pay for the food we had and leave. I had ordered basbousa and I can also buy that in a **sweet shop**[6]. So, that's what I did! Your restaurant is a nice place, but I really think that you need to make some changes. Our family **definitely**[7] doesn't want to eat there again unless you improve your service.

**Regards**[8],

Randa Al-Katib

(1) لسوء الحظ | (2) مقبلات | (3) جرسون - نادل | (4) الأطباق الرئيسية | (5) التحلية | (6) محل حلويات | (7) بالتأكيد | (8) تحياتي

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

### Key vocabulary

1. The restaurant ........... includes Egyptian and Italian dishes.
   a. ingredients b. list c. test d. menu
2. We had Om Ali for ........... after lunch.
   a. salad b. main course c. dessert d. starters
3. Restaurants always serve the ........... before the main courses.
   a. starters b. sweets c. ingredients d. desserts
4. If you are hungry, eat a ........... . Lunch is almost ready.
   a. snake b. snack c. spices d. plate
5. It's crowded here. There're many ........... in the shop today.
   a. customers b. sellers c. dishes d. spices

**SB Exercises**

6. SB You bake hawawshi in the ........... and eat it warm.
   a. fire b. oven c. fridge d. oil
7. SB We fry maakouda in a lot of oil and ........... them on a sandwich.
   a. serve b. boil c. pour d. fry
8. SB Why did your ........... put no tomatoes on our plates?
   a. player b. driver c. customer d. cook

**El-Moasser Exercises**

9. The ........... serves breakfast and lunch in a good price.
   a. oven b. course c. restaurant d. apartment
10. We need to buy the ........... to prepare the dinner.
    a. meal b. ingredients c. menu d. waiter
11. You need a pan and oil to ........... eggs.
    a. chop b. boil c. fry d. bake
12. The ........... asked if we are ready to order at the restaurant.
    a. waiter b. customer c. dentist d. engineer

### Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Zayad, keep ........... hard to get your goal.
    a. work b. works c. working d. to working

14. We ........... back from our journey on May 11th.
    a. take    b. came    c. do    d. get
15. We didn't like the show ........... all.
    a. around    b. quiet    c. at    d. about
16. I need two hundred pounds to pay ........... the tickets.
    a. for    b. of    c. on    d. in

## 3. Speaking
مهارة التحدث

### 1. Discussing food choices :
التحدث عن اختيارات الطعام :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| • Which types of traditional food have you tried ?<br>- ما أنواع المأكولات الشعبية الذى قمت بتجربتها ؟ | - I have tried koshari, falafel, and corn-on-the-cob.<br>- لقد قمت بتجربة الكشرى والفلافل والذرة المشوية. |
| • Have you tried traditional food from other countries ?<br>- هل قمت بتجربة طعام شعبى من بلدان أخرى ؟ | - Yes, I have tried maakouda from Morocco.<br>- نعم، لقد قمت بتجربة المعقودة [أكلة شعبية] من المغرب. |
| • Which types of traditional food do you like ?<br>- ما هى أنواع المأكولات الشعبية التى تفضلها ؟ | - I like falafel. It tastes great.<br>- أنا أحب الفلافل. طعمها رائع. |
| • Which types of traditional food do you like ?<br>- ما هى المأكولات الشعبية الأخرى التى تحبها ؟ | - I like shawerma. It tastes great.<br>- أحب الشاورما. إنها ذات مذاق جيد. |

### 2. Asking and answering about eating at a café or restaurant :
السؤال والإجابة عن تناول الطعام فى مقهى أو مطعم :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| • Where did you eat lunch yesterday ?<br>- أين تناولت وجبة الغداء أمس ؟ | - I ate it at a nearby restaurant.<br>- لقد تناولته فى مطعم قريب. |
| • When did you go to the restaurant ?<br>- متى ذهبت إلى المطعم ؟ | - I went at 3:00 pm.<br>- ذهبت فى تمام الثالثة مساءً. |
| • What did you eat there ?<br>- ماذا تناولت هناك ؟ | - I ate fish and salad. It was delicious.<br>- تناولت سمك وسلطة. إنها لذيذة. |

# III Language

## Wh- questions in the past simple الاسئلة بكلمات إستفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط

- Wh - questions are questions that start with a question word such as :
- الاسئلة بكلمات إستفهام هى أسئلة تبدأ بأداة استفهام مثل :

### Question words كلمات الاستفهام

| What ما - ماذا | When متى | Who من | How often كم مرة |
|---|---|---|---|
| Which أى | Why لماذا | Whose لمن | How many كم العدد |
| Where أين | How كيف | How much كم الكمية / كم الثمن | |

**ex.** - Why did your cook put no tomatoes on our plates ?

### The answer الاجابة

- The answer to these questions can be a thing, a person, a place, a time, a reason, a number, or a way of doing something.
- الإجابة عن هذه الأسئلة يمكن أن تكون "شئ ، شخص ، مكان ، وقت ، سبب ، رقم أو طريقة لعمل شئ".

**Note**

- Wh-questions are questions that don't have a yes/no answer.

- لاحظ أن : لا يتم الإجابة عن السؤال المبدوء بأداة استفهام باستخدام (no/yes).

### Formation التكوين

- To make a wh - question in the past simple :

Wh- question word أداة الاستفهام + فعل مساعد "did" + subject فاعل (شئ / شخص) + verb in the infinitive مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة ?

**ex.** - What did you do ? - How much did they pay for the tickets ?

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB Exercises

1. SB When did we ............ our food ?
   a. ordered b. orders c. order d. ordering

2. SB ............ did you go to that restaurant ?
   a. Where b. Who c. Which d. When
3. SB ............ did they pay for the meal ?
   a. How much b. Who c. Which d. How many
4. SB ............ did we invite to the birthday meal ?
   a. How much b. Which c. Who d. Whose
5. SB Where did she ............ in the restaurant ?
   a. sit b. sat c. sits d. sitting

El-Moasser Exercises

6. ............ did you get up ? - At 6 : 30.
   a. Why b. Where c. How d. When
7. ............ did you buy a new bike ? - To go to school by it.
   a. When b. Why c. Where d. How
8. What ............ you eat for dinner last night ?
   a. do b. does c. doing d. did
9. ............ did you go on your last vacation ? - Alexandria.
   a. Which b. Where c. Whose d. Who
10. How did your uncle ............ to Paris ?
   a. travel b. travels c. traveled d. traveling
11. Why ............ you leave your job ? - Because it was tiring.
   a. were b. did c. have d. do

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB Exercises

1. SB Why did you ............ (**stayed**) there for so long ?
2. SB How did you ............ (**found**) the restaurant manager's email address ?
3. SB What did you ............ (**orders**) for dessert ?
4. SB ............ (**Where**) did you eat at a restaurant ? - Last Friday.

El-Moasser Exercises

5. What did you ............ (**planning**) for your holiday ?
6. ............ (**How**) did you go to the restaurant with ? - Adam.
7. How ............ (**was**) you make these tasty cookies ? - I used fresh ingredients.
8. Which restaurant ............ (**do**) you ............ (**visiting**) last Friday ?
9. ............ (**Why**) did you go to the bank ? - By bus.

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 1 & 2

Understand Apply Create

### 1 Complete the following dialog :

**Amany and Bassant are talking about traditional food.**

**Amany** : What do you think about traditional food ?

**Bassant** : (1) .................................................... . What about you ?

**Amany** : It is really delicious ! (2) .................................................... ?

**Bassant** : My favorite traditional food is hawawshi.

**Amany** : What are the main ingredients of it ?

**Bassant** : Bread, meat, vegetables and spices.

**Amany** : (3) .................................................... ?

**Bassant** : We bake it in the oven.

**Amany** : How long do you bake it in the oven ?

**Bassant** : (4) .................................................... . Don't leave it more than 30 minutes.

### 2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

us - wasn't - starters - When - course

Last week, we had a very bad experience in a restaurant. It took a long time for our starters to arrive. We kept saying to each other: "(1) .................. did we order our food ?I think it was 40 minutes ago!" I ordered a special salad which must be quick and easy to make. After 50 minutes, the waiter brought our starters to (2) .................. . The starters tasted delicious, but then our main courses came about one minute after we finished eating the (3) ..................! We didn't like that at all. We all ordered sayadieh el samak as our main (4) .................. . When it arrived, there weren't any tomatoes on our plates.

### 3 Read the following , then answer the questions :

I'm Helmy. My family and I had lunch at a restaurant yesterday. It was near the park. Unfortunately, we didn't enjoy our meal there. The waiters weren't friendly or helpful, and it took too long to get our order. Moreover, the food didn't taste good. They didn't use fresh ingredients. We were really upset and didn't want to finish our meal. I don't think we like to go there again.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Helmy went to the restaurant .......... .
   a. last week b. tomorrow c. yesterday d. in summer

2. The opposite of the underlined word "**upset**" is "............" .
   a. worried b. happy c. expensive d. fresh
3. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to the ............ .
   a. order b. meal c. lunch d. restaurant

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Why didn't the food taste good ?

   ..............................................................................................................

5. How were the waiters at the restaurant ?

   ..............................................................................................................

6. Where was the restaurant ?

   ..............................................................................................................

## 4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Basbousa is my favorite ............ .
   a. main course b. soup c. starter d. dessert
2. Rice, pasta and lentils are the main ............ of koshari.
   a. ingredients b. steps c. devices d. information
3. ............ the cake in the oven for 35 minutes.
   a. Fry b. Bake c. Boil d. Taste
4. The waiter gives you the ............ to order food.
   a. post b. story c. menu d. list
5. SB ............ is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it.
   a. Baklawa b. Salad c. Hawawshi d. Om Ali
6. We ............ some eggs in hot water and have them for breakfast.
   a. fry b. boil c. bake d. dry
7. How did you............ your birthday ?
   a. celebrate b. celebrating c. celebrated d. celebrates
8. Where ............ you meet your grandpa yesterday ?
   a. will b. was c. did d. can
9. Who did you ............ this email to ?
   a. send b. sent c. sends d. sending
10. We ............ pizza for dinner from the nearest restaurant.
   a. changed b. cooked c. celebrated d. ordered

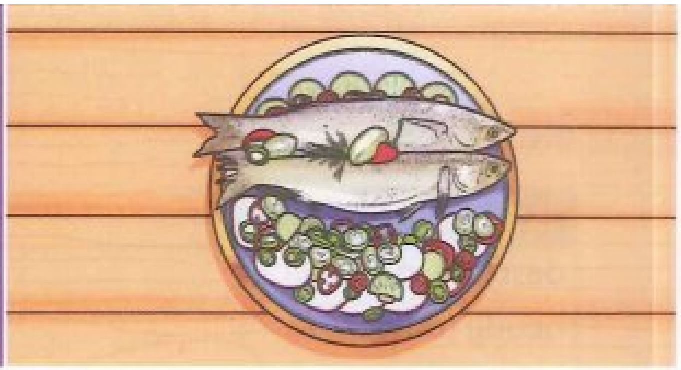
## 5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ............ (**Where**) did you visit the museum ? - Last Sunday.
2. What ............ (**do**) you buy from the market yesterday ?
3. ............ (**Which**) did you go to your work yesterday ? - By car.
4. ............ (**Who**) did you do last summer holiday ? - I read many short stories.

Lessons **3 & 4**

- A new recipe
- Celebration food

SB pages 72 : 75



## I Vocabulary

### Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| research (n) | بحث | Barramundi (n) | سمك البارموندى |
| task (n) | مهمة | | (أكلة من السمك النهرى تقدم مع الطماطم والبطاطس) |
| recipe (n) | وصفة طهى | large - scaled | كبيرة الحجم |
| river fish (n) | سمك نهرى | grilled (adj) | مشوى |
| native Australian language | اللغة الاسترالية الأصلية | festival (n) | احتفال |
| decorate (d) (v) | يزين | roll (ed) (v) | يلف |
| New Year | رأس السنة | cylinder shape | شكل اسطوانى |
| branch (n) | فرع | recipe (n) | وصفة طهى |

### Festival dishes

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| longevity noodles | أكلة صينية (تأكل فى رأس السنة) | ybeg wot | أكلة أثيوبية من اللحم الضأن (تقدم أثناء العطلة الموسمية) |
| The Bûche de Noël | كيك فرنسى (على شكل اسطوانى يأكل في الكريسماس) | injera | خبز أثيوبى (يقدم مع اللحم) |
| qatayef | قطائف (حلوى مصرية تأكل أثناء شهر رمضان) | Christmas pudding | حلوى الكريسماس (تقدم فى بريطانيا بالفاكهة المجففة والسكر) |
| kebab | كباب (لحم مشوى) | | |

**Pop Quiz** تدريب تلقائى بهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

grilled – river – recipe – festivals – chocolate cake

1. I found an easy .................. for making qatayef.
2. Don't eat too much ................. . It's unhealthy.
3. We eat special food in the ................ .
4. I like to eat ................. chicken with salad.

## Lesson 3

SB pages 72 & 73

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| describe (d) (v) | يصف | Australia | دولة استراليا |
| nearly (adv) | تقريبًا | famous (adj) | مشهور |
| project (n) | مشروع | select (ed) (v) | يختار |
| complete (d) (v) | يكمل | recipe card (n) | بطاقة وصفة |
| opportunity (n) | فرصة | highlight (ed) (v) | يوضح - يبرز |
| website (n) | موقع إلكترونى | organize (d) (v) | يرتب - ينظم |
| pick (ed) (v) | يختار | boiled (adj) | مسلوق |

## Lesson 4

SB pages 74 & 75

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| pudding | نوع من الحلوى - طبق تحلية | during (prep) | أثناء - خلال |
| pour (ed) (v) | يصب - يسكب | syrup (n) | شراب من (السكر) |
| coin (n) | عملة معدنية | noodles (n) | شعرية (نوع من المعكرونة) |
| dried fruit | فاكهة مجففة | pancakes (n) | فطائر |
| spices (n) | بهارات | sauce (n) | صلصة |
| nuts | مكسرات | lamb (n) | لحم ضأن |
| fry (ied) (v) | يقلى | | |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| come | يأتى | came | come |
| think | يعتقد | thought | thought |
| eat | يأكل | ate | eaten |
| put | يضع | put | put |

## Vocabulary Study

### ▸ Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| famous | مشهور | well-known / popular | unknown | غير معروف |
| interesting | شيق / ممتع | attractive / exciting | boring | ممل |

## Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
|---|---|---|
| –y | تحول الاسم أو الفعل إلى صفة | tasty لذيذ |
| –ly | تحول الصفة إلى ظرف | nearly تقريبا<br>finally في النهاية |
| –ent | تحول الفعل إلى صفة | different مختلف |
| –ian | تكون الجنسية من اسم البلد | Egyptian مصرى |

## Exercise on Vocabulary Study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The word "................" is the opposite of "unknown".
   a. nasty b. famous c. expensive d. delicious
2. The synonym of the word "interesting" is "................" .
   a. boring b. terrible c. delicious d. exciting
3. We add the suffix "................" to form the adverb from the adjective "final".
   a. -ness b. -ing c. -ly d. -ment

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 ingredients – recipe

* ingredients (n) مكونات ومقادير طبق معين من الطعام
  - I bought all the **ingredients** for the cake.
* recipe (n) وصفة أو تعليمات خاصة بإعداد نوع معين من الطعام
  - There are a lot of **recipes** in my grandma's cookbook.

*Reading on lesson 3 SB page 72*

### 2 sweet (n) , (adj) حلوى - حلو المذاق

- – Children like eating **sweets**. حلوى
- – Qatayef are a type of **sweet** pancake filled with nuts. حلو المذاق

*Reading on lesson 4 SB page 75*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions | التعبيرات | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| easy to cook | سهلة الطهى | get its name from ... | يستمد / يكتسب اسمه من ... |
| it looks tasty | تبدو لذيذة | | |
| a research task | مهمة البحث | large - scaled river fish | أسماك نهرية بحرية كبيرة الحجم |
| make notes | يدون ملاحظات | | |
| check the information | يتحقق من المعلومات | good luck | حظ سعيد |
| go on the internet | يستخدم بالانترنت | seem like | يبدو مثل... |
| roll something into | يلف ..... على شكل | do research | يقوم ببحث |
| **Prepositions** | **حروف الجر** | | |
| serve with | يقدم (طعام) مع | decide on | يحدد / يختار |
| come from | يأتي من | filled with | ممتلئ بـ |
| search for = look for | يبحث عن | ready to | مستعد لـ |
| cover .... in | يغطى .............. بـ | | |


Aweek is enough

مراجعة المنهج و التمكن منه

فى اسبوع واحد فقط

EL-MOASSER




# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 3 SB page 72

### Researching a recipe

1. Barramundi is a **tasty**[1] dish.
2. It's a river fish from Australia.
3. Its name is from a **native Australian language**[2] and means "large-scaled **river fish**[3]".
4. People usually eat Barramundi with tomatoes and potatoes.
5. To research a **recipe**[4],

* Decide on a country.
* You can go on the internet and do research for famous dishes.
* **Make notes**[5] about the recipe, then select the information from them.
* Finally, write your **recipe card**[6].

## Lesson 4 SB page 75

### Celebration food

1. In China, at New Year, they have **special**[7] **noodles**[8] which are very, very long that is called longevity noodles.
2. In France, The "Bûche de Noël" is a traditional cake they bake at **Christmas**[9].
3. They roll the cake into cylinder shape, then cover it in chocolate.
4. In Ethiopia, the favorite celebration dish is called "yebeg wot". It's a delicious meat dish that they cook during the vacation season.
5. In Britain, they have Christmas pudding. It's a dessert with lots of dried fruit, sugar and spices in it.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| (1) شهي | (2) اللغة الاسترالية الأصلية | (3) سمك نهري |
| (4) وصفة طعام | (5) يدون ملاحظات | (6) بطاقة وصفية |
| (7) مميز | (8) شعرية | (9) احتفالات رأس السنة |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Research a popular recipe
* Celebration food all over the world

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٣ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

### Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 72

#### Research a recipe

**Mom** : What are you doing, Farah?

**Farah** : A research task for school.

**Mom** : That's an interesting picture. What is it ?

**Farah** : It's called Barramundi. It's a **river fish** [1] from Australia.

**Mom** : Where does the name come from?

**Farah** : It's from a **native Australian language** [2] and means "**large-scaled river fish** [3]".

**Mom** : So, the name describes what it is.

**Farah** : Yes, and you can eat it in nearly every restaurant in the country. People usually eat it with tomatoes and potatoes.

**Mom** : How did you do your research?

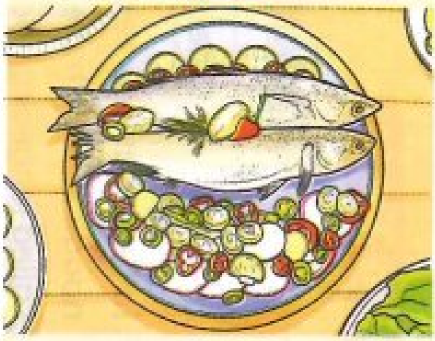
**Farah** : First, I decided on a **country** [4]

**Mom** : And you **picked** [5] Australia .

**Farah** : Yes, I didn't know anything about Australian food so I thought it would be interesting. Once I'd decided on the country, I went on the internet and did a search for **famous** [6] dishes. I looked at a few different websites so that I could check the information. I then looked at the questions from the project and tried to find the answers. The next thing I did was make notes. Then, I **selected** [7] the information from my notes that I wanted to **include** [8] in my project. Finally , I wrote the recipe card. Do you want to see it?

**Mom** : Yes, please!

Recipe



**Name of the dish :**
Barramundi

**Origin of name :**
Australian

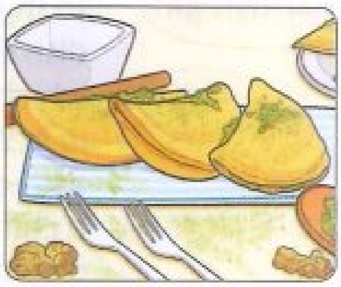
**Ingredients :**
Fish, tomatoes

**How is it cooked?**
Grilled

(1) سمك نهرى | (2) اللغة الأسترالية الأصلية | (3) أسماك نهرية ذات قشور كبيرة | (4) دولة | (5) يختار | (6) مشهور | (7) اختار | (8) يتضمن

on Lesson 4 SB page 75

During the month of Ramadan in Egypt, Egyptians often eat a **special**[1] **dessert**[2] called qatayef with their families. Qatayef are a type of sweet pancake **filled with**[3] nuts, or sometimes chocolate, which are then put into oil and fried. Once the qatayef are **ready**[4] to eat and on the table, people pour syrup made from sugar over them. I like to make qatayef at home; they taste much better than the ones you buy from shops.



(1) مميز | (2) حلوى | (3) ملىء بـ | (4) جاهز

## Listening

on Lesson 4 SB page 74

### Celebration food

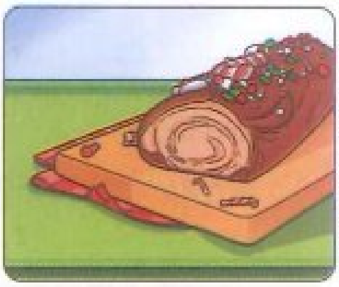
**Narrator** : 1

**Chinese boy** : At New Year in my country, we have a very big **festival**[1]. At this time of year, we always cook special **noodles**[2] which are very, very long. In Chinese, this dish is called "longevity noodles". It's a dish that we **believe**[3] can help you to live a very long life! We say if you eat very long noodles at New Year, your life will be very long in the future!



**Narrator** : 2

**French girl** : The Bûche de Noël is a traditional cake that we bake for **Chirstmas**[4] in my country. We **roll**[5] the cake into a **cylinder shape**[6], then cover it in chocolate. We also often **decorate**[7] it with sweets which look like leaves, or we put sugar on the cake to look like snow, so the cake seems like the **branch of a tree**[8] in winter !



**Narrator** : 3

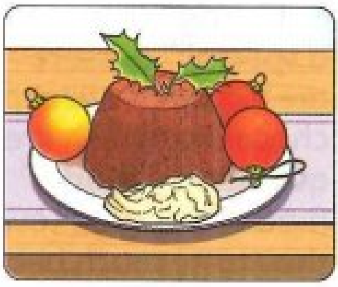
**Ethiopian boy** : My favorite celebration dish is called yebeg wot. It's a delicious meat dish that we cook during the vacation season. We make it with **lamb**[9], onions, tomatoes, garlic, butter, and special spices. In my family, my grandma is the person who usually cooks the yebeg wot. She also bakes a type of bread called injera, Which she serves next to it.



(1) احتفال | (2) شعرية | (3) يصدق - يؤمن | (4) احتفالات رأس السنة | (5) يلف | (6) شكل اسطواني | (7) يزين | (8) فرع شجرة | (9) لحم ضأن

**Narrator** : 4

**British girl** : In my country, there's a popular celebration dish called Christmas pudding. It's a dessert which has lots of **dried fruit**[10], sugar, and spices in it. We boil it for a long time, then serve it hot with a sweet sauce. Sometimes you can find a coin in your Christmas Pudding! People bake a coin into the pudding and the person who finds it will have good luck !



(10) فاكهة مجففة

## 2. Skills

المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات [ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية]

### Using research to learn :

**1 Learn**

**Research can help you complete a task, but it is also a good opportunity to learn new things.**

القيام بالبحث يساعدك فى إنهاء مهمة ما ، ولكن أيضًا هو فرصة جيدة لتعلم أشياء جديدة .

**When you do research ........** عندما تقوم بالبحث ........................

- Highlight, underline, or circle the most important information .
  قم بوضع خط أو دائرة حول أهم المعلومات.
  - to help you remember it or refer to it in the future.
    هذه المعلومات تساعدك على تذكرها أو الرجوع إليها فى المستقبل.
- make notes on the information you find.
  قم بتدوين الملاحظات للمعلومات التى وجدتها.
  - organize these notes clearly.
    قم بتنظيم ما دونته بوضوح.

**2 Practice**

**Research an Egyptian recipe and make a recipe card.**

My favorite Egyptian food is ............................................................ .
It's sometimes grilled / boiled / fried or ............................................................ .
I eat it in / at ............................................................ .
I eat it with ............................................................ .

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

### Key vocabulary

1. ............ food is healthier than fried food !
   a. Salty b. Sweet c. Grilled d. Fast
2. A ............ gives us instructions on how to make a meal.
   a. spice b. festival c. recipe d. fridge
3. This restaurant makes ............ dishes. We always have lunch here.
   a. tasty b. terrible c. ugly d. bad
4. During Ramadan, Egyptians like to eat many kinds of desserts like ............ .
   a. tomatoes b. potatoes c. qatayef d. chicken

**SB Exercises**

5. SB She looked at a few different ............ to check information online.
   a. kitchens b. websites c. schools d. parks
6. SB Christmas pudding is a dessert with ............ fruit, sugar and spices.
   a. dried b. wet c. bad d. salty
7. SB People ............ syrup made from sugar over qatayef.
   a. decorate b. dry c. chop d. pour

**El-Moasser Exercises**

8. I like to ............ fish in oil.
   a. bake b. boil c. fry d. chop
9. ............ is sweet juice made of sugar.
   a. Syrup b. Cheese c. Meat d. Cake
10. ............ is a river fish from Australia.
   a. Zege b. Maakouda c. Barramundi d. Hawawshi
11. At New Year, the Chinese eat long ............ called longevity noodles for long life.
   a. chocolate b. noodles c. tomatoes d. nuts

### Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

12. ............ rice and salad.
   a. in b. of c. with d. for
13. Qatayef are a sweet pancake ............ with nuts.
   a. filled b. failed c. cut d. felt
14. A : Are you ready ............ order , sir ? B : Sure . I want fries , please.
   a. in b. to c. of d. at

## 3. Speaking مهارة التحدث

### 1. Talking about dishes from another country : الحديث عن طبق / صنف من دولة أخرى :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| 1. Which dishes are popular outside Egypt ?<br>أي الأطباق / الأصناف محبوبة خارج مصر ؟ | Kebabs are very famous.<br>الكباب مشهور جدًا. |
| 2. Why do you think people like kebabs ?<br>لماذا تعتقد أن الناس يحبون الكباب ؟ | Because they're tasty and easy to cook .<br>لأنه لذيذ وسهل الطهى. |

### 2. Talking about researching a recipe : التحدث عن بحث عن وصفة طعام :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| 1. What's your research about ?<br>- عن ماذا يدور بحثك ؟ | - It's about a recipe called "Barramundi".<br>- إنه عن وصفة طعام تسمى "باراموندى". |
| 2. How do you do your research ?<br>- كيف تقوم بعمل بحثك ؟ | - First, I went online to find information and then I made notes to include in my research.<br>- فى البداية بحثت عن معلومات عبر الانترنت ثم قمت بتدوين بعض الملاحظات لكى اضمها الى بحثى. |

### 3. Talking about celebration foods : التحدث عن طعام الاحتفالات :

| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| 1. What special days do you celebrate each year in your family ?<br>ما المناسبات المميزة التى تحتفل بها مع عائلتك كل عام ؟ | We celebrate Sham El-Nessim and New Year together.<br>نحتفل بشم النسيم ورأس السنة معًا. |
| 2. Who cooks it for you ?<br>من يعد هذا الطعام لكم ؟ | My grandma usually does that for us.<br>عادة ما تقوم جدتى بهذا لنا. |
| 3. What food do you eat on special days ?<br>- ما الطعام الذى تتناوله فى أيام الاحتفالات ؟ | - During the month of Ramadan, we eat a dessert called qatayef.<br>- أثناء شهر رمضان، نأكل حلوى تسمى (قطايف). |
| 4. What kind of food do you eat at the New Year ?<br>- ما نوع الطعام الذى تتناوله فى احتفال رأس السنة ؟ | - At this time of year, we always cook special noodles which are very, very long.<br>- فى ذلك الوقت من العام، دائمًا نطهو نوع مميز من الشعرية والتى تكون شديدة الطول. |

# III Language

## Adverbials of time and place ظروف الزمان والمكان

▶ **Adverbials of time and place are short phrases that we use to say when something happens or where someone or something is.**

◀ ظروف الزمان والمكان هى عبارات قصيرة نستخدمها لنذكر متى يحدث شئ ما [توقيته] أو أين يوجد شخص أو شئ [مكانه].

### 1 Adverbials of time ظروف الزمان

▶ **We use adverbials of time to say when something happens.**

◀ نستخدم ظروف الزمان لنذكر وقت حدوث الشئ.

**Examples :**

| | |
|---|---|
| - at this time of year | فى هذا الوقت من السنة |
| - at New Year | فى رأس السنة |
| - during the vacation season | أثناء موسم الاجازات |
| - for a long time | لمدة طويلة |

**ex.** - At this time of year, we always eat fesikh.

---

### 2 Adverbials of place ظروف المكان

▶ **We use adverbials of place to say where someone or something is.**

◀ نستخدم ظروف المكان لنذكر مكان شخص أو شئ.

**Examples :**

| | |
|---|---|
| - into the pudding | فى حلوى البودينج |
| - next to it | بجانب هذا |
| - on the cake | على الكعكة |
| - on the table | على المائدة |
| - at home | فى المنزل |
| - into oil | فى الزيت |

**ex.** - People put candles on the cake.

**Note**

▶ We can put adverbials of time and place at the start or the end of a sentence.

- يمكننا وضع ظروف الزمان والمكان فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة.

## Exercises on Language

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**SB Exercises**

1. SB ............ the month of Ramadan in Egypt, Egyptians eat qatayef.
   a. During  b. On  c. Every  d. At
2. SB ............ this time of year, we always cook special noodles.
   a. On  b. At  c. In  d. Of
3. SB People bake a coin ............ the pudding.
   a. during  b. of  c. into  d. at
4. SB Qatayef are put ............ oil and fried.
   a. for  b. at  c. onto  d. into

**El-Moasser Exercises**

5. I didn't see you ............ a long time. Are you okay ?
   a. of  b. for  c. at  d. on
6. Hatem's bike is ............ to my motorbike.
   a. during  b. on  c. next  d. of
7. I put the new vase ............ the table.
   a. on  b. of  c. at  d. into
8. Why are you still ............ home ? We're waiting you.
   a. of  b. at  c. during  d. next
9. Can I add some nuts ............ the pudding, mom ?
   a. to  b. of  c. up  d. out
10. He has twelve candles ............ the cake.
    a. during  b. on  c. in  d. off

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

**SB Exercises**

1. SB I like to make the qatayef ............ (**in**) home.
2. SB I like to make qatayef ............ (**over**) home.

**El-Moasser Exercises**

3. We'll be in Aswan ............ (**on**) this time of the next year.
4. What do you do ............ (**on**) New Year ?
5. The children are ............ (**on**) home.
6. There are a lot of food ............ (**from**) the table.
7. My mother put potatoes ............ (**from**) oil to fry.
8. She left her notebook ............ (**in**) the shelf.
9. We waited ............ (**at**) a long time before the bus arrived.
10. The restaurant is next ............ (**of**) the bank.

# General Exercises

## On Lesson 3 & 4

Understand Apply Create

## 1 Complete the following dialog :

**Maha and Mariam are talking about their favorite celebration food.**

**Maha** : Do you have a special food for celebrations in Egypt ?

**Mariam :** (1) ................................................................................ .

**Maha** : Can you give me an example ?

**Mariam :** Sure. (2) ................................................................................ .

**Maha** : (3) ................................................................................ ?

**Mariam :** Qatayef are a type of sweet pancake filled with nuts.

**Maha** : How do you cook it ?

**Mariam :** (4) ................................................................................ .

**Maha** : Fried ! (5) ................................................................................ ?

**Mariam :** We usually eat qatayef during Ramadan.

## 2 Read the following , then answer the questions :

It's interesting to make a recipe card. Last week , I had a research task for school. I decided on a country . I picked Australia . I didn't know anything about Australian food so I thought it would be interesting . Once I'd decided on the country , I went on the internet and did a research for famous dishes. I looked at a few different websites so that I could check the information . Then, I looked at the questions from the project and tried to find the answers. The next thing I did was making notes. Then, I selected the information from them that I wanted to include in my project. Finally, I wrote the recipe card.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The underlined word famous is the opposite of .............. .
   a. well-known b. unknown c. popular d. common
2. The recipe was from .............. .
   a. Egypt b. Italy c. Paris d. Australia
3. What does the underlined pronoun them refer to ?
   a. recipes b. notes c. countries d. cards

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

   ................................................................................

5. How did the writer get information?

   ................................................................................

6. Do you think it is important to do research?

   ................................................................................

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This is the meal that we serve ............ New Year.
   a. next b. at c. with d. of
2. Can you put these plates ............ the table ?
   a. on b. of c. during d. at
3. We volunteer in a charity nearby ............ our summer vacation.
   a. of b. during c. at d. off
4. Mom has a special ............ to make ice cream .
   a. culture b. recipe c. fire d. subjects
5. This bottle is ............ with lemon juice.
   a. filled b. chopped c. boiled d. fried
6. At festivals, we eat ............ foods to celebrate.
   a. salty b. terrible c. special d. hot
7. I put some ............ on the top of basbousa.
   a. spices b. bread c. salt d. nuts
8. A : What are the main ............ of salad ? B : Tomatoes, cucumbers and onions.
   a. project b. ingredients c. tasks d. festivals
9. Wow ! This dish looks ............ . I like it .
   a. nasty b. tasty c. ugly d. horrible
10. I help my mom ............ the kitchen every day.
    a. on b. during c. in d. next

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He played football ............ (on) a long time.
2. Muslims fast ............ (at) the month of Ramadan.
3. They built their house next ............ (on) the Nile.
4. When it's windy, we stay ............ (for) home.

## 5 Write an email of about SEVENTY (70) words :

مجاب عنه فى نهاية الكتاب

**"To your friend Kamal to tell him about your favorite celebration food. Your name is Assem and your email address is assem16@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is kamalamir@gmail.com".**

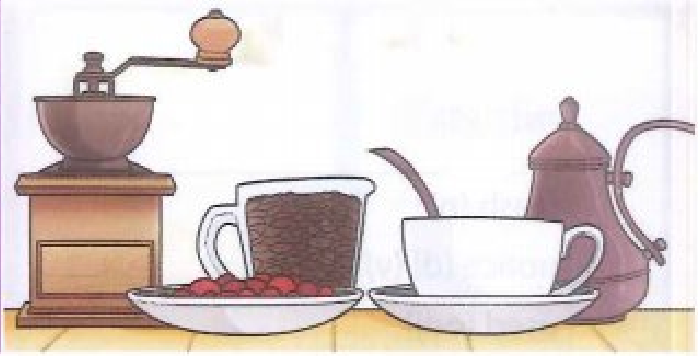
| From | |
|---|---|
| To | |
| Subject | |

............................................... ,
...............................................................................................................................
...............................................................................................................................
...............................................

Lessons **5 & 6**

- Literature
- Writing

SB pages 76 - 79



# I Vocabulary

## Key Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| plastic straw | أنبوب بلاستيكى لشرب السوائل | container (n) | حاوية / وعاء |
| bloom (n) | تفتح الزهور - فترة إزهار | compost (n) | سماد عضوى (للأراضى الزراعية) |
| coffee grounds | بقايا القهوة (تفل) | herbs (n) | أعشاب |
| waste (n) | نفايا - فضلات | recycled (adj) | مُعاد تدويره |
| local park (n) | حديقة محلية | ceiling (n) | سقف (داخلى) |
| crispy (adj) | مقرمش | café (n) | مقهى |
| salty (adj) | مالح | soft (adj) | أملس / ناعم |
| paper (n) | ورق | creamy (adj) | دسم / قشدى |

## Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

- **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

compost - coffee - creamy - herbs - crispy

1. Fries are very .................. snack.
2. Mom always uses some .................. to give flavor to her dishes.
3. Farmers use .................. to help them grow plants well.
4. I love the taste of .................. cheese.

## Lesson 5 SB pages 76 & 77

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| excited (adj) | متحمس | paint (ed) (v) | يدهن - يطلى |
| roof (n) | سطح (خارجى) | beans (n) | حبوب |
| leftover (adj) | باقٍ / مُتبَقٍّ | bright (adj) | ساطع / لامع |
| fresh (adj) | طازج | act (n) | فعل / عمل |
| coffee cup (n) | كوب من القهوة | bin (n) | سلة مهملات |

| trash (n) | قمامة | closely (adv) | بعناية / بانتباه / عن كثب |
|---|---|---|---|
| notice (d) (v) | يلاحظ | nearby (adj) | قريب |
| used (adj) | مُستخدَم | tube (n) | أنبوبة |
| reusable (adj) | قابل لإعادة الاستخدام | | |

## Lesson 6

SB pages 78 & 79

| strawberries (n) | ثمار الفراولة | taste (n) | طعم - مذاق |
|---|---|---|---|
| perfect (adj) | مثالى | cheesecake (n) | كعكة الجبن |
| olive oil (n) | زيت زيتون | bun (n) | كعكة / خُبز صغير |
| smell (n) | رائحة | definitely (adv) | بالتأكيد |

## Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

| Present المضارع | | Past الماضى | P.P. التصريف الثالث |
|---|---|---|---|
| bring | يحضر | brought | brought |
| hurt | يؤذى - يضر | hurt | hurt |
| hang | يُعلّق | hung | hung |
| light | يضئ | lit | lit |
| pay | يدفع | paid | paid |

## Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **compost** | old plant material used to grow new plants | سماد عضوى |
| **coffee grounds** | the leftover part of coffee beans | بقايا القهوة (تفل) |
| **recycled** | used again in a different way | مُعاد تدويره |
| **straw** | a thin paper or plastic tube you drink through | ماصة |
| **waste** | something not wanted or no longer used | نفايا - فضلات |

## Vocabulary Study

### Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

| Word الكلمة | | Synonym المرادف | Antonym /Opposite المضاد | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| nearby | قريب | near | far / remote | بعيد - ناء |

### Prefixes & Suffixes
مقاطع بادئة وناهية

| Prefix / Suffix بادئة / ناهية | Function الوظيفة | Examples أمثلة |
| --- | --- | --- |
| –ed | لتحويل الفعل لصفة | used مُستخدم |
| –ence | لتحويل الفعل لإسم | difference اختلاف |
| –y | تحول الاسم لصفة | creamy دسم / salty مالح / crispy مقرمش |

## Exercise on Vocabulary study

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. We add the suffix "-y" to the noun "cream" to get a / an ............ .
   a. adverb b. adjective c. verb d. noun
2. To get the adjective from the word "use", we add the suffix "............".
   a. –or b. –ly c. –ed d. –ness
3. My house is near my school. The word "near" is the antonym of "............".
   a. close b. nearby c. far d. next
4. To get the noun of the verb "differ", we add the suffix "............".
   a. –ence b. –ing c. –ed d. –or

## General Notes on Reading & Listening

### 1 café – coffee

* café (n) مقهى / كافتريا (مكان)
  - SB Most of this trash comes from a nearby **café**.
* coffee (n) قهوة (مشروب)
  - I like having **coffee** with milk in the morning.

*Reading on lesson 5 SB page 76*

### 2 almost – most

* almost (adv) تقريبًا
  - SB Why don't we set up a café that makes **almost** no waste ?
* most (adj) معظم
  - **Most** students come to school early.

*Reading on lesson 5 SB page 76*

**3 surf – serve**

* **surf (the internet)** يتصفح الإنترنت
  - I **surfed** the internet to know some news.
* **serve** يقدم (طعام وشراب)
  - They **serve** delicious burgers in this café.

*Reading on lesson 5 SB page 76*

**4 roof - ceiling**

* **roof (n)** السقف الخارجى لمبنى
  - Some of the ingredients grew on the **roof** of the café.
* **ceiling** السقف الداخلى (تراه داخل المبنى)
  - They hung lots of plants from the **ceiling**.

*SB page 70*

## Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

| Expressions التعبيرات | | Prepositions حروف الجر | |
|---|---|---|---|
| put in | يركب (شىء) | on the ground | على الأرض |
| every little act helps | أى عمل قليل يساعد ! / أى فعل سيفيد | set up | يقيم / يؤسس |
| | | in return | مقابل ذلك |
| environmentally friendly | صديق للبيئة | pay less for ...... | يدفع قيمة أقل لـ ....... |
| look more closely | ينظر عن قرب أكثر | pick up | يلتقط |
| all the way home | طوال الطريق إلى المنزل | light up | يضئ / ينير |
| a few weeks later | بعد بضعة أسابيع | walk through | يسير عبر |
| make no waste | لا ينتج عنه فضلات | instead of | بدلًا من |
| has got to be | يجب أن يكون | on the roof of | على سطح |
| top three favorite dishes | اكثر ثلاثة أطباق مفضلة | at first | فى البداية |
| a bit unhealthy | غير صحية بعض الشىء | good for | جيد لـ |
| Yum ! | لذيذ ! | in a different way | بطريقة مختلفة |

# Main points on Reading & Listening Texts

## Lesson 5 SB page 76

### The living café

1. Magdy and Sami saw some **trash**[1] on the ground.
2. There were used cups, plastic straws, and old food containers in the local park.
3. Most of the trash came from a nearby café.
4. Magdy suggested they **set up**[2] a café that makes almost no **waste**[3].
5. Magdy suggested using paper straws.
6. Sami suggested they reuse coffee grounds as a compost to grow food.
7. Magdy and Sami opened a new café called The Living Café.
8. People liked the café and the way they could help save the planet.

## Lesson 6 SB page 78

### Shaden's email to Emma

1. Shaden is telling Emma about her favorite food.
2. Shaden likes different types of food.
3. She has top three favorite dishes.
4. She likes burger and fries.
5. She always eats grilled burger at home.
6. She likes salad with cucumber, onion, and cheese.
7. She puts lots of olive oil on her salad.
8. Her favorite **dessert**[4] is strawberry cheesecake.

| | |
|---|---|
| (1) مخلفات | (2) يؤسس - ينشئ |
| (3) مخلفات - فضلات | (4) حلوى - تحلية |

تنويه : الجمل السابقة تساعدك على التعامل أو كتابة فقرات إنشائية أخرى:

* Recycling trash
* Your favorite food

# II Skills

## 1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على 11 من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

## Reading

• on Lesson 5 SB page 76

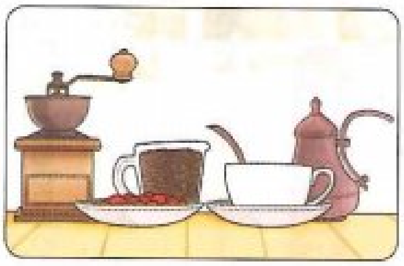
### The Living Café

**The beginning:**

"What's that ?" asked Magdy.

The two friends looked more closely at the trash on the ground.

"It's a coffee cup," said Sami. "And look, there's another over there."



Magdy and Sami were in their local park. It was a beautiful day and the flowers were in **bloom**[1], but everywhere they looked there were used cups, plastic straws, and old food **containers**[2].

"Most of this trash comes from a nearby café," said Magdy. "Why don't we set up a café that makes almost no **waste**[3] ?"

"No waste ? How is that possible ?"

**The middle:**

"Well, take this coffee cup. Next time the person who used it wants a coffee, they can bring their own cup to the café. In return, they pay less for their coffee."

"That's a good idea."

"And instead of plastic straws, our café can give paper **straws**[4] that don't hurt the environment."

Sami's eyes lit up. "There are ways to reuse waste, too. Think of all those coffee grounds - we can use them as **compost**[5] to grow food."

"Food that we serve in the café!"

The two friends were excited. They talked about their ideas all the way home.

Soon, Magdy and Sami bought an old building near the park. They cleaned it and painted it bright colors with environmentally friendly paint. They put in recycled glass windows and used old pieces of wood to make tables and chairs. They also hung lots of plants from the ceiling. On the **roof**[6], was a little garden for growing herbs, fruit, and vegetables.

(1) فترة إزهار | (2) حاويات | (3) نفايا | (4) ماصات | (5) سماد عضوى | (6) سطح

## The end:

A few weeks later, The Living Café opened. It was quiet at first, but then people started to notice it. They liked the way they could help save the planet with their morning coffee! More people came for lunch, and said the food tasted delicious and very fresh. They were excited to hear that some of the ingredients grew on the roof of the café. The Living Café quickly became the most popular café near the park.

One day, Magdy and Sami walked through the park again. This time, there weren't any used coffee cups on the ground. There were a few straws, but they were paper. Magdy picked one up and put it in the bin.

"Every little act helps!" he said, smiling.

**Choose the correct answer.**

- Extracting information. استخراج معلومات.

Learn 1. Magdy and Sami can make ............ straws instead of plastic ones.
a. paper b. metal c. wooden d. woolen

Practice 2. The old building they bought was ............ .
a. outside the town b. near the park c. in the school d. by the river

## The moral of the story

**Everyone can make a positive difference.**

on Lesson 6 SB page 78

New message

To: Emma

Subject: My favorite food

Hi Emma,

How are you? I enjoyed hearing about your new school. You asked me about my favorite food. Well, I love lots of different types of food, but these are my all-time top three favorite **dishes**[1]...

First, it's got to be burger and fries. Some restaurants fry their burgers, but I prefer mine **grilled**[2]. They're healthier that way, too. This is why I usually eat them at home. I like them with tomato and onion in the **bun**[3]. I know fries are a bit unhealthy, so I don't eat them often, but I do love them. They're so crispy and **salty**[4]. Delicious !

Another type of food that I really like is salad. It is healthy and good for you. Of course there are many different types of salad and you can make it in a hundred different ways, but I like to have mine with cucumber, onion, and cheese. I put lots of olive oil on it, too. I like it best with fresh bread as a cold lunch. I always make and eat my salads at home.

And finally, my favorite dessert is **definitely** [5] strawberry cheesecake. I know how to make it, but my mom's cheesecake is the best! I love the **taste** [6] and smell of the strawberries and the soft, creamy cheese is delicious. I love eating it on hot days. It's the perfect summer dessert. Yum!

What are your favorite dishes ?

Bye !

Shaden

Send

(1) أصناف طعام | (2) مشوى | (3) خبز صغير | (4) مالح | (5) حتمًا / بالتأكيد | (6) مذاق

## 2. Skills المهارات اللغوية

تنويه : لمزيد من المهارات (ملحق المعاصر للمهارات اللغوية)

### Identifying the elements of a story : التعرف على عناصر القصة

**Learn**

**The main idea of a story** الفكرة الرئيسية فى القصة.

- To identify it, think about the key problem that it presents and what happens to solve that problem.

- لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية للقصة، فكر في المشكلة الرئيسية التي تطرحها القصة وما يحدث لحل هذه المشكلة.

**The main events of a story** الاحداث الفكرة الرئيسية فى القصة.

- To identify the main events of a story, think about what happens at the beginning, in the middle, and at the end of it.

- لمعرفة الاحداث الرئيسية للقصة، فكر في ما يحدث في بداية، منتصف وفي نهاية القصة.

**The characters** الشخصيات. → are the people who act, think, and speak in the story. الأشخاص التى تمثل وتفكر وتتحدث فى القصة.

**The setting** مكان وزمان الحدث. → is where and when the story takes place. أين ومتى تحدث القصة.

## Exercise on Vocabulary

### Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

**Key vocabulary**

1. The vase is a ............ made of glass we use to decorate our homes.
   a. ceiling b. container c. window d. panel
2. A ............ is a small restaurant that serves drinks and meals.
   a. garage b. café c. post office d. bus stop
3. Children like ............ snacks like chips.
   a. sweet b. crispy c. creamy d. soft
4. Cats' fur is very ............ so people like to touch it.
   a. bright b. hard c. soft d. sharp
5. I don't like that meat. It is too ............ .
   a. delicious b. salty c. creamy d. tasty

**SB Exercises**

6. SB It was a beautiful day and the flowers were in ............ .
   a. cold b. bloom c. dark d. possible
7. SB They ............ lots of plants from the ceiling.
   a. hung b. acted c. grew d. invented
8. SB I love the ............ and smell of strawberries.
   a. guest b. rest c. taste d. test

**El-Moasser Exercises**

9. My favorite dessert is ............ .
   a. tomato b. cucumber c. burger d. chocolate cake
10. We like to eat burgers in a ............ with tomatoes and onion.
   a. pin b. bin c. bun d. pen
11. The school concert was ............ . Everyone enjoyed it.
   a. horrible b. terrible c. unhealthy d. perfect

**Definitions**

12. ............ is old plant material used to grow new plants.
   a. Mud b. Compost c. Soil d. Sand
13. Coffee ............ are the leftover part of coffee beans.
   a. pills b. seeds c. drinks d. grounds
14. ............ means used again in a different way.
   a. Soft b. Fresh c. Recycled d. Bright

### Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. He wants to set ............ a café that uses high-quality materials.
    a. up b. down c. off d. on
16. A lot of people usually watch football matches at ............ .
    a. coffees b. cafés c. stores d. bins

## 2. Writing مهارة الكتابة

### A How to summarize a story

• **To summarize a story, use these notes to help you.** لتلخيص القصة، استخدام تلك الملاحظات لتساعدك.

1. The main idea ١. الفكرة الرئيسية
2. The main events (beginning, middle, end) ٢. الأحداث الرئيسية [البداية، منتصف الأحداث، النهاية]
3. The characters ٣. الشخصيات
4. The setting ٤. مكان وزمان الحدث
5. Key words and phrases ٥. الكلمات والعبارات الافتتاحية

### B Using paragraphs

To make your writing easier to read and understand, divide it into paragraphs.
لتجعل الموضوع الإنشائى الذى تكتبه أسهل فى القراءة والفهم قم بتقسيمه إلى فقرات.

- Start each different point about the topic with a new paragraph.
  أبدأ كل فكرة مختلفة فى موضوعك بفقرة جديدة.
- You can use ordinal numbers (first, second, third) and sequencing words (First, Then, After that, Finally) to begin your paragraphs.
  استخدام أعداد ترتيبية وكلمات تسلسلية لتبدأ الفقرات الإنشائية.

**For example :**

- The first (dish I want to write about) is .............. . الأول [الطبق الذى أريد أن أكتب عنه] هو .............. .
- Another (type of food) is .............. . الآخر [نوع الطعام] هو .............. .
- And finally, (my favorite dessert) is .............. . وفى النهاية [الحلو المفضل بالنسبة لى] هو .............. .

## To write about your top favorite dishes.

لتكتب عن الأطعمة / الأكلات المفضلة لديك.

**A Use these notes :** استخدم تلك النقاط :

- the ingredients مكوناتها
- how often, where, and when you eat it كم مرة وأين، ومتى تأكلها
- how to make it كيف تصنعها
- why you like it لماذا تحبها

**B Use these useful phrases :** استخدم تلك التعبيرات المفيدة :

- They're so (crispy and salty). إنها ... (مقرمشة ومالحة).
- I like it with ... . أحبها مع ... .
- I love the taste of ... . أحب مذاق ... .
- The ... is delicious. إن ... لذيذة المذاق.

## Pop Quiz on writing

- **Write an email to a friend about your favorite dishes of 100 - 120 words. Your email is mohamed@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ali@yahoo.com.**

New message

From : ____________________

To : ____________________

Subject : ____________________

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

Send

# General Exercises

## On Lessons 5 & 6

Understand   Apply   Create

**1** Listen and complete :   استمع واكمل [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب]

1. Magdy and Sami are ............ .
2. They have a/an ............ idea.
3. The idea aims to save the ............ .
4. They want to make a ............ café which makes almost no waste.

**2** Complete the following dialog :

**Jomana asks Yasmine about her favorite dessert.**

**Jomana :** Hello, Yasmine! What's your favorite dessert ?

**Yasmine :** Hello, Jomana !(1) .................................................................... .

**Jomana :** (2) .................................................................... ?

**Yasmine :** I love strawberry cheesecake because of the smell and taste of strawberry.

**Jomana :** (3) .................................................................... ?

**Yasmine :** Yes, I know how to make it.

**Jomana :** Do you think it is healthy ?

**Yasmine :** (4) .................................................................... . It's perfect for summer.

**Jomana :** Let's make it today.

**3** Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. "............ " is something not wanted or no longer used.
   a. Soil   b. Syrup   c. Waste   d. Compost
2. Flowers are in ............ when spring comes.
   a. ground   b. bloom   c. dark   d. fear
3. When ............ you go to the Pyramids ?
   a. is   b. does   c. did   d. doing
4. SB There weren't any used coffee cups ............ the ground.
   a. during   b. every   c. on   d. for
5. How did you ............ your bag ?
   a. found   b. find   c. finds   d. to find

6. They hung a lightbulb from the ........... of the room.
   a. land b. ceiling c. floor d. ground
7. I like the smell of ..........., especially mint and rosemary.
   a. vegetables b. fruits c. herbs d. fish
8. " ........... " means used again in a different way.
   a. Healthy b. Active c. Smart d. Recycled
9. SB We can use coffee grounds as ........... to grow food.
   a. compost b. containers c. straw d. bin
10. Fries are ........... and salty.
   a. creamy b. crispy c. sweet d. hard

## 4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ............................. (**Where**) did she do ? – She cleaned her room.
2. ............................. (**What**) painted this beautiful picture ? – Sama.
3. We were ............................. (**on**) home when it rained.
4. They built a café next ............................. (**on**) the park.

## 5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

*"Your favorite dishes"*

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

.......................................................................................................................

# Review on unit 6

**قيم مستواك** يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

## Vocabulary

**Lessons 1 & 2**

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| healthy | صحى |
| unhealthy | غير صحى |
| chicken | دجاج |
| cakes | كيك |
| fries | بطاطس مقلية |
| spices | توابل |
| bread | خبز |
| snack | وجبة خفيفة |
| oven | فرن |
| boil | يغلى |
| fry | يقلى |
| main course | طبق رئيسى |
| dessert | حلوى / تحلية |
| café | مقهى |

**Lessons 3 & 4**

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| task | مهمة |
| recipe | وصفة طهى |
| grilled | مشوى |
| large-scaled | كبيرة الحجم |
| festival | إحتفال |
| tasty | لذيذ |
| New Year | رأس السنة |
| highlight | يبرز - يوضح |
| opportunity | فرصة |
| card | كارت |

**Lessons 5 & 6**

| English | Arabic |
|---|---|
| bloom | تفتح الأزهار |
| coffee | قهوة |
| coffee grounds | تفل القهوة |
| compost | سماد عضوى |
| ceiling | سقف |

## Language

**Wh-questions in the past simple.**
الأسئلة بكلمة استفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط

- When did we order our food ?
- Why did your cook put no tomatoes on our plates ?
- Where did you sit in the restaurant ?

**Adverbials of time and place**

- Adverbials of time. ظروف الزمان.
  - at this time of year
  - at New Year
  - during the vacation season
  - for a long time
- Adverbials of place. ظروف المكان.
  - into the pudding
  - next to it
  - on the cake
  - on the table
  - at home
  - into oil

## Speaking

**Talking about dishes from another country :**
الحديث عن طبق / صنف من دولة أخرى :

A: Which dishes are popular outside Egypt ?
B: Kebabs.

A: Why do you think people like kebabs ?
B: Because they're tasty and easy to cook .

**Talking about celebration foods :**
التحدث عن طعام الاحتفالات :

A: What special days do you celebrate each year in your family ?
B: We celebrate Sham El-Nessim, New Year together.

A: Do you eat special food on those days ? What is it ?
B: Yes, we do. We always cook special noodles which are very, very long.

A: Who cooks it for you ?
B: My grandma usually does that.

Skills

## 1 Reading Comprehension

### Extracting information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [استخراج معلومة من النص].

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Read and answer the questions :**

Most Egyptians know hawawshi. It is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it. Some people like to add cheese to it, too. You bake it in the oven and eat it warm. Delicious! You can also find it in some parts of the Middle East.

• What is hawawshi ?

.................................................................................... .

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استخراج معلومة.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تجد أن الإجابة مبنية على ما ورد فى القطعة.

## 2 Speaking

### Celebration food

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialog] قدراتك للتعبير عن مواقف معينة.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

**Complete the following dialog :**

**Hany and Ahmed are talking about celebration food.**

**Hany** : Hello, Ahmed. What special days do you celebrate each year in your family ?

**Ahmed**: (1) .................................................................... .

**Hany** : Do you eat special dessert in Ramadan ?

**Ahmed**: (2) .................................. . We usually eat qatayef.

**Hany** : (3) .................................................................... ?

**Ahmed**: Qatayef are a type of sweet pancake filled with nuts.

**Hany** : (4) .................................................................... ?

**Ahmed**: I like to make qatayef at home; they taste much better.

**Hany** : (5) .................................................................... .

التحدى تريد السؤال عن [طعام الاحتفالات] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود عن الموضوع.

# General Exercises on unit 6

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

• Understand • Apply • Create

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Maakouda are very popular .......................... .
   a. sea food b. snack c. drink d. traditional food
2. Maakouda are popular in .........................., Algeria and Tunisia.
   a. Oman b. Egypt c. Morocco d. Turkey
3. They make them with ..........................
   a. wheat b. dates c. onions d. potatoes
4. They boil them and make them into .......................... balls.
   a. big b. small c. hard d. heavy

## 2 Complete the following dialog :

**Nahla is asking Rahma about her visit to a new restaurant.**

**Rahma** : Where did you go yesterday ?
**Nahla** : (1) .......................................................................... .
**Rahma** : A new restaurant ! (2) .......................................................................... ?
**Nahla** : With my family.
**Rahma** : How did you go to the restaurant ?
**Nahla** : (3) .......................................................................... .
**Rahma** : (4) .......................................................................... ?
**Nahla** : We ate fish kebabs and salad .

## 3 Match the words to their definitions :

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. compost | ☐ a. a thin paper or plastic tube you drink through |
| 2. waste | ☐ b. used again in a different way |
| 3. straw | ☐ c. something not wanted or no longer used |
| 4. recycled | ☐ d. old plant material used to grow new plants. |
| | ☐ e. the leftover part of coffee beans |

## 4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

One day, Magdy and Sami had an idea to make a living café. It's an environmentally friendly café. Soon, Magdy and Sami bought an old building near the park. They cleaned it and painted it bright colors with environmentally friendly paint. They put in recycled glass windows and used old pieces of wood to make tables and chairs. They also hung lots of plants from the ceiling. On the roof, there was a little garden for growing herbs, fruit, and vegetables.

A few weeks later, The Living Café opened. It was **quiet** at first, but then people started to notice it. They liked the way they could help save the planet with their morning coffee! More people came for lunch, and said the food tasted delicious and very fresh. They were excited to hear that some of the ingredients grew on the roof of the café. The Living Café quickly became the most popular café near the park.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Where was The Living Café ?
   a. Near the park b. Near the river c. On the beach d. Behind the bank
2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to " the ............ ".
   a. garden b. park c. old building d. food
3. The opposite of the underlined word "**quiet**" is " ............ " .
   a. near b. noisy c. exciting d. safe

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

.............................................................................................................

5. Where was the little garden ?

.............................................................................................................

6. Why do you think people like the Living Café ?

.............................................................................................................

## 5 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Who ............ you visit last night ?
   a. have b. did c. does d. do
2. ............ did you go last vacation ? - To Aswan.
   a. What b. When c. Where d. Who
3. He lived in a village ............ a long time.
   a. at b. for c. on d. in

4. ............ some water to make a cup of tea.
   a. Bake  b. Peel  c. Boil  d. Slice
5. This ............ serves lunch and dinner in good prices.
   a. library  b. bank  c. restaurant  d. stadium
6. We can ............ hawawshi in the oven and eat it warm.
   a. dry  b. bake  c. fry  d. boil

## 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. ............ (**What**) did you go to the club ? - Last Tuesday.
2. We waited our friend ............ (**of**) a long time then we went home.
3. He spent his weekend ............ (**on**) home with his family.
4. What did you ............ (**ate**) at that restaurant ?

## 7 Read the text. Add punctuation marks :

my family and i ate at your restaurant last wednesday. the restaurant is clean and comfortable.

..........................................................................................

## 8 Write an email of about (60 - 80) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

***"To your friend Ashraf about traditional food. Your name is Waleed and your email address is waleed200@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ashrafali@yahoo.com."***

| From | |
|---|---|
| To | |
| Subject | |

............................................. ,
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
..........................................................................................
.............................................

# Review B

SB pages 80 : 83



## Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| water world | عالم المياه | spicy | حار - متبل |
| two thirds | ثلثى | transporting | نقل |
| solution | حل | packaging | تغليف |
| distance | مسافة | eat green | يتناول الأطعمة الصحية |
| mash | يهرس | population | السكان |

## Reading

SB page 80

### Water world

In some countries around the world, not having enough clean water is a big **problem** (1). In fact, almost two thirds of the world's population **face** (2) **water scarcity** (3) at some point during the year.

This means having to walk a long way to find clean, fresh water, or not having enough to drink, cook, and wash.

Not having enough water can have a bad **effect** (4) on people's **health** (5). Our bodies need a lot of water to stay healthy, but **dirty** (6) water can make us very ill.

People who need water to earn money also suffer when there isn't enough. For example, farmers need water to grow **crops** (7). Without it, they don't have enough crops to sell.

Some research shows that the problem of water scarcity is getting worse because of climate change. We must **act** (8) now to find a **solution** (9)!







(1) مشكلة (2) يواجه (3) ندرة المياه (4) تأثير (5) صحة (6) متسخ (7) محاصيل (8) يتصرف (9) حل

SB page 83

Every summer when I am in Alexandria, I go to the Moonlight Café. It's very **old**[1] - it's been there since the 1900s! It's next to the **park**[2], so I like to sit **outside**[3] and watch people coming and going.

(1) قديمة | (2) حديقة | (3) بالخارج

## Listening

SB page 81

### Eating green

**Hana** : What are you doing, Menna ?

**Menna** : I'm reading an article about ways to "eat green".

**Hana** : You mean ways to eat more green vegetables ?

**Menna** : Haha, no, not exactly. Eating green is about making food choices that don't **harm**[1] the **environment**[2].

**Hana** : Oh, I see.

**Menna** : Our food choices have a big **impact**[3] on the environment, you see. They can either increase, or help to reduce, climate change.

**Hana** : Can you give me an example ?

**Menna** : Sure, no problem. Choosing local **produce**[4] can make a big difference. If you buy food that is grown near to where you live, it doesn't need to travel long **distances**[5] to get to you.

**Hana** : That's true. I **guess**[6] driving or flying food around the world causes pollution.

**Menna** : Exactly. Secondly, try to buy food that has little or no **packaging**[7]. Or, check that the packaging is made from something like paper or cardboard. Plastic packaging is the worst !

**Hana** : OK, got it.

**Menna** : Another thing you can do is to only buy as much as you need. Throwing away lots of food is a huge waste.

**Hana** : That's all really good **advice**[8]. I will think more carefully about my food choices in future. Thanks, Menna !

(1) يضر | (2) البيئة | (3) تأثير | (4) المنتج | (5) مسافات | (6) يخمن | (7) تغليف / تعبئة | (8) نصيحة

## 1. October assessments

**1. Complete the following dialog :**

**Heba and Rahma are talking about a family party.**

Heba : How about going to the club tomorrow, Rahma ?

Rahma : Sorry, I can't.

Heba : (1) ........................................ ?

Rahma : Because we are getting ready for a family party.

Heba : (2) ........................................ ?

Rahma : It's a wedding party for my cousin Dina.

Heba : Who will you see in the wedding?

Rahma : (3) ........................................ .

Heba : When does the wedding reception start?

Rahma : (4) ........................................ .

Heba : Have a nice day, Rahma.

Rahma : (5) ........................................ .

**2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. My friends and I .................... **(be)** at the shopping mall yesterday.
2. The .................... **(chef)** recipe was delicious.
3. My mom is .................... **(cooked)** the dinner at the moment.
4. My mother asked .................... **(I)** to clean my room.

## 2. October assessments

**3. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. .................... dogs are so cute.
   a. Salma's b. Salma
   c. Salmas' d. Salma is
2. .................... means do something without being paid.
   a. Selling b. Volunteer
   c. Buying d. Asking
3. .................... is a written record of what you do.
   a. Journal b. Competition
   c. Building d. Local
4. Yesterday, I .................... my grandma in her garden.
   a. help b. helping
   c. helped d. helps
5. .................... did you play football with your friends ?
   – Twice a week.
   a. Who b. Where
   c. When d. How often
6. Tourists in Hurghada like buying souvenirs from .................... .
   a. receptions b. schools
   c. hospitals d. bazaars

**4. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

***"Summer vacation"***

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

## 1. November assessments

**1. Complete the following dialog :**

**Engy's mom is asking her about her science lesson.**

**Mom :** What was your science lesson today about ?

**Engy :** (1) ........................................................ .

**Mom :** How can we take care of our planet ?

**Engy :** Our teacher told us that there are some new inventions that can help us.

**Mom :** (2) ........................................................ ?

**Engy :** Eco-friendly ATM is one of these inventions.

**Mom :** (3) ........................................................ ?

**Engy :** It helps us recycle old electronic devices.

**Mom :** (4) ........................................................ . Do you know other inventions ?

**Engy :** Yes. (5) ........................................................ .

**Mom :** What are solar-powered airplanes ?

**Engy :** They are planes fly using power from solar panels.

**2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Don't .................... **(used)** your phone in the class.
2. If you .................... **(turns)** on the oven, it gets hot.
3. She is the .................... **(fast)** runner in her team.
4. Where .................... **(do)** they spend their holiday last year ?

## 2. November assessments

**3. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. To .................... means to share something on social media.
   a. save  b. delete  c. download  d. post
2. .................... are bad weather, with wind, rain, thunder and lightning.
   a. Storms  b. Floods
   c. Droughts  d. Earthquakes
3. Baklawa and Om Ali are my favorite .................... .
   a. main courses  b. starters
   c. drinks  d. desserts
4. He needs .................... umbrella because it is raining.
   a. an  b. a
   c. the  d. no article
5. If you think it's a scam, .................... someone.
   a. told  b. tells  c. tell  d. telling
6. Eating fresh fruit is .................... than eating chocolate and candy.
   a. healthy  b. heathier
   c. healthiest  d. unhealthy

**4. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY(80) words on :**

**"How to stay safe online"**

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

# General Exercises

## I. Listening

SB page 84

### Penny's decorations

**Mara** : Hi, Penny. What are you doing ?

**Penny** : I'm choosing decorations for my wedding.

**Mara** : How **exciting**(1).

**Penny** : Yes, it is. I want all the decorations to be environmentally friendly.

**Mara** : That's cool. Can you show me some ?

**Penny** : Sure, no problem. Here are the paper **lanterns**(2). We'll use these instead of balloons, which are made of plastic. And this is **confetti**(3) made of lots of small, **dried flowers**(4).

**Mara** : It looks beautiful. What about these glass **jars**(5) ?

**Penny** : They're for candles. The jars contained food, so we washed them and a put ribbon around them. We'll put a small candle inside each jar and put them on the tables during the wedding meal.

**Mara** : That's a great way to reuse them. What about your **invitations**(6) ?

**Penny** : Those will be **digital**(7), of course ! We'll email them to the guests.

| (1) مشوق | (2) فوانيس / مصابيح | (3) قصاصات / رقائق | (4) ورد مجفف | (5) برطمان | (6) اختراعات | (7) رقمى |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

## II. Reading

### A taste of the past

Thanks to the fertile land near the River Nile, the Ancient Egyptians could grow crops and **raise animals**(1) for food. They had lots of good **quality ingredients**(2), and they used them to cook a surprising **variety of**(3) different **dishes**(4).

Bread was very popular and **cheap**(5) to make. The Ancient Egyptians baked it in many different ways, often adding oil, **spices**(6), or chopped vegetables to make it tastier. One kind of bread was **aish baladi**(7), which is still popular in Egypt today. However, in the past, people baked it slowly in special clay ovens which they heated with wood fires. Today, we can bake it quickly in **electric ovens**(8).

Another food that was popular in Ancient Egypt was **hummus**(9). To make it, people boiled and **mashed**(10) chickpeas, then mixed them with oil, garlic, and salt. In fact, there is an Egyptian recipe for hummus still used today that is nearly 1.000 years old !

| (1) يربى حيوانات | (2) مكونات عالية الجودة | (3) تنوع من | (4) أصناف طعام | (5) رخيص الثمن | (6) توابل | (7) عيش بلدى | (8) أفران كهربية | (9) طحينة الحمص | (10) يهرس |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

Some Ancient Egyptians also ate meat and fish. They usually grilled meat over a fire, in the same way that we make kebabs today, or roasted it in ovens. However, they didn't have fridges, so to **preserve**[11] meat and fish they dried them and covered them in salt. They made the fish dish we still know as fesikh in this way. Some people still use this method today to get a real taste of the past !

(11) يحفظ

## III. Language

### 1. Match the sentence halves :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. If you like spicy food, | ☐ a. we can wear our new clothes |
| 2. What happens if we, | ☐ b. they taste delicious |
| 3. If we go to the wedding, | ☐ c. use AI. |
| 4. If you grill sweet potatoes, | ☐ d. this meal is perfect. |
| 5. If you want to write stories, | ☐ e. it tastes sweeter. |
| 6. If you add some sugar, | ☐ f. post our personal details online ? |

### 2. Choose the correct options in the dialogs :

1. **A:** I helped at my uncle **Ali's / Alis'** workshop during the summer vacation.
   **B:** That's great. Is **his / its** workshop near here ?
2. **A: Can / Can't** you help me with my homework, please ?
   **B:** Sorry, I **can / can't** help you just now. **I'll help / helps** you later.
3. **A:** Is the new **student's / students'** name Salma ?
   **B:** No, it isn't. **Her / Its** name's Nabila .
4. **A:** How often do you borrow your **parents' / parent's** laptop ?
   **B:** I only borrow **it / them** on the weekend.

### 3. Complete the post with the past simple of the verbs and the adverbs of frequency in brackets :

Last summer, I (1) .......................... **(always / get up)** early. I (2) .......................... **(often / help out)** at a family workshop in the morning and I (3) .......................... **(sometimes / teach)** my friends how to play chess in the afternoons .
In the evenings, I (4) .......................... **(be / usually)** tired but I (5) .......................... **(always / write)** my journal ! I (6) .......................... **(never / go)** to bed late because every day was a busy day.

# Listening Texts نصوص الاستماع

## Unit 1

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

Hana Goda first started playing table tennis at the age of four. She has a talent in this sport. At the age of 12. She came top of the ITT under-15 women's world rankings. She won a top award at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos.

### General Exercises on unit (1)

The temple of Edfu is an Ancient Egyptian temple. It's in the town of Edfu. The temple is about 2,250 years old. It's important for understanding life in Ancient Egypt. It gives us information about language and religion over 2,000 years ago.

## Unit 2

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

Salma was a 15-year-old girl from Egypt, loved photography. She often shared her photos on an online website for young photographers.

### General Exercises on unit (2)

Mido is my brother. He is 15 years old. He is a top student in his class. He is a football player. He always scores many goals.

## Unit 3

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

**Mazen** : When do you like doing sport, Radwan ?
**Radwan** : I like doing sport in my free time.
**Mazen** : What is your favorite sport ?
**Radwan** : My favorite sport is swimming.
**Mazen** : Where do you go swimming ?
**Radwan** : At the sports club.
**Mazen** : How often do you go swimming ?
**Radwan** : I go swimming twice a week.

### General Exercises on unit (3)

In the mornings, I write a "To do" list of things I need to do. It really helps me organize my day. I spend my free time in a useful way.

## Unit 4

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

Most airplanes aren't good for our planet. Solar-powered airplanes fly using power that comes from solar panels. It is very clean power. The planes can fly around the world, day or night.

### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

Cyberbullying is a big problem for young people. It's easier for bullies to post horrible messages as they can hide behind a false name. Cyberbullying can happen any time you are online.

### General Exercises on unit (4)

The world's oceans are full of plastic trash which is very bad for life in the ocean. The ocean clean-up projects collect rubbish in the water. Then ships take it back to land for recycling. The system can be used where the biggest problems are.

## Unit 5

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

Last week, we studied a poem in the English class. The poem is about helping the earth. In the poem, the poet suggests ways to look after the earth.

### General Exercises on unit (5)

Ali watched a documentary with his dad last week. It was about the effects of human activities on the planet. After that, he decided to make changes in his life to be more eco-friendly.

## Unit 6

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

Magdy and Samy are friends. They have an amazing idea to save the planet. They want to make a living cafe which makes almost no waste.

### General Exercises on unit (6)

Maakouda are very popular traditional food in Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia. They make them with potatoes. They boil potatoes and make them into small balls.

# Answers of writing Topics

## Unit 1

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

**Summer vacation activities**

It's very important to spend our summer vacations in a useful way. There are many useful things you can do on your summer vacation. You can do sports to be healthy. Choose the sport you like most and practise it with your friends. You can help others by doing voluntary works like helping your neighbours and the poor. Also you can improve your skills by learning new things, such as computer skills. Don't waste your time.

### General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

**An Ancient building you visited**

Last week I went on a school trip with my friends to the Temple of Edfu. It's an ancient temple in the town of Edfu. Edfu is located on the west bank of the River Nile. It's between Luxor and Aswan. This temple is very important to understand life in Ancient Egypt. The writings on the wall give us useful information about the language and religion of Ancient Egyptian people. It was very amazing trip. Our history teacher helped us a lot. We were very happy.

### General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

**An email about a famous sports person**

**From** : marwan900@yahoo.com
**To** : ayman87@gmail.com
**Subject** : A famous sports person

Dear Ayman,

I'm very happy to write this email to you. How are you? I want to tell you about my favourite sports person. She is the rising star Hana Goda. She is a great table tennis player. She started this sport at the age of four. She has improved year after year. She is very fast and focus. She became the youngest national champion in 2019. In 2022, she won a top award at the ITTF African Cup in Lagos. She works hard to achieve her victories and dreams. Can you tell me about your favorite sports star. See you soon.

Yours,

Marwan

### General Exercises on Unit "One"

**Your summer vacation**

My summer vacation was great. I played with my neighbors and had fun. I went to a football club and played in a football team. The coach told me that I was talented. I played with my neighbors in the morning and with the team in the evening. At the end of the summer, my team took part in a tournament. My team won the tournament and I scored three goals. Really, it was fantastic vacation.

## Unit 2

### General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

**From** : salah11@gmail.com
**To** : helmiman@gmail.com
**Subject** : Free-time activities

Dear Helmi,

It pleases me to write this email to you. How are you? I want to tell you about my free-time activities. Last weekend my cousin and I helped in the community. It was a really fun day. Our family came together to help us. We collected too many empty cans and chocolate bar wrappers from the streets in our city. We took them to the recycling center. We were very happy to help the community. See you soon.

Yours,

Salah

## General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

### Selling things online

There are some steps and rules to buy and sell online. My friend Seif wants his grandpa to sell his old furniture online. Grandpa decides to sell a large table from 1970s. Seif gives his grandpa few rules to buy and sell safely online. First, he should always use a well-known website to sell. Then, he should make sure the information he gives about something is true. Also, he shouldn't share personal information. Finally, if he has to meet someone in person, he should meet them in a public place and don't go alone.

## General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

### Social media post to congratulate my friend on his birthday

Happy birthday to my fantastic friend Hassan. You're 15 today. You are a great friend because you are very helpful and kind to me. Thanks a lot! And of course we all know you're a top student and also an amazing table tennis player. I'm so proud of you. Have a great birthday.

## General Exercises on Unit "Two"

### An email about social media

**From** : ibrahimmoe@gmail.com
**To** : samisayed@gmail.com
**Subject** : Social media

Dear, Sami,

I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you? I want to tell you about social media. It's very good to use social media in our life, but there are some rules you should follow to stay safe online. You shouldn't give your personal information to people you don't know. Also, you shouldn't share your photos online. Ask your teachers or parents if you need help. See you soon.

Yours,
Ibrahim

# Unit 3

## General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

### Spending my free time

It's very important to spend your free time in a useful way. During the school year, I don't have much free time. I should write a "To do" list of things I need to do. After school, I do different things. On Tuesdays and Thursdays, I play football with my friends. Also, I learn new skills in the evening classes. At the moment, I'm learning first aid skills to help people.

## General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

### "An email about the school bazaar"

**From** : adel20@yahoo.com
**To** : essamsam@yahoo.com
**Subject** : The school bazaar

Dear Essam,

It pleases me to write this email to you. How are you? I want to tell you about my school bazaar. My friend Ahmed is drinking homemade lemonade. Shorouk and her brother are selling homemade lemonade on their stall at the bazaar. Sahar is making jewelery. She puts beads onto some string to make a bracelet. She doesn't want to sell her bracelet at the bazaar because they take a long time to make. Sahar and Salma decide to make cupcakes. See you soon.

Yours,
Adel

## General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

### An unusual hobby

Nermine had an unusual hobby. Her favorite hobby is geocaching. Geocaching is a sort of outdoor treasure hunt. In geocaching, the clues come from an app on your phone. When you solve the clues, you get coordinates, which are pairs of numbers. There are millions of geocaches all over the world. Nermine and her friends decide to play the game together. It's hard work and they have to work together. Finally, they work out the coordinates and find the geocache.

## General Exercises on Unit "Three"

### An email about a sports day

**From** : salim13@yahoo.com
**To** : adamdoo@gmail.com
**Subject** : a sports day

Dear Adam,

I'm happy to write this email to you. How are you? I want to tell you about my school sports day. Students aren't having lessons this afternoon. It's the school's sports day. Some students are running and their parents are watching them. Other students are playing tennis on the tennis court. The football teams are getting ready for their match. I like this day so much. Tell me soon about your school sports day.

Yours,
Salim

# Unit 4

## General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

### Inventions for a sustainable future

There are many new inventions that will help us. Eco ATMs can help us recycle old devices and get money. There are also plant - based batteries. They are batteries working using material from plants. We also have solar-powered airplanes. They use power that comes from solar panels. They are good for the environment. Ocean clean-up projects are important projects that help collect rubbish for recycling.

## General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

### How to stay safe online

**From** : ahmedali@yahoo.com
**To** : kemoo90@yahoo.com
**Subject** : Staying safe online

Hi Kareem,

How are you? I hope you are fine. There are some important tips to stay safe online. You should use a strong password. You can use a mix of letters and numbers. You shouldn't tell or share your personal information with anyone. You shouldn't make friends with people you don't know online. If you have a problem, tell your parents or a teacher.

Best wishes,
Ahmed

## General Exercises on lessons 5, 6

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD < > ⋮ X

### A great invention

There are many great inventions we have these days. In my opinion, the mobile is the most important invention. We can use it to do many things. We can use it to communicate with family and friends. People use it to send text messages. We can use it to take photos. Students use it to do research or go online. We can use different apps for studying, playing games and for fun.

## General Exercises on Unit "Four"

### Green technology

Green technology is very important for the environment. It is necessary to save our planet. There are many forms of green technology. We have ECOATMs, tree-planting projects, solar-powered airplanes and other new inventions. All of these forms of green technology aim to help save the planet for people to enjoy their life. All of them use natural and green resources.

# Unit 5

## General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

### The effects of climate change

Climate change is one of the worst problems that we face. It has a lot of bad effects on our planet. It can lead to other problems. It causes floods and sometimes droughts in many areas of the world. Climate change is one of the main reasons for the problem of water scarcity. A lot of people all over the world can't find clean water or safe water. I think we should try hard to stop climate change.

## General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

### How to save energy at home

There are many tips to be more eco-friendly and save energy at home. We should switch off lights, TVs, computers and all electronic devices when they aren't in use. Don't leave them on stand - by. We can also have a short shower, not a bath. If we do this, we can save a lot of water. We can reuse things in our trash. We can use them to make other things. We can use plastic bottles to make a bird feeder.

## General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

### Things you do to be eco-friendly

There are many tips to be more eco-friendly and save energy at home. We should switch off lights, TVs, computers and all electronic devices when they aren't in use. Don't leave them on stand - by. We can also have a short shower, not a bath. If we do this, we can save a lot of water. We can re-use things in our trash. We can use them to make other things. We can use plastic bottles to make a bird feeder.

## General Exercises on Unit "Five"

### Water scarcity

**From** : medhat@yahoo.com
**To** : ashraffriend@yahoo.com
**Subject** : Water scarcity

Hi Ashraf,

How are you? I'm writing to tell you about the problem of water scarcity. I think it is a worrying problem. It is caused by climate change. A lot of people all over the world don't have fresh clean water. Dirty water can make people ill. The biggest impact of water scarcity can be on children. Although it is a dangerous problem, we can find some solutions. We should look for new water resources and develop new technology.

Yours,
Medhat

# Unit 6

## General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

### Your favorite celebration food

**From** : assem16@yahoo.com
**To** : kamalamir@gmail.com
**Subject** : My favorite celebration food

Hi Kamal,

I like all types of healthy and sweet food. My favorite celebration food is called qatayef. They are special dessert people eat during the month of Ramadan. Qatayef are a type of sweet pancake filled with nuts, or chocolate. They are put into oil and fried. People pour syrup made from sugar over them. I like them because they are delicious and taste nice.

Best wishes,
Assem

## General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

### My favorite dishes

I love all types of food, but there are some types I like most. First, I like burgers and fries. I like my burgers grilled. I like them with tomato and onion. Another type of food that I like is salad. I like my salad with cucumber, onion and cheese.
Finally, my favorite dessert is strawberry cheesecake. I love the taste and smell of the strawberries. I love eating it on hot days.

## General Exercises on Unit "Six"

### Traditional food

**From** : waleed200@yahoo.com
**To** : ashrafali@yahoo.com
**Subject** : Traditional food

Hi Ashraf,

How are you? I write to tell you about the Egyptian traditional food. The Egyptian food is famous all over the world. People in Egypt eat many different types of food. They eat koshari and falafel. They are very delicious. On festivals and other celebrations, people eat special foods. They eat salted fish and onions in Sham El Nessim. In Ramadan, they eat delicious pancake called qatayef.

Best wishes,
Waleed

# Notes

# Hello!

## BEYOND WORDS

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

By a group of supervisors

كـراســة المعــاصـر
للمراجعـة والاختبارات



**A WEEK IS ENOUGH**

English

GPS

1st PREP.

FIRST TERM

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

# A WEEK IS ENOUGH

(الامتحان بين يديك)

مراجعة على المنهج بالكامل
والتمكن منه فى أسبوع واحد فقط



## اليوم الأول

### Language Functions

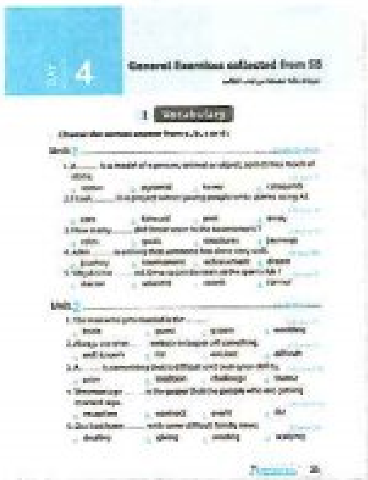
- عرض جديد يضمن لك الحصول على أفضل درجة فى سؤال الوظائف اللغوية.



## اليوم الثانى والثالث

### Vocabulary and Language

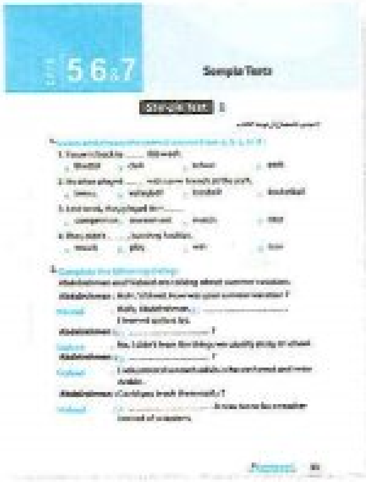
- مراجعة على أهم المفردات اللغوية والقواعد اللغوية الهامة التى وردت فى المنهج.



## اليوم الرابع

### General Exercises Collected from SB

- تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب.



## اليوم الخامس والسادس والسابع

### Sample Tests

- عشرة نماذج اختبارات على المنهج بالكامل.

DAY 1

# Language Functions

## 1. Language Functions

١. الوظائف اللغوية

[راجع وتدرب فى نفس الوقت] عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة متبوعة بتدريبات عليها للتمكن من حل المحادثة فى الورقة الامتحانية.

### Asking and answering questions about summer vacation activities :
توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن أنشطة العطلة الصيفية.

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| • Which activities do you do ?<br>ما هى الأنشطة التى تقوم بها ؟ | - I play in tournaments and help out at my family's workshop.<br>أشارك فى بطولات وأساعد فى ورشة العمل الخاصة بعائلتى. |

### Asking and answering questions about how often you did something :
توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن عدد المرات الى قمت فيها بفعل شىء ما.

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| • How often did you get up early in the summer vacation ?<br>كم مرة استيقظت مبكرًا فى العطلة الصيفية ؟ | - Not often. I usually got up late in the summer vacation.<br>ليس فى كثير من الأحيان. عادة ما كنت أستيقظ متأخرًا فى العطلة الصيفية. |

### Talking about ways to spend your free time : الحديث عن طرق لقضاء وقت الفراغ

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| 1. How do you spend your free time ?<br>كيف تقضى وقت فراغك ؟ | - I learn new skills, help in the community and walk in nature.<br>أتعلم مهارات جديدة وأساعد فى المجتمع وأتجول فى الطبيعة. |
| 2. What is your favorite free time activity ?<br>ما هو نشاطك المفضل لقضاء وقت الفراغ ؟ | - I love helping in the community.<br>أحب المساعدة فى المجتمع. |
| 3. When do you do that ?<br>متى تقوم بذلك ؟ | - I usually do that on holidays.<br>أقوم بذلك عادة فى الإجازات. |
| 4. What do you do ? Where do you do it ? ماذا تفعل ؟ أين تقوم بذلك ؟ | - I volunteer at the community garden.<br>أتطوع فى الحديقة المجتمعية. |

DAY 1

**Talking about staying safe online :** الحديث عن البقاء آمنًا عبر الإنترنت

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| • How do you stay safe online ? كيف تبقى آمنًا عبر الإنترنت ؟ | • Choose strong passwords. اختر كلمات مرور قوية. • Think before you post. فكر جيدًا قبل أن تقوم بالنشر. • Be careful of friend requests. كن حذرًا من طلبات الصداقة. • Be kind online. كن لطيفًا عبر الإنترنت. |

**Discussion about which technological devices are important and why :**
مناقشة عن أى الأجهزة التكنولوجية هام بالنسبة لك ولماذا.

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| • Which device do you think is the most important ? أى الأجهزة تعتقد هى الأكثر أهمية ؟ | - I think phones are the most important. أعتقد أن الهواتف هى أكثر الأجهزة أهمية. |
| • Why do you think phones are the most important devices ? لماذا تعتقد أن الهواتف هى أكثر الأجهزة أهمية ؟ | - Because we use them for so many things. لأننا نستخدمهم فى العديد من الأغراض. |

**Asking and answering about celebration food :**
توجيه أسئلة والرد عليها عن طعام المناسبات.

| Questions | Answers |
| --- | --- |
| • What special days do you celebrate each year in your family ? ما المناسبات الخاصة التى تحتفل بها مع عائلتك كل عام ؟ | - I celebrate Sham El-Nessim with my family. أحتفل بشم النسيم مع عائلتى. |
| • Do you eat special food in it ? هل تتناول طعام خاص فى تلك المناسبة ؟ | - Yes, I do. نعم. افعل ذلك. |
| • What do you eat ? ماذا تأكل ؟ | - I eat fesikh. أتناول الفسيخ. |
| • Who prepares it for you ? من يقوم بإعداده لكم ؟ | - My grandma. جدتى. |
| • What are its ingredients ? ما مكوناته ؟ | - Fish, a lot of salt and oil. سمك وكثيرًا من الملح والزيت. |

DAYS 2 & 3

# Vocabulary and Language

## 1. General Revision on Vocabulary

مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

## Unit 1

### I Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| coach | مُدرب رياضي | workshop | ورشة عمل |
| talented | موهوب | focus | يركز - تركيز |
| volunteer | يتطوع - متطوع | imagine | يتخيل |
| tournament | بطولة | victories | أمجاد - انتصارات |
| temple | معبد | champion | بطل (رياضي) |
| achievement | إنجاز | obelisk | مسلة |
| tiring | متعب - مجهد | equipment | معدات |
| alphabet | الحروف الأبجدية | opponent | منافس |
| difficulties | صعوبات | qualities | سمات |

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He is a ............ football player. He scored three goals in 80 minutes.
   a. talented b. funny c. safe d. nervous
2. The carpenter works in his ............ .
   a. court b. workshop c. club d. museum
3. I don't get money when I ............ at the community garden.
   a. take b. imagine c. volunteer d. score
4. The ............ of the team asked me to train hard for the tournament.
   a. tourist b. writer c. neighbor d. coach
5. The ............ is a tall stone monument with a top that is usually in the shape of a pyramid.
   a. statue b. obelisk c. temple d. catacomb
6. People came together to pray in the ............ in Ancient Egypt.
   a. temple b. coach c. statue d. pyramid

7. The noise made it hard for him to ............ on his work.
   a. dream b. smile c. focus d. leave
8. What ............ do you have that help you succeed ?
   a. effects b. qualities c. opponents d. problems

# Unit 2

## II Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| challenge | تحدى | post | ينشر - منشور |
| downstairs | فى الطابق السفلى | hug | يحضن - يحتضن |
| bride | العروس | Congratulations! | أجمل التهانى! |
| photography | التصوير | wedding | حفل زفاف |
| fetch | يُحضر - يجلب | chat | يدردش |
| motorbike | دراجة بخارية | guest | ضيف - زائر |
| pay | يدفع | proud | فخور |
| contract | عَقْد - اتفاق | environmentally friendly | صديق للبيئة |

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. I spent much time ............ with my friends online about our dreams.
   a. feeding b. chatting c. traveling d. growing
2. The ............ usually wears a white dress at her wedding.
   a. waiter b. guest c. bride d. owner
3. The bride and the groom sign the marriage ............ before the wedding party.
   a. quiz b. contract c. form d. app
4. You must wear a helmet when you ride your ............ .
   a. plane b. train c. motorbike d. car
5. He ............ a photo of his friends on Facebook.
   a. bought b. posted c. wrote d. typed
6. A ............ is something that is difficult and tests your ability to do something.
   a. challenge b. comment c. dream d. message
7. Moms ............ their children when they cry and feel afraid.
   a. post b. hug c. pay d. decide
8. The factory is environmentally ............ because it doesn't damage the environment.
   a. specific b. negative c. friendly d. common

# Unit 3

## III Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sports field | ملعب رياضي | skill | مهارة |
| first aid | إسعافات أولية | course | دورة تدريبية |
| clue | مفتاح لغز | community | مجتمع |
| organize | يرتب | nature | الطبيعة |
| forum | منتدى | principal | مُدير |
| logbook | سجل أداء يومي | bazaar | سوق تجاري |
| bracelet | أسورة - سوار | expert | خبير |
| treasure | كنز | stressed | مُجهد / مضغوط |

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. ............ are information that helps you solve a problem.
   a. Logs b. Clues c. Courts d. Geocaches
2. Listening is an important ............ to learn any language.
   a. recipe b. skill c. space d. expert
3. We need someone who knows the ............ to help the injured boy.
   a. timetable b. free time c. software d. first aid
4. He is ............ because he can't finish all his homework.
   a. surprised b. stressed c. relaxed d. calm
5. My family often goes to the park on weekends to enjoy ............ .
   a. nature b. science c. technology d. jewelery
6. Writing a "To do" list helps me ............ my time.
   a. grow b. organize c. waste d. take
7. She takes a ............ to learn how to design clothes.
   a. walk b. journal c. skill d. course
8. The little girl is wearing a ............ around her wrist.
   a. ring b. bracelet c. necklace d. crown

# Unit 4

## IV Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| invention | إختراع | ocean | محيط |
| device | جهاز | sustainable | مستدام |
| solar panels | ألواح شمسية | fitness | لياقة بدنية |
| charity | جمعية خيرية | cautious | حذر - حريص |
| advertisement | إعلان | recycling | إعادة تدوير الأشياء |
| prove | يثبت - يبرهن | platform | منصّة |
| cyberbullying | التنمر الإلكتروني | engine | محرك |
| ATMs | ماكينات الصراف الآلي | efficiently | بفعالية - بكفاءة |

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. **A :** Which ............ do you think is the most important ? - **B :** The phone.
   a. advice b. device c. book d. revision
2. We use ............ to take out money from our bank account.
   a. batteries b. search engines c. ATMs d. solar panels
3. Smartphones are one of the amazing ............ .
   a. engines b. inventions c. folders d. games
4. They'll give money to the ............ which helps poor people.
   a. charity b. station c. workshop d. court
5. ............ reduces the rubbish and saves the planet.
   a. Reading b. Planting c. Recycling d. Flying
6. To ............ means to show that something is true.
   a. tap b. drag c. delete d. prove
7. The talented worker finished his work easily and ............ .
   a. efficiently b. lazily c. difficultly d. slowly
8. They use solar ............ to make electricity from the sun.
   a. advertisements b. drawings
   c. panels d. websites

# Unit 5

## V Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| drought | جفاف | temperatures | درجات الحرارة |
| heatstroke | ضربة شمس | effect | تأثير |
| water scarcity | ندرة المياه | surface | سطح |
| flood | فيضان | worth | قيمة - يستحق |
| air conditioning | تكييف الهواء | Earth | كوكب الأرض |
| bird feeder | وعاء غذاء الطيور | source | مصدر |
| illness | مرض | consume | يستهلك |
| poem | قصيدة شعرية | planet | كوكب |

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. He hung up the bird ............ and filled it with seeds.
   a. letter b. leader c. feeder d. bath
2. ............ keeps our homes cool in hot weather.
   a. Bath b. Light
   c. Engine d. Air conditioning
3. There is a ............ because it hasn't rained for four months.
   a. storm b. fire c. drought d. flood
4. Healthy bodies are stronger to fight ............ .
   a. lights b. illnesses c. devices d. consoles
5. When there's ............ , farmers don't have enough water for plants.
   a. a heatstroke b. a flood c. water scarcity d. a storm
6. We need to ............ energy to help our planet.
   a. save b. use c. leave d. consume
7. The value of something means ............ .
   a. worth b. poem c. source d. flood
8. She had a ............ because she stayed a long time in the sun.
   a. heatstroke b. cold c. stomach ache d. storm

# Unit 6

## VI Important Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| boil | يغلي | recycled | معاد تدويره |
| compost | سماد | sweet potatoes | بطاطا |
| spices | توابل | fries | بطاطس مقلية |
| oven | فرن | grilled | مشوى |
| pan | مقلاة | ingredients | مكونات - مقادير |
| recipe | وصفة طهى | waste | فضلات - نفاية |
| herbs | أعشاب | coffee grounds | بقايا القهوة بعد الطحن |
| bake | يخبز | straw | أنبوبة لشرب السوائل [شفاط] |
| tasty | لذيذ | pay | يدفع |

## Exercise on Vocabulary

**Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. They use the coffee grounds as ............ to grow plants.
   a. garlic b. clay c. waste d. compost
2. ............ are pieces of potatoes fried in oil.
   a. Pies b. Kebabs c. Fries d. Omelette
3. Bake the pie in the ............ for 30 minutes.
   a. fire b. oven c. oil d. water
4. The restaurant uses good quality ............ to make delicious dishes.
   a. ingredients b. pans c. cultures d. reviews
5. How much did you ............ for the meal ?
   a. taste b. dry c. pay d. improve
6. ............ means used again in a different way.
   a. Fertile b. Recycled c. Modern d. Popular
7. Egyptians ............ beans in water to make ful medames.
   a. cut b. pour c. fry d. boil
8. I like kebab because it is ............ and easy to cook.
   a. creamy b. crispy c. sweet d. tasty

# 2. General Revision on Language

مراجعة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

## Unit 1

### 1 The past simple : زمن الماضى البسيط :

#### A. Verb to be in the past simple tense

لاحظ أن : يتم استخدام (verb to be) فى زمن الماضى البسيط كالتالى :

- I / He / She / It —اسم مفرد→ was / wasn't ........... .
- We / You / They —اسم جمع→ were / weren't ........... .
- Was + he / she / it / اسم مفرد ........... ?
- Were + we / you / they / اسم جمع ........... ?

#### B. Past simple tense زمن الماضى البسيط

**1. Affirmative statements :** ١. الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل

ex. - I **helped** out in a workshop. (فعل منتظم)

- We **gave** the plants a lot of water. (فعل غير منتظم)

**2. Negative statements :** ٢. الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. المصدر

ex. I **didn't buy** a new car last month.

**3. Interrogative :** ٣. صيغة الاستفهام :

Did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ........ ?

ex. - **Did** you visit your uncle last week ?

• Yes, I did. • No, I didn't.

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + did + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر + ........ ?

ex. - What **did** you **do** yesterday ?

- **I went** to a sports club.

4. **Past time phrases :** العبارات الزمنية الخاصة بالماضى البسيط :

**We use past time phrases to say when something happened.**

تستخدم العبارات الزمنية الخاصة بالماضى البسيط للإخبار عن متى حدث شيء ما.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| yesterday | أمس | last Friday | الجمعة الماضية |
| ago | منذ | last week | الأسبوع الماضى |
| in the past | فى الماضى | last month | الشهر الماضى |
| in + سنة ماضية (2023) | | last year | السنة الماضية |

② **Adverbs of frequency :** ظروف التكرار :

- always دائمًا - sometimes أحيانًا - often غالبًا
- never أبدًا - usually عادةً

• تستخدم ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسى وبعد [verb to be] وتعبر عن عدد مرات تكرار حدوث الفعل فى الماضى :

**ex.** -I always looked after my little brother.
- He was usually tired in the evening.

How often + did + فاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ? كم مرة ...؟

**ex.** -How often did you leave your town ?
- Never. I always stayed in my town in the summer vacation.

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. They ............ excited to learn swimming last summer.
a. did b. was c. had d. were

2. He ............ part in a project that aimed to teach adults to read and write.
a. takes b. took c. take d. taken

3. I didn't ............ up and I kept working hard.
a. give b. gave c. gives d. giving

4. We ............ have a public library in 2000.
a. didn't b. don't c. weren't d. hadn't

5. Did you ............ at the community garden ?
a. volunteers b. volunteer c. volunteered d. volunteering

6. Where ............ he put up the posters yesterday ?
   a. was  b. will  c. did  d. can
7. He ............ for five hours at the age of ten.
   a. trained usually  b. usually trained
   c. trains usually  d. usually train
8. It ............ rainy last November.
   a. is always  b. usually was
   c. never  d. was sometimes

**2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :**

1. How ............ (much) did you go online ? - Usually.
2. What did you ............ (doing) on Sunday ?
3. She ............ (never) arrived early. She was never late .
4. Last summer, we ............ (visiting) many ancient buildings in Cairo.

## Unit 2

### 1 Determiners :

| my | your | + noun الاسم |
|---|---|---|
| his | her | |
| its | our | |
| their | | |

- تستخدم محددات الملكية للإشارة إلى أن الشئ يخص شخص ما.
- تأتي محددات الملكية قبل اسم الشئ المملوك.

**ex.** - This is my house.
- He will fix his car tomorrow.
- The cat cleaned its tail.
- Where is your school ?

### 2 Possessive ('s / s') :
٢. الملكية ('s / s') :

- تستخدم ['s] مع الأسماء المفردة التي تشير إلى [الأشخاص - الحيوانات].

**ex.** - Tamer's car  - a horse's tail

- تستخدم [s'] مع أسماء الجمع المنتظم المنتهية بـ [s] بإضافة الفاصلة العليا فقط:

**ex.** - boys' school  - cats' legs

- تستخدم ['s] مع الأسماء الجمع غير المنتظمة وغير المنتهية بـ [s] :

ex. - men's clothes. - women's dresses.

- تستخدم ['s] مع الوظائف للإشارة لمكان العمل:

ex. - the dentist's عيادة الأسنان - The chemist's الصيدلية

- لا تستخدم ['s] مع أسماء الجماد:

ex. - Computer's screen (✗) ➔ - Computer screen (✓)
- Activity's book (✗) ➔ - Activity book (✓)

## 3 Expressing ability and inability in the present

## ٣. التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في المضارع

- نستخدم can / can't + inf. للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة على القيام بفعل شيء ما في المضارع.

**Can** يستطيع

- **Affirmative** الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + can + inf. مصدر الفعل.

ex. - I can speak three languages.

- **Negative** النفى → Subject الفاعل + can't + inf. مصدر الفعل.

ex. - She can't send emails.

- **Interrogative** صيغة الاستفهام → Can + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

ex. - Can you use your phone ?
- Yes, I can. - No, I can't.

## 4 Can and will for requests:

٤. إستخدام [Can] و [Will] للطلب:

Can you / Will you + the main verb الفعل الأساسي + object pronoun ضمير مفعول ........ ?

ex. - Can you help me with my homework ?
- Will you fetch my coat ? - It's in the hall.

- عند الرد على الطلب بالقبول / الموافقة نستخدم:

- Yes, of course. نعم بالطبع.

- Sure, no problem. بالتأكيد، لا توجد مشكلة.

- عند الرد على الطلب بالرفض / عدم الموافقة نستخدم:
- Sorry, I can't at the moment, I'm ............ .

آسف لا يمكنني فى هذه اللحظة، أنا ............

- No, sorry, I'm busy. I'll ............ .

لا، آسف، أنا مشغول. أنا سوف ............

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. ............ name is Walid. I live in Cairo.
   a. Her b. My c. Our d. Their
2. This is ............ house. It is next to the library.
   a. we b. ours c. our d. us
3. ............ sister is the bride.
   a. Samia' b. Samia's c. Samias d. Samias'
4. The ............ beaches are clean and soft.
   a. island b. island's c. islands' d. island'
5. I can't ............ you my password. It's a secret.
   a. gave b. give c. gives d. giving
6. ............ you turn on the air conditioning, please ? - Yes, I will.
   a. Will b. Have c. Did d. Are
7. ............ you send me this photo ? - No, I can't.
   a. Will b. Do c. Did d. Can
8. The ............ shell is very hard to protect it.
   a. turtles b. turtle's c. turtle' d. turtle

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. This is ............ (Alis) phone. It is new.
2. This is ............ (her) car. He bought it last week.
3. Will you ............ (calls) the doctor for me, please ?
4. Can you ............ (carries) these bags for me ?

# Unit 3

## 1 The present continuous tense : زمن المضارع المستمر :

### A. Affirmative & Negative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة والمنفية

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد / We / You / They / اسم جمع + am / is / are + (not) + (inf. المصدر + ing).

ex.: - I'm traveling to England this summer.
- She isn't watching TV now.

### B. Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام

السؤال بـ هل :

Am / Is / Are + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد / we / you / they / اسم جمع + (inf. المصدر + ing) ..?

ex.: - Are you walking to school ?
• Yes, I am. • No, I am not.

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + (inf. المصدر + ing) ..?

ex.: - What are you doing now ?
• I'm reading an adventure story.

**Key words :** كلمات دالة غالبا تأتى مع الزمن

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| now | الآن | Take care ! | احذر ! | at the moment | فى تلك اللحظة |
| Look ! | انظر ! | still | مازال | at present | فى الوقت الحاضر |
| Listen ! | انصت ! | tonight | فى هذه الليلة | Look out ! / Watch out ! | احترس ! |

## 2 Pronouns: ٢. الضمائر:

### A. Subject pronouns : ضمائر الفاعل (تحل محل الفاعل فى الجملة)

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| I | أنا | It | هو / هى (لغير العاقل) |
| You | أنت / أنتم / أنتن | We | نحن |
| He | هو (للعاقل) | They | هم / هن |
| She | هى (للعاقل) | | |

- تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل فى بداية الجملة وتحل محل الأسماء التى تعمل كفاعل فى الجملة.

**ex.:** - You play football well.

## B. Object pronouns : ضمائر المفعول

| me | you |
|---|---|
| him | her |
| it | us |
| them | |

- تستخدم ضمائر المفعول بعد الفعل ويمكن أن تستخدم بعد حروف الجر وتحل محل الأسماء التى تعمل كمفعول فى الجملة.

**ex.:** - I saw him yesterday.

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. He ............ listening to music on his headphones now.
   a. will b. can c. is d. do
2. I ............ English with my friend at the moment.
   a. studied b. am studying c. study d. studies
3. When are you ............ to Luxor ?
   a. traveled b. travel c. travels d. traveling
4. Look! The baby cat ............ with the plastic balls.
   a. is playing b. plays c. played d. play
5. Samy and I made lemonade and ............ sold it at the bazaar.
   a. her b. we c. our d. its
6. My brother always asked ............ to listen to his songs.
   a. he b. his c. my d. me
7. Volunteering helps ............ learn new skills and be sociable.
   a. his b. us c. they d. we
8. Mom is a good cook. ............ has some special recipes.
   a. Me b. Him c. Her d. She

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. They ............ (look) for the geocache now.
2. She is ............ (make) bracelets from beads.
3. This dress makes ............ (she) look younger.
4. It was a difficult game so I gave ............ (their) clues.

# Unit 4

## 1 Imperative
١. صيغة الأمر

الأمر المثبت → Inf. مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

ex.: - Tap the app to open it.

الأمر المنفى → Don't + inf. مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة.

ex.: - Don't stop pressing.

- لاحظ أن :
- تستخدم صيغة الأمر عند إعطاء تعليمات بالقيام بفعل ما.
- تستخدم "Don't" قبل الفعل فى صيغة الأمر لإخبار شخص ما بعدم القيام بفعل شيء ما.

## 2 The zero conditional:
٢. الحالة الصفرية:

### Usage :

- To talk about facts and things that are always true.
- تستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق والأشياء التى دائمًا واقعية.

- If it rains in the desert, plants suddenly appear.

### Formation : التكوين

If → present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

- If it is very cold, water turns into ice.

Present Simple Tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) → if → present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

- Ice melts if you put it outside a freezer.

- لاحظ : إذا جاءت (if) فى منتصف الجملة لا تضع الفاصلة السفلية ( , ).

### Interrogative : صيغة الاستفهام

- تستخدم أيضًا (if) فى صيغة الاستفهام كالتالى :

- Do you learn more if you read a lot ?
- What do you feel if you go to bed late ?
- What happens if you click on this picture ?

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. If I study hard, I ............ high marks.
   a. gets  b. got  c. get  d. getting
2. She ............ up early if she sleeps at 9:00.
   a. woke  b. wakes  c. wake  d. waking
3. ............ make friends with people you don't know online.
   a. Don't  b. Not  c. Always  d. Doesn't
4. ............ your laptop to make a poster.
   a. Used  b. Use  c. Using  d. Uses
5. We have a drought if it ............ rain for 2 months.
   a. doesn't  b. didn't  c. isn't  d. won't
6. What ............ if we boil seawater ?
   a. happening  b. happened  c. happens  d. happen
7. You save energy if you ............ off your device before sleeping.
   a. turned  b. turn  c. turning  d. turns
8. If we ............ take the bus, we walk to school.
   a. hadn't  b. aren't  c. don't  d. didn't

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. If you peel a banana, it ............ (turn) to black.
2. ............ (Do) the car go slowly if it climbs up a hill ?
3. Don't ............ (forgot) your school objects.
4. ............ (Checking) your answer after you write it.

# Unit 5

## 1 Comparatives and superlatives :

١. صفات المقارنة والتفضيل :

ex.: - We live in a new house.

- Our city is beautiful.

- الصفة تصف الاسم وتأتي
  - قبل الاسم الموصوف
  - v. to be بعد

### 1. Comparatives صفات المقارنة بين اثنين

١. للمقارنة بين شخصين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

adj. (الصفة القصيرة) + er + than

ex.: - Yasser is stronger than his brother.

٢. للمقارنة بين اثنين أو شيئين باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم :

more / less + adj. (الصفة الطويلة) + than

ex.: - Tennis is less popular than football.

### 2. Superlatives صفات التفضيل

١. عند المقارنة بين شخص / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة القصيرة نستخدم :

the + adj. (الصفة القصيرة) + est

ex.: - Whales are the biggest animals in the world.

٢. عند المقارنة بين شخص / شيء ومجموعة باستخدام الصفة الطويلة نستخدم :

the most / the least + adj. (الصفة الطويلة)

ex.: - The black car is the most expensive car here.

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. The park is the ............ place on holidays.
   a. more crowded b. most crowded
   c. crowded d. as crowded
2. His motorbike is ............ than my car.
   a. as fast b. fast c. fastest d. faster
3. We live in the ............ building in our city.
   a. taller b. tallest c. as tall as d. tall as
4. Nada is the ............ student in art in my school.
   a. well b. better c. best d. good

5. Cairo is bigger ............ Tanta.
   a. than  b. then  c. as  d. more
6. The hotel bed is ............ comfortable than my bed at home.
   a. least  b. more  c. most  d. as
7. What subject is the ............ for you ?
   a. easier than  b. easy as  c. easier  d. easiest

**2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :**

1. Laptops are ............ (most) expensive devices now.
2. The museum is usually ............ (crowded) on Saturday than on Sunday.
3. I am ............ (old) than my brother.
4. This car is very nice, but that one is ............ (nicest) .

## 2 Articles :

٢. الأدوات :

### a. The article (the) : الأداة (the)

- تستخدم (the) عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما محدد.

**ex.:** - The Earth's surface.

### b. The articles (a/an) : أدوات (a/an)

١. تستخدم (a) أو (an) عندما نتحدث عن شيء ما (مفرد) بوجه عام.

**ex :** - Basalt is a type of rock.
- Here's an example.

٢. تستخدم (an) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت متحرك (a, e, i, o, u).

**ex :** - an area  - an elephant

٣. تستخدم (a) قبل الاسم المفرد الذي يبدأ بصوت ساكن.

**ex :** - a photo  - a boy

### c. No article :

١. لا تستخدم أداة قبل اسم شخص أو اسم مكان :

**ex :** - Mr Hassan  - Noha  - Cairo  - Egypt

٢. لا نستخدم أداة قبل صيغ الجمع للأسماء المعدودة :

**ex :** - cars  - parks

٣. لا نستخدم أداة قبل الأسماء غير المعدودة :

**ex :** - sugar, water, air, cotton

- لاحظ : أنه عند التحدث عن الاسم غير المعدود بشكل محدد نضع قبله (the).

**ex :** - The water in this glass isn't clean.

**1. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. ............ sky is full of clouds today.
   a. A   b. The   c. An   d. No article
2. I have ............ new game on my mobile phone.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
3. This dish is from ............ India.
   a. an   b. a   c. the   d. no article
4. There is ............ polar bear in the zoo.
   a. a   b. the   c. no article   d. an
5. There is ............ fish on the plate. The cat is eating it.
   a. a   b. no article   c. an   d. the
6. ............ trees can clean the polluted air.
   a. A   b. The   c. No article   d. An
7. ............ book which I downloaded yesterday was very interesting.
   a. The   b. A   c. An   d. no article

**2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :**

1. Can I book ............ (an) ticket to Aswan, please ?
2. We are at ............ (a) Egyptian Museum.
3. ............ (The) octopus and a dolphin are swimming.

## Unit 6

**Wh-questions in the past simple : الأسئلة باستخدام كلمة استفهام فى زمن الماضى البسيط**

**Formation : التكوين**

| Question Word كلمة استفهام | + | auxiliary verb فعل مساعد | + | subject فاعل | + | inf. المصدر | + | noun phrase عبارة اسمية | ? |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ↓ | | ↓ | | ↓ | | ↓ | | ↓ | |
| ex.: (When) | | (did) | | (you) | | (go to) | | (that restaurant) ? | |

- لاحظ أن :

الأسئلة المبدوءة بكلمات استفهام لا نستخدم [Yes / No] عند الإجابة.

ex.: A : How much did you pay for the meal ?
B : I paid 200 L.E.
A : Who did you visit yesterday ?
B : My grandpa.

## 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. What ............ they do last Saturday ?
   a. did  b. do  c. does  d. was
2. Who did you ............ last night ?
   a. met  b. meet  c. meets  d. meeting
3. ............ did she sit in the restaurant yesterday ? - Next to her dad.
   a. When  b. Where  c. What  d. Why
4. Why did he go to the market 3 hours ............ ?
   a. next  b. tomorrow  c. ago  d. now
5. ............ did you go to school last week ? - By bus.
   a. Where  b. What  c. How  d. When

## 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. What places ............ (do) she visit last weekend ?
2. How did you ............ (felt) when you started a new school ?
3. ............ (Where) did he go to the park ? - By bus.
4. What did they study ............ (tomorrow) ? - Math.

**Adverbials of time and place :** العبارات الظرفية للزمان والمكان :

- ظرف الزمان والمكان هو عبارات قصيرة نستخدمها لنذكر متى يحدث شئ ما [توقيته] أو أين يوجد شخص أو شئ [مكانه].

### 1. Adverbials of time :
١. ظروف الزمان :

- نستخدم ظروف الزمان لنذكر وقت حدوث الشئ.

**Examples :**

- at this time of year — فى هذا الوقت من السنة
- at New Year — فى رأس السنة
- during the vacation season — أثناء موسم الإجازات
- for a long time — لمدة طويلة

**ex :** - At this time of year, we always cook special noodles.

## 2. Adverbials of place :

٢. ظروف المكان :

- نستخدم ظروف المكان لتذكر مكان شخص أو شئ.

**Examples :**

| | |
|---|---|
| - into the pudding | فى حلوى البودينج |
| - next to it | بجانب هذا |
| - on the cake | على الكعكة |
| - on the table | على المائدة |
| - at home | فى المنزل |
| - into oil | فى الزيت |

**ex :** - People put candles on the cake.

- لاحظ أن : يمكننا وضع ظروف الزمان والمكان فى بداية أو نهاية الجملة.

### 1. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. She has played tennis ............ a long time.
   a. into b. for c. during d. on
2. He usually works ............ home on Saturdays.
   a. next b. during c. for d. at
3. Add some salt............ the soup, please.
   a. from b. into c. on d. during
4. They serve different desserts ............ the table at the wedding reception.
   a. on b. of c. from d. in
5. They like to stay with their grandparents ............ the summer vacation.
   a. off b. during c. from d. of
6. What do you do ............ New Year ?
   a. into b. with c. at d. of
7. ............ this time of the year, we go camping in the desert.
   a. At b. Of c. On d. To

### 2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. They write their son's name ............ (at) the cake.
2. Put the pies ............ (on) the oil to fry them.
3. Heba is standing ............ (next) me.
4. We lived in Alexandria ............ (of) a long time.

DAY 4

# General Exercises collected from SB

تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب

## 1 Vocabulary

◉ **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

### Unit 1 — *Student's Book*

1. A ............ is a model of a person, animal or object, sometimes made of stone. *(SB page 8)*
   a. statue b. pyramid c. tower d. catacomb
2. I took ............ in a project where young people write stories using AI. *(SB page 6)*
   a. care b. forward c. part d. away
3. How many ............ did Omar score in the tournament ? *(SB page 5)*
   a. roles b. goals c. structures d. journeys
4. A/An ............ is a thing that someone has done very well. *(SB page 13)*
   a. journey b. tournament c. achievement d. dream
5. Why did the ............ ask Omar to join the team at the sports club ? *(SB page 5)*
   a. doctor b. scientist c. coach d. farmer

### Unit 2 — *Student's Book*

1. The man who gets married is the ............. *(SB page 16)*
   a. bride b. guest c. groom d. wedding
2. Always use a/an ............ website to buy or sell something. *(SB page 22)*
   a. well-known b. far c. ancient d. difficult
3. A ............ is something that is difficult and tests your ability. *(SB page 25)*
   a. prize b. tradition c. challenge d. theme
4. The marriage ............ is the paper that the people who are getting married sign. *(SB page 16)*
   a. reception b. contract c. event d. file
5. She had been ............ with some difficult family news. *(SB page 24)*
   a. dealing b. giving c. sending d. replying

DAY 4

## Unit 3

*Student's Book*

1. I'm learning ............! I want to be able to help people. *(SB page 29)*
   a. first aid  b. art  c. geocaching  d. math
2. He is a ............ , and we help to make food for hungry people at his restaurant. *(SB page 29)*
   a. teacher  b. photographer
   c. chef  d. pilot
3. Put these beads onto some ............ and there you go-a bracelet! *(SB page 32)*
   a. rock  b. string  c. net  d. ball
4. ............ are pairs of numbers used to find the location of something. *(SB page 36)*
   a. Treasures  b. Notes  c. Hobbies  d. Coordinates
5. We could ............ ideas, give each other tips to improve our work, and have fun! *(SB page 36)*
   a. forget  b. miss  c. share  d. hide

## Unit 4

*Student's Book*

1. He felt terrible, and very ............. All his money was gone. *(SB page 52)*
   a. pleased  b. embarrassed  c. grateful  d. cautious
2. Long passwords are a good idea as they're hard to ........... . *(SB page 48)*
   a. accept  b. hide  c. guess  d. send
3. Don't ............ friend requests from people you don't know. *(SB page 48)*
   a. destroy  b. accept  c. skip  d. lose
4. Tell an adult if someone is ............ you. And always be kind online. *(SB page 48)*
   a. bullying  b. calling  c. helping  d. teaching
5. A/An .......... is a small electronic machine. *(SB page 50)*
   a. app  b. button  c. tool  d. device

## Unit 5

*Student's Book*

1. The trees are so dry, a ............ started and burnt them down. *(SB page 56)*
   a. flood  b. wildlife  c. wildfire  d. drought
2. Water from the river is coming into our house. There's a ............ . *(SB page 56)*
   a. fire  b. drought  c. storm  d. flood

3. The dangerous metals and ............ in dirty water can make people very ill. *(SB page 58)*
   a. wind b. bacteria c. climate d. health
4. On ............ means not switched on but still using power. *(SB page 61)*
   a. offline b. time c. board d. stand-by
5. "........." is the planet we live on. *(SB page 64)*
   a. Suggest b. Earth c. Grow d. Cycle

## Unit 6 — *Student's Book*

1. We ............ the potatoes in hot water. *(SB page 69)*
   a. roast b. bake c. boil d. fry
2. We all ordered sayadieh el samak as our main .......... . *(SB page 70)*
   a. dessert b. starter c. soup d. course
3. Which celebration food is usually ............ with bread ? *(SB page 74)*
   a. served b. worked c. hurt d. recycled
4. ............ means used again in a different way. *(SB page 77)*
   a. Painted b. Recycled c. Dried d. Fried
5. It was a beautiful day and the flowers were in .......... *(SB page 76)*
   a. waste b. dark c. bloom d. ground

# 2 Structures

- **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

## Unit 1 — *Student's Book*

1. Two months ago, I ............ helping out at a project in my city. *(SB page 6)*
   a. start b. starts c. started d. starting
2. How often did you ............ sports ? *(SB page 10)*
   a. doing b. do c. done d. did
3. Yesterday, I ............ want to leave the garden. *(SB page 7)*
   a. won't b. didn't c. wasn't d. can't
4. I ............ games on my mobile phone last summer. *(SB page 11)*
   a. never plays b. played sometimes
   c. usually played d. usually play

5. I ............ tired in the evening. *(SB page 11)*
   a. was usually   b. often were
   c. sometimes was   d. never are
6. We liked to imagine that we ............ famous football players! *(SB page 5)*
   a. do   b. are   c. did   d. were
7. Where ............ Younis help out in the summer vacation ? *(SB page 10)*
   a. did   b. was   c. is   d. were
8. Did you ............ anything interesting online this summer ? *(SB page 10)*
   a. learned   b. learn   c. learns   d. learning
9. I ............ watch television. *(SB page 11)*
   a. often didn't   b. wasn't always
   c. didn't often   d. always wasn't
10. ............ did you leave your town ? - Never. *(SB page 11)*
   a. Where   b. Who   c. How   d. How often

## Unit 2 — Student's Book

1. I'm sending you a photo of me at my ............ birthday party last week. *(SB page 18)*
   a. grandma'   b. grandma's   c. grandma   d. grandmas
2. Is this a photo of ............ wedding, Samir ? *(SB page 19)*
   a. he   b. hers   c. your   d. you
3. My ............ house in Luxor is near the river. *(SB page 19)*
   a. grandparents   b. grandparent
   c. grandparents's   d. grandparents'
4. Can you ............ the phone, please ? *(SB page 23)*
   a. answers   b. answer   c. answered   d. to answer
5. ............ you fetch my coat ? It's in the hall. *(SB page 23)*
   a. Are   b. Have   c. Does   d. Will
6. Last weekend in Luxor, ............ cousin Amira got married to Ayman. *(SB page 17)*
   a. mine   b. my   c. I   d. me
7. There is a shop there that has some beautiful clothes in ............ windows. *(SB page 18)*
   a. its   b. they   c. their   d. it
8. Sorry, I ............ answer you at the moment. I'm studying. *(SB page 23)*
   a. could   b. can't   c. can   d. couldn't
9. Can you tell me what they are doing ? - Yes, I ............ . *(SB page 22)*
   a. don't   b. won't   c. can   d. have

10. Will you ............ the window ? It's hot. *(SB page 23)*
 a. opens b. to open c. opened d. open

## Unit 3 — Student's Book

1. What are you ............ ? *(SB page 32)*
 a. drink b. drinks c. drinking d. drank
2. I ............ eating at the moment. *(SB page 31)*
 a. can't b. wasn't c. isn't d. am not
3. We're helping ............ with his homework tonight. *(SB page 35)*
 a. his b. him c. he d. hers
4. Do you want to come for a walk with ............ ? *(SB page 35)*
 a. they b. I c. we d. me
5. ............ is learning new skills in after-school classes with us. *(SB page 35)*
 a. He b. His c. Her d. Him
6. At the moment, two students are ............ . *(SB page 31)*
 a. runs b. ran c. running d. run
7. ............ you walking to the café ? *(SB page 31)*
 a. Do b. Can c. Are d. Will
8. I always ask ............ for advice when I have a problem. *(SB page 35)*
 a. we b. them c. they d. our
9. ............ misses geocaching with her friends in Alexandria. *(SB page 37)*
 a. We b. Her c. Him d. She
10. Here's a drawing ............ did of my cat last week. *(SB page 38)*
 a. my b. mine c. I d. me

## Unit 4 — Student's Book

1. First, ............ the app to open it. *(SB page 46)*
 a. taps b. tap c. to tap d. tapped
2. ............ the color bar to make an object purple. *(SB page 46)*
 a. Use b. Using c. To use d. Uses
3. ............ post or share anything nasty or false. *(SB page 48)*
 a. Wasn't b. Didn't c. Don't d. Haven't
4. ............ the camera and take the photo! *(SB page 47)*
 a. Pointed b. Pointing c. Point d. Points
5. Don't ............ to connect your headphones. *(SB page 47)*
 a. forgets b. forgot c. to forget d. forget

6. She can't use her computer if she ............ remember the password. *(SB page 51)*
   a. didn't   b. isn't   c. doesn't   d. couldn't
7. What ............ if you click on this picture ? *(SB page 51)*
   a. happening   b. happen   c. happened   d. happens
8. If you read a lot, you ............ more words. *(SB page 51)*
   a. learned   b. learns   c. learn   d. learning
9. If fresh water ............ to a temperature of 0 °C, it always freezes. *(SB page 51)*
   a. cooling   b. cooled   c. cool   d. cools
10. If it rains in the desert, plants can suddenly ............ . *(SB page 51)*
   a. appears   b. appeared   c. to appear   d. appear

## Unit 5 — Student's Book

1. On average, temperatures are higher ............ they were in the past. *(SB page 58)*
   a. as   b. that   c. then   d. than
2. The ............ thing that could happen is that no action is taken. *(SB page 58)*
   a. worse   b. worst   c. bad   d. badly
3. Showers are a great way to save water ............ energy. *(SB page 60)*
   a. so   b. and   c. but   d. because
4. This is ............ photo of the Sphinx at Giza. *(SB page 63)*
   a. no article   b. the   c. a   d. an
5. There are so many stars in ............ sky. *(SB page 63)*
   a. no article   b. the   c. a   d. an
6. Making ............ electricity uses a lot of the planet's resources. *(SB page 60)*
   a. the   b. no article   c. an   d. a
7. Water scarcity is one of the ............ worrying problems. *(SB page 58)*
   a. than   b. as   c. most   d. more
8. There is ............ area in our town with lots of trees. *(SB page 63)*
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
9. Why can drinking dirty water be ............ for children than adults ? *(SB page 58)*
   a. worse   b. worst   c. bad   d. as bad
10. Saving ............ energy at home makes a difference to climate change. *(SB page 61)*
   a. a   b. an   c. no article   d. the

## Unit 6 — *Student's Book*

1. ............ types of traditional food do you like ? *(SB page 68)*
   a. How b. When c. Which d. Who
2. How ............ did you pay for the meal ? - 100 L.E. *(SB page 71)*
   a. many b. much c. long d. often
3. What did your cook ............ on your plates ? *(SB page 71)*
   a. putting b. to put c. puts d. put
4. How did you ............ the restaurant manager's email address ? *(SB page 71)*
   a. finds b. found c. find d. finding
5. ............ the month of Ramadan, Egyptians often eat a special dessert . *(SB page 73)*
   a. During b. Of c. At d. An
6. ............ do Magdy and Sami do with the coffee grounds ? *(SB page 77)*
   a. What b. Why c. Where d. Who
7. ............ this time of the year, we always cook special noodles. *(SB page 75)*
   a. At b. In c. On d. Of
8. People bake a coin ............ the pudding. *(SB page 75)*
   a. next b. into c. at d. during
9. Where ............ sit in the restaurant ? *(SB page 71)*
   a. she did b. I did c. you do d. did she
10. Fry the potatoes balls ............ a lot of oil. *(SB page 69)*
   a. into b. on c. at d. during

- **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

## Unit 1 — *Student's Book*

1. ............ **(Do)** you do your homework last week ? *(SB page 7)*
2. Before I started, I ............ **(not know)** that AI can write really good stories. *(SB page 6)*
3. Who did Younis ............ **(plays)** football with ? *(SB page 10)*
4. I ............ **(went often)** online at home in the evening. *(SB page 10)*

## Unit 2 — Student's Book

1. This is our cat. ............ (**It**) name is Fluffy. *(SB page 19)*
2. Can you ............ (**feeding**) the dog this evening ? *(SB page 23)*
3. This is my brother Yehia. ............ (**He**) hair is short and curly. *(SB page 19)*
4. My ............ (**dad**) friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month. *(SB page 18)*

## Unit 3 — Student's Book

1. I have a journal and I write in ............ (**him**) every night. *(SB page 35)*
2. Why don't ............ (**us**) sell some of our old toys ? *(SB page 32)*
3. What is Sahar ............ (**use**) to make jewelery ? *(SB page 32)*
4. We want ............ (**she**) to spend her free time with us to relax. *(SB page 34)*

## Unit 4 — Student's Book

1. ............ (**Dragging**) a photo to a folder to save it. *(SB page 46)*
2. ............ (**Not accept**) friend requests from people you don't know. *(SB page 48)*
3. If you ............ (**wanted**) a good phone, you have to spend a lot of money. *(SB page 51)*
4. If we cycle to the beach, it ............ (**be**) much quicker. *(SB page 51)*

## Unit 5 — Student's Book

1. ............ (**A**) Sphinx at Giza is made of sandstone. *(SB page 62)*
2. My family lives on ............ (**an**) farm. *(SB page 57)*
3. On average, temperatures are ............ (**high**) than they were in the past. *(SB page 59)*
4. The ............ (**big**) impact can be on children. *(SB page 58)*

## Unit 6 — Student's Book

1. ............ (**What**) did you invite to the birthday meal ? *(SB page 71)*
2. Where did you ............ (**sat**) in the restaurant ? *(SB page 71)*
3. I like to make qatayef ............ (**during**) home. *(SB page 75)*
4. ............ (**When**) are the ingredients ? *(SB page 79)*

# Sample Tests

## Sample Test 1

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

1. Yasser is back to ............ this week.
   a. theater b. club c. school d. park
2. He often played ............ with some friends at the park.
   a. tennis b. volleyball c. football d. basketball
3. Last week, they played in a ............ .
   a. competition b. tournament c. match d. race
4. They didn't ............, but they had fun.
   a. watch b. play c. win d. lose

**2. Complete the following dialog :**

**Abdelrahman and Waleed are talking about summer vacation.**

**Abdelrahman :** Hello, Waleed. How was your summer vacation ?

**Waleed :** Hello, Abdelrahman. (1) ................................................ . I learned quite a lot.

**Abdelrahman :** (2) ................................................ ?

**Waleed :** No, I didn't learn the things we usually study at school .

**Abdelrahman :** (3) ................................................ ?

**Waleed :** I volunteered to teach adults who can't read and write Arabic .

**Abdelrahman :** Could you teach them easily ?

**Waleed :** (4) ................................................ . It was fun to be a teacher instead of a student.

### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Thanks to the fertile land near the River Nile, the Ancient Egyptians could grow crops and **raise** animals for food. They had lots of good quality ingredients, and they used them to cook a surprising variety of different dishes.

Bread was very popular and cheap to make. The Ancient Egyptians baked it in many different ways, often adding oil, spices or chopped vegetables to make it tastier. One kind of bread was aish baladi, which is still popular in Egypt today.

However, in the past, people baked it slowly in special clay ovens which they heated with wood fires. Today, we can bake it quickly in electric ovens!

Another food that was popular in Ancient Egypt was hummus. To make **it**, people boiled and mashed chickpeas, then mixed them with oil, garlic, and salt. In fact, there is an Egyptian recipe for hummus still used today that is nearly 1,000 years old!

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. The Ancient Egyptians had lots of good quality .............
   a. fries　　b. ingredients　　c. kebabs　　d. classes
2. The underlined word "**raise**" means ............ .
   a. give　　b. throw　　c. keep　　d. pay
3. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ............ .
   a. bread　　b. oven　　c. hummus　　d. oil

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the text.

   ..............................................................................................................

5. Where could people bake bread slowly in the past ?

   ..............................................................................................................

6. Why do you think the fertile land was useful for the Ancient Egyptians ?

   ..............................................................................................................

### 4. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. There is an Egyptian ............ for making hummus still used today.
   a. bun　　b. pan　　c. recipe　　d. oven

2. The last time we had rain was three months ago. There's a ............ .
   a. flood   b. drought   c. wildfire   d. storm
3. Many tourists like visiting the historical places in ............ Egypt.
   a. a   b. an   c. the   d. no article
4. ............ can make power from the sun.
   a. Airplanes   b. Solar panels   c. Emojis   d. ATMs
5. We play tennis on the tennis ............ .
   a. track   b. court   c. pool   d. hall
6. Can you ............ the birds in the morning ?
   a. fed   b. feed   c. feeding   d. feeds
7. A/An ............ is the person who wins a competition.
   a. opponent   b. coach   c. champion   d. loser
8. They build ............ underground to bury the dead in Ancient Egypt.
   a. temples   b. catacombs   c. statues   d. obelisks
9. You can invite 100 ............ to the wedding reception.
   a. waiters   b. cooks   c. brides   d. guests
10. Dad arrives at 5 o'clock. Let's go to meet ............ .
   a. he's   b. him   c. he   d. his

**5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Where did you ............ (went) last week ?
2. Amira is my............ (sister) daughter.
3. Aswan is ............ (hot) than Cairo.
4. ............ (What) often do you play football ?

**6. Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Your favorite dish"

......................................................................................................
......................................................................................................
......................................................................................................
......................................................................................................
......................................................................................................
......................................................................................................
......................................................................................................

## Sample Test 2

تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Hawawshi is a type of ............ .
   a. drink b. food c. vegetable d. spice

2. It's bread with ............, vegetables, and spices inside it.
   a. meat b. chicken c. cheese d. sugar

3. You can bake it in the ............ .
   a. pan b. oven c. fridge d. microwave

4. You can eat it ............. It is delicious.
   a. cold b. cool c. warm d. frozen

### 2. Complete the following dialog :

**Maha and Nagwa are talking about their favorite sport.**

**Maha** : What is your favorite sport, Nagwa ?
**Nagwa** : (1) .............................................. .
**Maha** : Where do you play tennis ?
**Nagwa** : (2) .............................................. .
**Maha** : (3) .............................................. ?
**Nagwa** : I go to the club twice a week. (4) .............................................. ?
**Maha** : My favorite sport is table tennis.
**Nagwa** : Interesting ! Is it a hard sport ?
**Maha** : (5) .............................................. . Let's play a game on Sunday.
**Nagwa** : Great idea ! I agree.

### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Water scarcity is one of the most worrying problems facing the world today. Although water covers more than 70 % of Earth's surface, two billion people don't have enough fresh, clean water for drinking, washing, cooking, and growing food. Even in countries where there are good water resources, the water cannot always reach the people who need it.

One of the reasons for water **scarcity** is climate change. On average, temperatures are higher than they were in the past. In some places, there is also less rain, so there isn't as much water in lakes and rivers. Water scarcity affects people in different ways. Farmers, for example, can't grow

as many crops as they used to. Without crops to sell, **they** can't earn enough money to pay for clean water. A lack of water can also mean that people have to walk a long way to find it, which can have a negative effect on their health. The biggest impact can be on children, who have less time to spend in school.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to .............
   a. countries b. farmers c. children d. problems
2. The underlined word "**scarcity**" has the same meaning as " ............. ".
   a. average b. plenty c. lack d. resource
3. ............. billion people don't have enough fresh, clean water.
   a. Four b. Two c. Three d. One

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ..........................................................................................
5. How much does water cover of Earth's surface ?
   ..........................................................................................
6. Do you think water scarcity affects farmers ?
   ..........................................................................................

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. My brother has ............. because he was out in the sun for a long time.
   a. an earache b. a backache c. a heatstroke d. a toothache
2. The Ancient Egyptians liked to ............. meat and fish over a fire.
   a. dry b. cover c. bake d. grill
3. Don't leave electronic devices on stand-by as this ............. a lot of energy.
   a. raises b. produces c. consumes d. conserves
4. Try not to ............. friend requests from people you don't know.
   a. refuse b. accept c. protect d. hide
5. My mom is a good cook. I want to learn ............. from her.
   a. spaces b. first aids c. classes d. recipes
6. Do you have time to ............. up with me in front of the club tomorrow ?
   a. make b. meet c. get d. give

7. A/An ............ is a thing that someone has done very well.
   a. achievement  b. champion
   c. tournament  d. vacation

8. Last week, I ............ from Luxor to Aswan by train.
   a. travel  b. traveled  c. travels  d. traveling

9. Cairo is ............ than Aswan.
   a. most crowded  b. crowded
   c. the most crowded  d. more crowded

10. Taking regular exercise helps ............ to relax.
   a. he  b. she  c. us  d. they

**5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Can you ............ (looks) after your little brother at the park ?
2. Adam is ............ (an) new boy in our class this year.
3. We ............ (go) to the park yesterday.
4. The river is ............ (much) polluted than it was before.

**6. Write a forum post of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"Summer vacation activities"

..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................................

# Sample Test 3

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Fareeda is a good friend and a ............ person.
   a. hard b. kind c. selfish d. cruel
2. She works hard at ............ .
   a. park b. home c. school d. hospital
3. She studies all the time and she is very ............ .
   a. stressed b. relaxed c. angry d. annoyed
4. She always asks her teacher for extra ............ .
   a. exercises b. marks c. homework d. ideas

## 2. Complete the following dialog :

**Mohamed is asking Ali about his visit to the sports center last weekend.**

**Mohamed :** Where did you go on the weekend ?

**Ali :** (1) ........................................ .

**Mohamed :** (2) ........................................ ?

**Ali :** With my family.

**Mohamed :** (3) ........................................ ?

**Ali :** We swam there. They have a great indoor swimming pool.

**Mohamed :** Did you meet anyone of your friends there ?

**Ali :** (4) ........................................ .

**Mohamed :** Did you enjoy your time with them ?

**Ali :** (5) ........................................ .

## 3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

nature - her - often - photography - friends

Salma, a 15-year- old girl from Egypt, loved photography. She (1) .................. shared her photos on a website for young photographers. One day, she got a comment from Ashly, a girl of her age from Australia, who liked (2) .................. photos. They started chatting and found out they had a lot in common. They both loved taking pictures of (3) .................. .

Soon, they were talking every day, and decided to do a 30 - day (4) .................. challenge together. Each day, they had to take a photo on a specific theme and share it. They enjoyed the challenge and became closer friends.

**4. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Ancient Egyptians built great buildings that we can enjoy visiting today, for example temples. A temple is a place where people come together to pray in Ancient Egypt. One of my favorite temples is the temple of Edfu. The temple of Edfu is an Ancient Egyptian temple in the town of Edfu. The town is on the west bank of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan. The temple is about 2,250 years old. It is important for understanding life in Ancient Egypt because the writing on **its** walls gives us very interesting and **useful** information about language and religion over 2,000 years ago.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. The Ancient Egyptians built temples to ............ inside them.
   a. sell things  b. pray  c. do sports  d. read maps
2. The underlined pronoun "**its**" refers to " ............ ".
   a. Ancient Egypt  b. the temple  c. Edfu city  d. the River Nile
3. The opposite of the word "**useful**" is " ............ ".
   a. interesting  b. good  c. helpful  d. harmful

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the text about ?

   ..........................................................................................

5. How old is the temple of Edfu ?

   ..........................................................................................

6. Why do you think the temple is important for us ?

   ..........................................................................................

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. The trees are so dry, a ............ started and burnt them down.
   a. flood  b. farm  c. drought  d. wildfire
2. I always put ............ in the recycling bins.
   a. camp  b. trash  c. map  d. treasure
3. Don't ............ on a link if you don't know who sent it.
   a. clicked  b. clicking  c. clicks  d. click
4. When you write a journal, you describe your ............ in writing.
   a. classes  b. thoughts  c. courses  d. sports
5. The man who gets married is the ............ .
   a. bride  b. guest  c. groom  d. seller
6. This is my brother Fares. ............ hair is short and curly.
   a. Her  b. Hers  c. She  d. His

7. If I ............ to bed late, I'm always tired the next morning.
   a. goes b. going c. went d. go

8. They use paper ............ to drink juice through it.
   a. straw b. stall c. tunnel d. task

9. "............" is the value of something.
   a. Structure b. Worth c. Nature d. Talent

10. Kareem is a/an ............ boy, he always volunteers to help in the community.
    a. lazy b. busy c. helpful d. embarrassed

**6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Look! A car ............ (come) very fast.
2. Bassant ............ (not/be) at school yesterday.
3. ............ (You will) help me with my homework ?
4. Ahmed is the ............ (tall) one in his family.

**7. Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words :**

To your friend Mahmoud to tell him about cyberbullying. Your name is Ramy and your email address is rami40@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is mahmoud20@gmail.com.

**From** : ..............................................

**To** : ..............................................

**Subject** : ..............................................

..............................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................................................................................

..............................................

..............................................

# Sample Test 4

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Cyberbullying is a big ............ for young people.
   a. request   b. problem   c. hobby   d. part
2. It's easier for bullies to post horrible ............ online.
   a. information   b. accounts   c. messages   d. requests
3. Bullies can ............ behind a false name.
   a. hide   b. save   c. guess   d. accept
4. Tell a / an ............ if someone is bullying you.
   a. friend   b. adult   c. person   d. character

## 2. Complete the following dialog :

**Ahmed meets a tourist from England in Cairo.**

**Ahmed :** Welcome to Egypt. Where do you come from ?

**Tourist :** (1) ................................................ .

**Ahmed :** Is this your first visit to Egypt ?

**Tourist :** (2) ................................................ . I visited it before.

**Ahmed :** (3) ................................................ ?

**Tourist :** I visited the Pyramids at Giza and the Temples of Karnak in Luxor.

**Ahmed :** (4) ................................................ ?

**Tourist :** I will stay here for three weeks.

**Ahmed :** I hope you will enjoy your time in Egypt.

**Tourist :** Thank you.

## 3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Hi Asser,

Thanks for your email! You asked me about my free time. This is an important year at school and I don't have much free time, so I like to use it well!

In the mornings before school, I write a "To do" list of things I need to do. It really helps me to **organize** my day. After school, I do different things. It's important to take regular exercise, so on Tuesdays and Thursdays I play football with my friends. I like playing with them!

They help me a lot. I also like to learn new skills, so I go to evening classes. At the moment, I am learning first aid! I want to be able to help people.

On the weekends, I spend time with my family. We like to go for walks in nature. We don't take our phones, so we can enjoy what is around us. There are some really lovely parks and gardens in this city. Sometimes my brother and I help in the community. Tell me how **you** spend your free time. Maybe I can get some good ideas!

Bye!

Mahmoud

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. The underlined word "**organize**" means to ............ .
   a. forget b. remember c. arrange d. understand
2. Mahmoud plays football on Tuesdays and ............ .
   a. Wednesdays b. Fridays
   c. Thursdays d. Mondays
3. The underlined pronoun "**you**" refers to ............ .
   a. Asser's brother b. Mahmoud's brother
   c. Asser d. Mahmoud

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title for the text.
   ..............................................................................................
5. How does Mahmoud learn new skills ?
   ..............................................................................................
6. Why do you think Mahmoud learns first aid ?
   ..............................................................................................

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. Mom has good quality ............ to cook different dishes.
   a. ingredients b. journals c. activities d. exercises
2. They don't have enough water to drink right now. There's water ............ .
   a. taste b. plenty c. scarcity d. spring
3. Don't leave electronic devices on stand-by as this ............ a lot of energy.
   a. grows b. saves c. keeps d. consumes

4. It's a good idea to have a/an ............ password because it's hard for hackers to guess.
   a. strong  b. rude  c. easy  d. short
5. I like to write a list of things. It helps me to ............ my day.
   a. send  b. organize  c. miss  d. pay
6. There is a ............ next month, so I'm training for that right now.
   a. community  b. tournament  c. forest  d. sports center
7. Omar ............ to teach adults to read and write in Arabic for free.
   a. volunteered  b. understood  c. gave  d. noticed
8. We live next to ............ public library.
   a. a  b. the  c. an  d. no article
9. He ............ tired in the evening as he worked all days.
   a. usually  b. usually was  c. was usually  d. were usually
10. If you ............ to bed late, you are always tired the next morning.
   a. goes  b. go  c. went  d. going

## 5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. There is ............ (a) area in our city with lots of trees.
2. The ............ (boy's) names are Ali and Omar.
3. If water is 100 °C, it ............ (boiling).
4. We're going for a walk. Do you want to come with ............ (our) ?

## 6. Write a forum post of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

"How to stay safe online"

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

# Sample Test 5

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. Ali watched a ............ last year.
   a. post b. message c. documentary d. poster

2. It was about the effects of human ............ on the planet.
   a. comments b. resources c. activities d. changes

3. In the past, he always traveled to school by ............ .
   a. car b. plane c. train d. bus

4. It only takes ............ minutes to get to his school now.
   a. 10 b. 15 c. 20 d. 30

## 2. Complete the following dialog :

**Nada asks Huda some questions about technological devices.**

**Nada :** Hi, Huda. Do you think technology is important in our life ?

**Huda:** Hi, Nada. (1) ............................................... .

**Nada :** (2) ............................................... ?

**Huda:** Because it helps us do many things in our daily life .

**Nada :** Which device do you think is the most important ?

**Huda:** (3) ............................................... .

**Nada :** (4) ............................................... ?

**Huda:** I bought a smart phone three months ago .

**Nada :** Why do you need a smart phone in your daily life ?

**Huda:** (5) ............................................... . Text messages are really easier.

## 3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

running – team – captain – court – are

Today is the school sports day, our students aren't having lessons this afternoon. At the moment, two students are (1) ............ and their parents are watching them. That's great! Some students are playing tennis on the tennis (2) ............ behind me. It looks like an interesting game. The football teams (3) ............ getting ready for their match. Wait a minute! One student is walking onto the football field. He's the (4) ............ of one of the teams ! Now both of the teams are there. It's time for the game to start !

**4. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Last weekend in Luxor, my cousin Amira got married to Ayman. It was a really fun day. I have a large family and more than half of the wedding guests were members of my family! I loved seeing my whole family come together to celebrate with Amira and Ayman. I saw aunts and uncles who live a long way from us and who I don't see very often.

The wedding service was really **beautiful**. When Amira arrived, you could hear everyone say "Wow!". She looked so beautiful and her wedding dress was amazing. **It** was white, and she was wearing a beautiful gold necklace and bracelets that were a gift from Ayman. Ayman's traditional galabeya was white. The bride and the groom looked very happy!

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. Amira's wedding dress was ............ .
   a. normal b. amazing c. ordinary d. usual
2. The underlined adjective "**beautiful**" can be replaced by "............".
   a. ancient b. traditional c. terrible d. lovely
3. The underlined pronoun "**It**" refers to the ............ .
   a. bracelet b. necklace c. galabeya d. wedding dress

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   ................................................................................................

5. Who was wearing a galabeya ?

   ................................................................................................

6. What do you think of the wedding ?

   ................................................................................................

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. To win the game, you have to play faster than other ............ .
   a. opponents b. coaches c. awards d. roads
2. Water from the river is coming into our house. There's a ............ .
   a. flood b. drought c. wildfire d. storm
3. Can you see how strong the wind is ? There is a ............ .
   a. river b. drought c. storm d. flood
4. If water cools to a temperature of 0 °C, it always ............ into solid ice.
   a. melts b. freezes c. disappears d. breaks
5. My family and I like to ............ for walks in nature.
   a. go b. have c. take d. do

6. The woman who gets married is the ..........
   a. seller  b. bride  c. groom  d. guest
7. It was a very .......... day, but really fun.
   a. relaxing  b. exciting  c. tiring  d. interesting
8. I like my laptop .......... my games console.
   a. but  b. so  c. because  d. and
9. Can you .......... the phone, please ?
   a. to answer  b. answers  c. answer  d. answering
10. She .......... math at the moment.
   a. was studying  b. study
   c. studies  d. is studying

**6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. He .......... (repair) his computer now.
2. We moved to Cairo .......... (next) week.
3. .......... (When) did you buy your bag ? - At the market.
4. If we don't water plants, they .......... (died).

**7. Write an email of about (60 - 80) words :**

To your friend Heba to tell her about birthday celebrations in your country. Your name is Nehal and your email address is nehal@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is heba200@gmail.com.

**From** : ..........
**To** : ..........
**Subject** : ..........

..........

# Sample Test 6

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. ............ months ago, I started helping out at a project.
   a. Four b. Two c. Three d. Five
2. The project was in my ............ .
   a. school b. city c. village d. neighborhood
3. In this project, young people help adults who can't read ............ .
   a. Arabic b. English c. French d. math
4. My ............ was Mrs Azza.
   a. manager b. teacher c. leader d. partner

## 2. Complete the following dialog :

**Omar is asking Hazem about his summer vacation.**

**Omar** : Hello, Hazem ! How was your summer vacation ?

**Hazem** : Hello, Omar ! (1) .................................................................... .

**Omar** : Great ! (2) .................................................................... ?

**Hazem** : I did a lot of fun activities.

**Omar** : What activities did you do ?

**Hazem** : (3) .................................................................... .

**Omar** : I like volunteering, too.

**Hazem** : (4) .................................................................... ?

**Omar** : I volunteered at a community garden.

## 3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Dear Jana,

I'm writing to you about my best friend Fareeda. She's a good friend and a kind person. She works hard at school. My friends and I are really worried about her. She studies all the time and she is very **stressed**. Her parents work hard, and they want her to do well at school. She wants to make them happy. She doesn't go out at breaktime and she always asks our teacher for extra homework. Last week, she asked him to give her exercises for the weekend! He was surprised! We want her to spend her free time with us to relax. Is it a good idea to ask her to play sports with

us ? It's fun! Or maybe can we all join a club to learn new skills? **She** is good at it! What do you think ?
Rasha 12

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. What does Fareeda do during her free time ? – She ............ .
   a. studies b. relaxes c. learns new skills d. plays sports
2. The opposite of the underlined word "**stressed**" is ............ .
   a. upset b. nervous c. tired d. relaxed
3. The underlined pronoun "**She**" refers to ............ .
   a. Rasha b. Jana c. Dalia d. Fareeda

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Why do you think Rasha is a good friend ?
   ...........................................................................................
5. What did Fareeda ask her teacher for ?
   ...........................................................................................
6. Give a suitable title to the text.
   ...........................................................................................

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. ............ are underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead.
   a. Temples b. Catacombs c. Statues d. Obelisks
2. We are ............ to the football field now.
   a. to go b. goes c. going d. go
3. Nada wants ............ brother to do homework.
   a. he b. her c. him d. she
4. What activities ............ you do last weekend ?
   a. does b. doing c. do d. did
5. Everyone can ............ great things if they work hard.
   a. hate b. stop c. achieve d. stay
6. The ............ came late to her wedding.
   a. volunteer b. bride c. guest d. groom
7. He learns how to take beautiful pictures in ............ course.
   a. space b. sports c. photography d. engineering

8. I write a ............ to describe my thoughts and activities in writing.
   a. journal  b. quiz  c. project  d. goal
9. He takes courses to ............ out how to do different activities.
   a. help  b. find  c. get  d. go
10. They did a ............ to know who can finish faster.
   a. tunnel  b. challenge  c. map  d. forum

## 5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Did you ............ (playing) this song on your piano ?
2. She ............ (usually was) late for the classes.
3. This is the ............ (childrens') art room.
4. My mother gave ............ (we) one hour to decide what to eat for lunch.

## 6. Write a paragraph of about (100 - 120) words on :

"Ways to spend your free time"

........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................
........................................................................................................................

# Sample Test 7

تصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. The world's ............ are full of plastic.
   a. river b. oceans c. homes d. cities
2. Plastic is very ............ for life in the ocean.
   a. useful b. good c. bad d. necessary
3. Ocean clean-up projects collect ............ in the water.
   a. rubbish b. grass c. plants d. ships
4. Ships take it back to land for ............ .
   a. fires b. recycling c. planting d. planes

## 2. Complete the following dialog :

**Amir is helping Nader create an account on Facebook :**

**Nader** : Can you help me create an account on Facebook, Amir ?

**Amir** : (1) .................................................................. .

**Nader** : (2) .................................................................. ?

**Amir** : To have strong password, you should use a mix of letters, numbers and special characters.

**Nader** : Do you think long passwords are stronger than short ones ?

**Amir** : (3) .................................................................. .

**Nader** : (4) .................................................................. ?

**Amir** : Because they are hard to guess.

**Nader** : What happens if I forget my password ?

**Amir** : (5) .................................................................. . So you need to save it.

## 3. Read and complete the text with words from the following list :

event - them - can - competition - smart

This month, 24 talented students from Egypt, aged 14-18, participated in the International Science and Engineering Fair (ISEF) in the United States. It's a (1) ......................... to develop a science or engineering project that solves a world problem. Students from 80 countries participated in the (2) ......................... They have to use their scientific research skills and work in groups or on their own. Winners (3) ......................... study for one year

in the United States. This year, Egyptian students won many prizes for their inventions! Some of (4) .................... had great new ideas for technologies that solve problems !

**4. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

Hi, I'm Leonie! I live in a village in Andalusia in Spain. Hot weather in summer is normal for us, but this summer the highest temperature was 46°C. That's about five degrees warmer than it normally is. My family is having a lot of problems because of the hot weather here.

My family lives on a farm. Because of the hot weather, there's a drought in the south of Spain right now. The tomato plants on our farm are getting smaller and some of their leaves are brown. There's a drought here right now, so we can't give the plants as much water as **they** need. Because of this, my family don't have enough tomatoes to sell. My dad is looking for a second job so he can **earn** more money.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. The main idea of the text is about " ............ ".
   a. Jobs  b. Villages  c. Weather  d. Money
2. The underlined word "**they**" refers to ............ .
   a. villages  b. beaches  c. family  d. plants
3. The underlined word "**earn**" means ............ money.
   a. give  b. get  c. talk  d. sell

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Why do you think the hot weather is a big problem ?

   ..........................................................................................................

5. Where does Leonie live ?

   ..........................................................................................................

6. What did Leonie's father do to have enough money ?

   ..........................................................................................................

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :**

1. Yesterday, I ............ an amazing app on my phone from the online store.
   a. took  b. downloaded  c. clicked  d. sent
2. ............ talented student from our school won an international competition.
   a. The  b. An  c. A  d. No article
3. The tourist had a/an ............ when he walked in the sun for a long time.
   a. heatstroke  b. storm  c. wind  d. cure

4. To ............ means to make something dirty or harmful.
   a. destroy b. pollute c. kill d. waste
5. You shouldn't ............ anything nasty or false on your account. That's really rude.
   a. create b. clean c. post d. delete
6. This machine ............ much electricity. It's useless.
   a. protects b. saves c. consumes d. makes
7. People bake bread in ............ .
   a. water b. ovens c. oil d. crops
8. Water ............ is one of the most worrying problems facing the world today.
   a. reason b. average c. scarcity d. temperature
9. Doing a sport is ............ than playing a video game.
   a. best b. good c. better d. more
10. If he sleeps early, he ............ up early.
   a. get b. to get c. gets d. got

**6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Ali is tall, but Omar is ............ (tallest).
2. We don't have enough water if there ............ (be) a drought.
3. Mangoes are the ............ (delicious) fruits.
4. Farmers grow wheat and corn in ............ (an) field.

**7. Write a blog post of about EIGHTY (80) words :**

"Traditional food"

........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................
........................................................................................................

## Sample Test 8

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Maakouda are a very popular ............ .
   a. sea food  b. snack
   c. drink  d. traditional food
2. Maakouda are popular in ............, Algeria and Tunisia.
   a. Oman  b. Egypt  c. Morocco  d. Turkey
3. They make them with ............ .
   a. wheat  b. dates  c. onions  d. potatoes
4. They boil them and make them into ............ balls.
   a. big  b. small  c. hard  d. heavy

### 2. Complete the following dialog :

**Sally is asking Riham about her favorite sport.**

**Sally** : What are you doing, Riham ?

**Riham :** (1) ................................................ .

**Sally** : What is the article about ?

**Riham :** (2) ................................................ .

**Sally** : Great, I like sports. (3) ................................................ ?

**Riham :** My favorite sport is tennis.

**Sally** : (4) ................................................ ?

**Riham :** I started playing it at the age of seven.

**Sally** : How often do you practice it ?

**Riham :** (5) ................................................ .

### 3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

When Nermine's family move to Oxford for her dad's job, she misses her hometown, Alexandria. She decides to use her favorite hobby, geocaching, to explore the city. Geocaching is a special sort of outdoor treasure hunt. Just like a normal treasure hunt, you solve clues to help you find something interesting - the treasure. But in geocaching, the clues come from an app on your phone. When you solve the clues, you get coordinates, which are pairs of numbers. These help you find the treasure

- the geocache, a box with small, interesting things in it. In Alexandria, Nermine loved geocaching with her friends. She's worried that her new classmates might think geocaching is geeky, so she doesn't tell them about it.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the "..........".
   a. class   b. box   c. clue   d. job
2. The best title to the text is "..........".
   a. Famous city   b. festivals
   c. Hard job   d. Unusual hobby
3. The underlined word "geeky" means not ".........." .
   a. simple   b. cool   c. boring   d. scary

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What's Nermine's favorite hobby ?
   ..........
5. Where does Nermine live now ?
   ..........
6. What do you think of geocaching ?
   ..........

## 4. Match the words and phrases to the definitions :

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. flood | a. bad weather, with wind, rain, thunder and lightning. |
| 2. drought | b. when there is too much rain. |
| 3. storms | c. changes in the weather over time. |
| 4. climate change | d. when there is no rain for a long time. |
| | e. where there isn't enough clean, fresh water for everyone. |

## 5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Tell an adult if someone is .......... you and always be kind online.
   a. bullying   b. calling   c. helping   d. teaching
2. A/An .......... is a small electronic machine.
   a. app   b. button   c. tool   d. device

3. My ............ house in Luxor is near to the river.
   a. grandparents  b. grandparent
   c. grandparents's  d. grandparents'
4. Can you ............ the phone, please ?
   a. answers  b. answer  c. answered  d. to answer
5. Don't ............ to connect your headphones.
   a. forgets  b. forgot  c. to forget  d. forget
6. I'm learning ............! I want to be able to help people.
   a. first aid  b. art  c. geocaching  d. math

**6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. This is our cat. ............ **(It)** name is Fluffy.
2. Can you ............ **(feeding)** the dog this evening ?
3. I like to make qatayef ............ **(during)** home.
4. ............ **(When)** are the ingredients ? - Bread, meat and vegetables.

**7. Write a blog post of about EIGHTY (80) words on :**

"An ancient building you visited"

..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................
..........................................................................................................

# Sample Test 9

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

## 1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Most airplanes aren't good for our ............ .
   a. school b. planet c. city d. project
2. Solar-powered airplanes fly using power that comes from ............ .
   a. sea water b. plants c. solar panels d. fossil fuels
3. It is very ............ power.
   a. clean b. cheap c. solid d. liquid
4. The planes can fly around the ............ , day or night.
   a. space b. planets c. time d. world

## 2. Complete the following dialog :

**Nahla is asking Rahma about her visit to a new restaurant.**

**Rahma :** Where did you go yesterday ?

**Nahla :** (1) ............................................................ .

**Rahma :** A new restaurant ! (2) ............................................................ ?

**Nahla :** With my family.

**Rahma :** When did you go to the restaurant ?

**Nahla :** (3) ............................................................ .

**Rahma :** (4) ............................................................ ?

**Nahla :** We ate fish kebabs and salad .

**Rahma :** What did you order for dessert ?

**Nahla :** Cheesecake.

## 3. Read the following , then answer the questions :

It's interesting to make a recipe card. Last week , I had a research task for school. I decided on a country . I picked Australia . I didn't know anything about Australian food so I thought it would be interesting . Once I'd decided on the country . I went on the internet and did a research for **famous** dishes. I looked at a few different websites so that I could check the information . Then, I looked at the questions from the project and

tried to find the answers. The next thing I did was making notes. Then, I selected the information from them that I wanted to include in my project. Finally, I wrote the recipe card.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The underlined word famous is the opposite of ............ .
   a. well-known b. unknown c. popular d. common
2. The recipe was from ............ .
   a. Egypt b. Italy c. Paris d. Australia
3. What does the underlined pronoun them refer to ?
   a. recipes b. notes c. countries d. cards

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

   ..........................................................................................

5. How did the writer get information?

   ..........................................................................................

6. Do you think it is important to check information?

   ..........................................................................................

**4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. He is a ............ , and we help to make food for hungry people at his restaurant.
   a. teacher b. photographer c. chef d. pilot
2. Put these beads onto some ............ and then you get a bracelet!
   a. rock b. string c. net d. ball
3. I'm sending you a photo of me at my ............ birthday party last week.
   a. grandma' b. grandma's c. grandma d. grandmas
4. Is this a photo of ............ wedding, Samir ?
   a. he b. hers c. your d. you
5. ............ you fetch my coat ? It's in the hall.
   a. Are b. Have c. Does d. Will
6. He felt terrible, and very ............ . All his money was gone.
   a. pleased b. embarrassed c. grateful d. cautious

**5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. This is my brother Yehia. ............ **(He)** hair is short and curly.
2. My ............ **(dad)** friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month.
3. I have a journal and I write in ............ **(him)** every night.
4. Why don't ............ **(us)** sell some of our old toys ?

**6. Write an email of about EIGHTY (80) words :**

"To your friend Ashraf about traditional food. Your name is Walid and your email address is walid200@yahoo.com. Your friend's email address is ashrafali@yahoo.com."

| From | |
|---|---|
| To | |
| Subject | |

................................................ ,

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

..........................................................................................

................................................

## Sample Test 10

نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب

**1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. In the ............ , I write a "To do" list.
   a. summer b. mornings c. evenings d. winter
2. I write "To do" list of things I need to ............ .
   a. build b. buy c. do d. solve

3. "To do" list helps me ............ my day.

a. finish b. waste c. write d. organize

4. I spend my free time in a ............ way.

a. useful b. quick c. slow d. boring

**2. Complete the following dialog :**

**Fayruz and Samia are talking about geocaching.**

**Fayruz:** What's your favorite hobby ?

**Samia :** (1) .............................................................. .

**Fayruz:** Geocaching ! (2) .............................................................. ?

**Samia :** It is a special sort of outdoor treasure hunt.

**Fayruz:** It sounds interesting ! (3) .............................................................. ?

**Samia :** To find it, I use an app on my phone that gives me clues and coordinates.

**Fayruz:** Are there a lot of geocaches ?

**Samia :** (4) .............................................................. . There're millions !

**Fayruz:** Do we take the geocaches when we find them ?

**Samia :** (5) .............................................................. . You write your name and put it back.

**3. Read the following, then answer the questions :**

One day, Magdy and Sami had an idea to make a living café. It's an environmentally friendly café. Soon, Magdy and Sami bought an old building near the park. They cleaned it and painted **it** bright colors with environmentally friendly paint. They put in recycled glass windows and used old pieces of wood to make tables and chairs. They also hung lots of plants from the ceiling. On the roof, there was a little garden for growing herbs, fruit and vegetables.

A few weeks later, the Living Café opened. It was **quiet** at first, but then people started to notice it. They liked the way they could help save the planet with their morning coffee! More people came for lunch, and said the food tasted delicious and very fresh. They were excited to hear that some of the ingredients grew in the roof of the café. The Living Café quickly became the most popular café near the park.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Where was the Living Café ?
   a. Near the park b. Near the river
   c. On the beach d. Behind the bank
2. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the " ............ ".
   a. garden b. park c. old building d. food
3. The opposite of the underlined word "quiet" is " ............ " .
   a. near b. noisy c. exciting d. safe

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.
   ..........................................................................................
5. Why did they put a little garden on the roof ?
   ..........................................................................................
6. Why do you think people like the Living Café ?
   ..........................................................................................

**4. Match the words and phrases to the definitions :**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. consume | a. not switched on but still using power. |
| 2. save energy | b. a machine to cool your home. |
| 3. on stand-by | c. a container for plants. |
| 4. air conditioning | d. to use something. |
| | e. not waste electricity or fuel. |

**5. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Long passwords are a good idea as they're hard to ............ .
   a. accept b. hide c. guess d. send
2. Don't ............ friend requests from people you don't know.
   a. destroy b. accept c. skip d. lose
3. There is a shop that has some beautiful clothes in ............ windows.
   a. its b. they c. their d. it

4. Sorry, I ............ answer you at the moment. I'm studying.
   a. could   b. can't   c. can   d. couldn't
5. We all ordered sayadieh el samak as our main ............ .
   a. dessert   b. starter   c. soup   d. course
6. Two months ago, I ............ helping out at a project in my city.
   a. start   b. starts   c. started   d. starting

**6. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. ............ **(A)** Sphinx at Giza is made of sandstone.
2. My family lives on ............ **(an)** farm.
3. Can you ............ **(fed)** the dog this evening ?
4. If you ............ **(wanted)** a good phone, you have to spend a lot of money.

**7. Write a social media post to congratulate someone of about EIGHTY (80) words :**

"Your friend's birthday"

..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................
..................................................................................................................................

# Listening Texts

# نصوص الاستماع

## Sample Test 1

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Yasser is back to school this week after the summer vacation. He often played volleyball with some friends at the park. Last week, they played in a tournament. They didn't win, but they had fun.

## Sample Test 2

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Hawawshi is a type of food. It is bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it. You can bake it in the oven and eat it warm. It is delicious. You can find it in some parts of the Middle East.

## Sample Test 3

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Fareeda is a good friend and a kind person. She works hard at school. She studies all the time and she is very stressed. Her parents want her to do well at school. She wants to make them happy. She doesn't go out at breaktime and she always asks her teacher for extra homework.

## Sample Test 4

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Cyberbullying is a big problem for young people. It's easier for bullies to post horrible messages online as they can hide behind a false name. Cyberbullying can happen any time you are online. Tell an adult if someone is bullying you.

## Sample Test 5

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Last year, Ali watched a documentary about the effects of human activities on the planet. After that he wanted to be more eco-friendly. In the past, he always traveled to school by bus, but now he rides his bike to school. It only takes 15 minutes and it's fun.

## Sample Test 6

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Two months ago, I started helping out at a project in my city. In this project, young people help adults who can't read and write Arabic. My partner was Mrs Azza.

## Sample Test 7

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

The world's oceans are full of plastic which is very bad for life in the ocean. Ocean clean-up projects collect rubbish in the water, then ships take it back to land for recycling.

## Sample Test 8

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Maakouda are a very popular traditional food in Morocco, Algeria and Tunisia. They make them with potatoes. They boil potatoes and make them into small balls.

## Sample Test 9

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

Most airplanes aren't good for our planet. Solar-powered airplanes fly using power that comes from solar panels. It is very clean power. The planes can fly around the world, day or night.

## Sample Test 10

**⊙ Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

In the mornings, I write "To do" list of things I need to do. It really helps me organize my day. I spend my free time in a useful way.

# Hello!
## BEYOND WORDS

EL-MOASSER GUIDE

By a group of supervisors

كراسة المعاصر
للمهارات اللغوية



**MASTER YOUR SKILLS**

English

GPS

1st PREP.

FIRST TERM

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

# Contents

## Part One : Skills

Speaking Skill ........ 4

Reading Skill ........ 16

Writing Skill ........ 26

## Part Two : Dictation

Dictation on Lessons ........ 43

Dictation on Unit ........ 45





PART ONE

# Skills

- Speaking Skill
- Reading Skill
- Writing Skill

# 1 Speaking Skill

## مهارة التحدث



**How to deal with dialog :** كيفية التعامل مع سؤال المحادثة :

يُعتبر سؤال المحادثة من الأسئلة التى تحتاج الكثير من المهارات اللغوية لدى الطالب، فلابد أن يجيد القراءة والفهم والتعبير الكتابي، كما أن إجابة المحادثة تتطلب قدرة الطالب على تخيل الموقف والتفاعل معه.

**ولكى تجيد هذا السؤال عليك بما يلى :**

١. اقرأ المحادثة كلها جيدًا قبل البدء فى الإجابة فالقراءة الكاملة تساعدك على تخيل الموقف الذى تدور حوله المحادثة.

٢. ركز على الشخصين الذين تدور المحادثة بينهما من حيث : النوع - المهنة - الجنسية ... إلخ.

٣. التعرف على كيفية تكوين الجمل والأسئلة.

## 1 How to make a question طريقة تكوين السؤال

### 1 (Yes / No) Questions الأسئلة التى يجاب عليها بـ Yes أو No

"V. to be" (Am - Is - Are - Was - Were) + subject الفاعل .... ?

"V. to have" (Have - Has - Had)
"V. to do" (Do - Does - Did)
Will
Can
.... etc. إلخ
+ subject الفاعل + verb الفعل + .... ?

ويمكن أن يجاب عن هذا النوع من الأسئلة باستخدام الصيغة المختصرة وهى الضمير والفعل المساعد فقط.

**Examples :**

- Do you like apples ?
  Yes, I do. No, I don't.
- Have you ever visited the Pyramids ?
  Yes, I have. No, I haven't.
- Can you speak English ?
  Yes, I can. No, I can't.

**ملحوظة:** يمكن استخدام **"V. to be"** كفعل رئيسى فى السؤال دون أن يتبعه فعل آخر.

**ex.:** - Are you happy about the result نتيجة of the match ?
  Yes, I am. No, I'm not.

## 2 Wh- Questions الأسئلة التى تبدأ بكلمة استفهام

Question word كلمة الاستفهام + "v. to be" / "v. to have" / "v. to do" / will / can / etc. ..... إلخ + subject الفاعل + verb الفعل + ..... ?

### Question words كلمات الاستفهام

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Whose ...? | ملك من...؟ | How many ...? | كم للعدد...؟ |
| When ...? | متى...؟ | How high ...? | كم للارتفاع ...؟ |
| What ...? | ما - ماذا ...؟ | How deep ...? | كم للعمق ...؟ |
| Who ...? | مَن (للفاعل أو المفعول العاقل) ...؟ | How wide ...? | كم للعرض...؟ |
| Whom ...? | مَن (للمفعول العاقل) ...؟ | How far ...? | كم للبعد...؟ |
| Why ...? | لماذا ...؟ | How tall ...? | كم للطول...؟ |
| Where ...? | أين ...؟ | How heavy ...? | كم للوزن...؟ |
| Which ...? | أيهما ...؟ (للتخيير) | How long ...? | كم للمدة/للطول...؟ |
| How ...? | كيف ...؟ | How old ...? | كم للعمر...؟ |
| How much ...? | كم للثمن / للكمية ...؟ | How fast ...? | كم للسرعة...؟ |
| How often ...? | كم مرة ...؟ | Who ... with ...? | مع مَن ...؟ |

**لاحظ الآتى :**

I , we —تحول→ you

my, our —تحول→ your

me, us —تحول→ you

• استخدام (did / does / do) فى السؤال :

do ← إذا كانت الإجابة فى المضارع البسيط بدون (s) .

does ← إذا كانت الإجابة فى المضارع البسيط وينتهى بـ (s) أو (es) أو (ies) .

did ← إذا كانت الإجابة فى الماضى البسيط مع كل الضمائر.

⊙ بعض نماذج للأسئلة :

| Stimulus الموقف / السؤال | Response الرد |
|---|---|
| 1. Do you like music ? | – Yes, I do. – No, I don't. |
| 2. What is your friend's name ? | – His / Her name is ............... . |
| 3. How old is he / she ? | – He / She is ............... years old. |
| 4. Where does he / she live ? | – He / She lives in ............... . |
| 5. What is his / her favorite food ? | – His / Her favorite food is ............... . |
| 6. What are his / her favorite hobbies ? | – His / Her favorite hobbies are ............... . |
| 7. What is your favorite subject ? | – My favorite subject is ............... .<br>– I like ............... . |
| 8. What subjects have we got today ? | – We have got ............... and ............... . |
| 9. Are you good at languages ? | – Yes, I am. / No, I am not. |
| 10. Who is our English teacher this year ? | – It's Mr Sameh. |
| 11. When have we got English ?<br>= When do we have English ? | – It is after the break. |
| 12. What time is the break ? | – It is at half past ten. |

## 2 How to make a simple sentence : كيفية تكوين جملة بسيطة

Subject فاعل + verb فعل + object مفعول.

### 1 Subject الفاعل

◀ الفاعل هو الذى يقوم بالفعل، يمكن أن يكون فاعل الجملة (اسم / ضمير فاعل).

- Ali is a scientist. (اسم)
- He is a scientist. (ضمير)

Subject pronouns ضمائر الفاعل ▶ I – He – She – It – We – You – They

## 2 Verb الفعل

◀ يأتى الفعل غالبًا بعد الفاعل ويحدد زمن الجملة.

- He plays football. [فعل فى زمن المضارع البسيط]
- He played football yesterday. [فعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط]

◀ **لاحظ** أن ظروف التكرار تأتى قبل كل الأفعال ما عدا مع فعل يكون [verb to be] تأتى بعده.

- He usually ate chocolate. [ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل]
- He is always busy. [ظروف التكرار بعد الفعل "be"]

## 3 Object المفعول

◀ هو الذى وقع عليه الفعل، قد يكون اسم [شخص / شىء / مكان] أو ضمير مفعول.

- I helped Adam. [المفعول اسم شخص]
- I helped him. [المفعول ضمير مفعول]

Object pronouns ضمائر المفعول ▶ me – him – her – it – you – us –them

بعد تعلم كيفية تكوين [الأسئلة - الجمل] اتبع الخطوات التالية للتدرب على كيفية التعامل مع سؤال المحادثة.

**1 الخطوة الأولى** يقوم الطالب باختيار الإجابة الصحيحة مما بين الأقواس فى المحادثات التالية.

## 1. Choose the correct options in the dialogs :

**1. A :** What **(did / do)** you do in the last summer vacation ?
**B :** I **(help / helped)** my grandma in her garden.

**2. A :** Is this a photo of **(your / its)** wedding, Samir ?
**B :** Yes, it **(is / was)**.

**3. A :** How do you **(spend / sell)** your free time ?
**B :** **(With / On)** my friends; I also play tennis.

**4. A :** Why don't we **(sell / want)** some of our old toys ?
**B :** I'm not **(sure / true)** about that.

**5. A :** Can you **(speak / tell)** me how to make video call ?
**B :** Sure, it's really easy. **(Switch on / Put down)** your laptop!

**6. A :** How **(often / much)** do you borrow your parents' laptop ?
**B :** I borrow **(it / them)** once a week.

7. **A :** Have you (**chopped / damaged**) those vegetables yet ?
   **B :** No, I (**have / haven't**).

8. **A :** Which (**device / menu**) do you think is the most important ?
   **B :** I (**try / think**) the phone is the most important.

٢ الخطوة الثانية يقوم الطالب بتكملة الفراغ بالكلمة المناسبة فى المحادثات القصيرة التالية

## 2. Complete the following dialogs

9. **A :** Can I borrow .................... phone, please ?
   **B :** I'm sorry, you can't. I'm using it at the moment.

10. **A :** Is this your car ?
    **B :** Yes, it is. .................... color is red.

11. **A :** Do Omar and Ahmed's grandparents live in an apartment ?
    **B :** No. .................... grandparents live in a house.

12. **A :** .................... do you want to eat for lunch ?
    **B :** I want to eat kebab.

13. **A :** Is the new student's name Salma ?
    **B :** No, it isn't. .................... name's Nabila.

14. **A :** Can you help me with my phone please, Sherif ?
    **B :** Sure, no .................... . What's wrong with it ?

15. **A :** I would like to know about the food the family eat.
    **B :** .................... , too.

16. **A :** How .................... do you do sports ?
    **B :** I always do sports.

٣ الخطوة الثالثة يقوم الطالب بالتدرب على حل محادثة كاملة

### 1 Dialogs related to setbook محادثات مرتبطة بكتاب الطالب

## Unit 1

### 1. Complete the dialog using the words in brackets :

**Omar is asking Ali about summer activities.**

**Omar :** What activity did you do last summer ?

**Ali :** (1) ........................................ (I / play) football.

**Omar :** Where (2) .................................... (you / play) it ?

**Ali :** In the football club.

**Omar :** (3) .................................... (you / play) with ?

**Ali :** I played it with my neighbors.

**Omar :** (4) .................................... (When / you / play) it ?

**Ali :** In the morning.

**Omar :** Did you take part in a tournament ?

**Ali :** Yes, (5) .................................... (did / I).

## 2. Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box :

plant – about – helped – write – vacation – volunteered

**Salma is asking Sama about her summer vacation.**

**Salma :** Good morning, Sama. How did you spend your summer vacation ?

**Sama :** Good morning, Salma. I (1) .................................... my grandpa in his garden.

**Salma :** What did you (2) .................................... ?

**Sama :** We planted a lot of flowers. What (3) .................................... you ?

**Salma :** I (4) .................................... to help out at a project in my community.

**Sama :** What did you do in this project ?

**Salma :** We helped adults who can't read and (5) .................................... Arabic.

**Sama :** That's great. Who helped you with this project ?

**Salma :** Mrs Azza. She was very nice.

## Unit 2

## 3. Complete the dialog using the words in brackets :

**Mom is asking kids to help her carry the shopping bags.**

**Nabila :** Hello!

**Mom :** Nabila! It's Mom. I'm downstairs. (1) .................................... (you / will / open) the door, please ?

**Nabila :** Yes, (2) .................................... (course / of). Is it open now ?

**Mom :** Yes, it is, but I have a lot of bags. (3) .................................... (you / carry / them) for me ?

**Nabila :** (4) .................................... (Mom / Sure). I'll come down now.

**Mom** : And (5) .................................. (you / ask) your brother to help, too ?

**Nabila** : Taymoor! Come and help Mom with the shopping bags!

**4. Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box :**

website – photo – sure – safe – condition – table

**Seif suggests grandpa sell some of his old furniture online.**

**Seif** : Why don't you sell some of this old furniture online ?

**Grandpa** : I don't know how. Is it (1) .................................. ?

**Seif** : It's safe as long as you follow a few rules.

**Grandpa** : Can you tell me what they are ?

**Seif** : Yes, I can. First, always use a well-known (2) .................................. to buy or sell something.

**Grandpa** : What about this (3) .................................. ?

**Seif** : Great. Can you give me your phone so I can take a (4) .................................. of it ?

**Grandpa** : Well, this is a large table from the 1970s. It's in good (5) .................................. .

**Seif** : OK. Please, don't share personal information, like your name, date of birth, or bank account details.

**Grandpa** : Got it. Thank you, Seif.

## Unit 3

**5. Complete the dialog using the words in brackets :**

**Dina asks Heba about how she spends her free time.**

**Dina** : How do you spend your free time ?

**Heba** : I (1) .................................. (spend / with) my family.

**Dina** : Where (2) .................................. (you / like / to) go ?

**Heba** : We like to go for walks in nature.

**Dina** : (3) .................................. (there / are / any) lovely places in your city ?

**Heba** : Yes, there are some really lovely parks and gardens in our city.

**Dina** : (4) .................................. (On which / days / you) go to these places ?

**Heba** : Friday and Saturday. My brother and I help in the community.

## 6. Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box :

coordinates – need – Geocaching – treasure – hidden – unsafe

**Salma is asking Sahar about her favorite hobby.**

**Salma :** Hi, Sahar! What is your favorite hobby ?

**Sahar :** Hi, Salma! (1) .................................... .

**Salma :** What is geocaching ?

**Sahar :** It is a special sort of outdoor (2) .................................... hunt.

**Salma :** What do you (3) .................................... to help you find the treasure ?

**Sahar :** I need to solve clues.

**Salma :** Why do you need to solve clues ?

**Sahar :** To get (4) .................................... to find the geocache.

**Salma :** What is the geocache ?

**Sahar :** It is a (5) .................................... box with small, interesting things in it.

## Unit 4

## 7. Complete the dialog using the words in brackets :

**Murad is reading an article about solar-powered airplanes.**

**Hazem :** What are you reading, Murad ?

**Murad :** I (1) .................................... (reading / article).

**Hazem :** What is the article about ?

**Murad :** It is (2) .................................... (solar / airplanes).

**Hazem :** (3) .................................... (How / they) fly ?

**Murad :** They can fly by using power that comes from solar panels.

**Hazem :** Do you think they're better than the airplanes we use today ?

**Murad :** (4) .................................... (Yes / I) do.

**Hazem :** (5) .................................... (Why / think) they are better ?

**Murad :** Because they use very clean power.

**8. Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box :**

Who – tap – directions – app – How – think

**Kamel explains how to use an app to Maged.**

**Kamel :** Hello, Maged. Are you going to Ali's birthday party today ?

**Maged:** No, I don't (1) .................................. so.

**Kamel :** Why ?

**Maged:** I don't know how to get to his house.

**Kamel :** It's easy. You can use maps (2) .................................. .

**Maged:** (3) .................................. can I use it ?

**Kamel :** You (4) .................................. on the app to open it.

**Maged:** What's next ?

**Kamel :** You write where you want to go and ask for (5) .................................. .

**Maged:** Thank you, Kamel.

## Unit 5

**9. Complete the dialog using the words in brackets :**

**Maha is asking Hala about the weather in summer in her country.**

**Maha :** How is the weather in summer ?

**Hala :** (1) .................................. (is / hot).

**Maha :** Are your family members okay ?

**Hala :** No. (2) .................................. (sister / had / heatstroke).

**Maha :** That's too bad. (3) .................................. (What / happen) ?

**Hala :** She played in the sun for one hour.

**Maha :** Did (4) .................................. (see / she / a doctor) ?

**Hala :** Yes. He advised her to stay in bed and drink a lot of water.

**10. Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box :**

stand – talk – resources – switch – electronic – consumes

**Dad gives Fady some advice to save electricity at home.**

**Dad :** Are you using your laptop, Fady ?

**Fady :** No, dad.

**Dad :** Why didn't you (1) .................................. it off ?

**Fady :** I left it on stand-by.

**Dad :** Don't leave it on (2) .................................. - by.

**Fady :** Why ?

**Dad :** This still (3) .................................. a lot of energy.

**Fady :** Do (4) .................................. devices use a lot of electricity ?

**Dad :** Yes, they do. You know making electricity uses a lot of the planet's (5) .................................. .

**Fady :** You're right, dad.

## Unit 6

### 11. Complete the dialog using the words in brackets :

**Jack and Ahmed are talking about traditional food.**

**Jack :** What is your favorite traditional food ?

**Ahmed:** My (1) .................................. (favorite / traditional food) is hawawshi.

**Jack :** (2) .................................. (What / it / is) ?

**Ahmed:** Hawawshi is a type of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside it.

**Jack :** That sounds delicious ! (3) .................................. (How / you / cook) hawawshi ?

**Ahmed:** We bake it in the oven.

**Jack :** Where do you like to eat it ?

**Ahmed:** I like to eat it (4) .................................. (café / Cairo).

**Jack :** Is it healthy ?

**Ahmed:** Yes, (5) .................................. (is / it).

### 12. Read and complete the dialog with the words from the box :

restaurant - name - river - research - scaled - ingredients

**Farah is talking about a research task for school homework.**

**Mom :** What are you doing, Farah ?

**Farah :** A (1) .................... task for school.

**Mom** : That's an interesting picture. What is it ?

**Farah** : It's called Barramundi . It's a (2) ........................ fish from Australia.

**Mom** : Where does the (3) ........................ come from ?

**Farah** : It's from a native Australian language.

**Mom** : What does it mean ?

**Farah** : It means "large - (4) ........................ river fish".

**Mom** : Where can you eat it ?

**Farah** : You can eat it in nearly every (5) ........................ in the country.

## 2 Dialogs related to different topics محادثات مرتبطة بموضوعات مختلفة

**13.** **Complete the following dialogs :**

**Sara is asking Amira about her holiday last year.**

**Sara** : Where did you go on holiday last year ?

**Amira** : (1) ............................................ .

**Sara** : Alexandria ! Where did you stay there ?

**Amira** : (2) ............................................ .

**Sara** : (3) ............................................ ?

**Amira** : I traveled by train.

**Sara** : Did you swim in the sea ?

**Amira** : (4) ............................................ .

**14.** **Riham and Dalia are talking about their schools.**

**Riham** : Good morning. How are you ?

**Dalia** : (1) ............................................ .

**Riham** : (2) ............................................ ?

**Dalia** : Yes, I like my school.

**Riham** : How many subjects have you got every day ?

**Dalia** : (3) ............................................ .

**Riham** : (4) ............................................ ?

**Dalia** : My favorite subject is English.

**Riham** : How do you go to school ?

**Dalia** : (5) .............................. .

## 15. Aser is in a restaurant.

**Waiter** : Hello, what would you like to eat today ?

**Aser** : Hello. (1) ..............................

**Waiter** : A small or a large pizza ?

**Aser** : (2) .............................. I am not very hungry.

**Waiter** : (3) .............................. ?

**Aser** : I'd like to drink water, please.

**Waiter** : Anything else ?

**Aser** : (4) .............................. .

## 16. Soha is asking Rania about her school day.

**Soha** : How do you go to school ?

**Rania** : (1) ..............................

**Soha** : Why do you walk to school ?

**Rania** : (2) ..............................

**Soha** : What's your favorite subject ?

**Rania** : (3) .............................. .

**Soha** : (4) .............................. ?

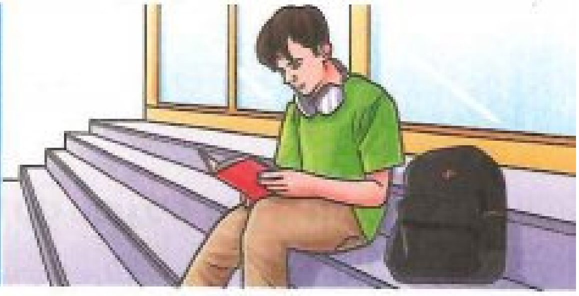
**Rania** : Because I like maps and it tells me a lot about different countries.

**Soha** : (5) .............................. ?

**Rania** : I study geography three times a week.

# 2 Reading Skill

## مهارة القراءة



### How to deal with Reading Comprehension Passages :

### إرشادات عامة للتعامل مع قِطَع الفهم :

١. من المفيد أن تبدأ بقراءة الأسئلة الواردة على قطعة الفهم أولًا لتتكون بداخلك استفسارات تعطيك دافع لقراءة القطعة بتركيز.

٢. قم بقراءة قطعة الفهم بتأنٍّ لتفهم المعنى العام لكن لا تتسرع في تحديد إجابات.

٣. لابد من التوقف عند نهاية كل جملة [.] أو سؤال [?] أو تعجب [!] وذلك لتنظيم وربط ما قرأته من أفكار وليتكون لديك تصور صحيح للمعنى العام يساعدك في تحديد الإجابة الصحيحة.

٤. لا تتوقف عند كل كلمة صعبة وحاول تخمين معناها من السياق العام.

٥. قد تحتاج لقراءة قطعة الفهم مرة أخرى لتحسين فهمك لمحتواها والإلمام بكل التفاصيل.

٦. لابد من قراءة السؤال وفهمه جيدا قبل الإجابة.

٧. راجع إجابات جميع أسئلة القطعة مرة أخرى.

### How to answer questions in a comprehension : : كيفية الإجابة على قطعة الفهم

◀ قطعة الفهم عبارة عن نص، يجيب الطالب على أسئلة تقيس المهارات التالية :

#### 1 Giving the main idea or understanding reference :

إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية أو فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :

**Topic** الموضوع

• The main idea of the passage is ........... .
= The text is mainly about ........... .

- الفكرة الرئيسية لقطعة الفهم / للنص هي .............

= What is the main idea of the passage? = ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية لقطعة الفهم؟

= What is the best title for the passage ? = ما هو أفضل عنوان لقطعة الفهم ؟

= What does the passage talk about ? = عن ماذا تتحدث قطعة الفهم ؟

= Give a suitable title for the passage . = أعط عنوان مناسب لقطعة الفهم.

---

**Reference**

• The underlined word / pronoun refers to ........... .

- الكلمة / الضمير الذى تحته خط يشير إلى ............ .

## 2 Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context

**تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص**

عند قراءة الفقرة يتم التركيز على الجملة التى بها الكلمة والجملة التى قبلها لكى تحدد المعنى المطلوب بدقة.

**وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :**

**Synonym المعنى / المرادف**

- The synonym of the underlined word "..........." is "...........".

- مرادف الكلمة التى تحتها خط "..........." تعنى "...........".

- The underlined word "..........." has the same meaning as ........... .

- الكلمة التى تحتها خط "..........." لها نفس معنى مثل "...........".

- Find a word in the passage which means "...........".

- أوجد فى النص كلمة تعنى "...........".

- What does the underlined word "..........." mean ?

- ماذا تعنى كلمة "..........." التى تحتها خط ؟

---

**Antonym التضاد / العكس**

- The antonym / opposite of the underlined word "..........." is "...........".

- المضاد للكلمة التى تحتها خط "..........." هو "...........".

## 3 Understanding details and extracting information

**فهم التفاصيل واستخراج المعلومات**

عند قراءة الفقرة ركز على التفاصيل الموجودة فى الفقرة.

**وهناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة مرتبطة بذلك :**

Yes / No questions — أسئلة تبدأ بفعل مساعد

Wh- questions — أسئلة تبدأ بكلمات استفهام

---

**- أدوات وتعبيرات استفهامية هامة :**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| How | كيف | To what extent | إلى أى مدى |
| How far | كم بعد / لأى مدى | What | ما / ماذا |
| How high | كم ارتفاع | What size | ما حجم |
| How long | كم طول المدة / المسافة | What time | ما وقت |
| How many | كم عدد | When | متى |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| How many times | كم مرة | Where | أين |
| How much | كم كمية / كم ثمن | Which | أيّ |
| How often | كم مرة | Who | من [فاعل أو مفعول عاقل] |
| How old | كم عمر | Whom | مَن [مفعول عاقل] |
| How tall | كم طول | Whose | لمن / ملك من |
| On / In / At which | في أيّ | Why | لماذا |
| In what way | بأي طريقة | With whom | مع مَن |

## 4 Critical Thinking Skill

مهارة التفكير النقدى

عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع أن تبدى رأيك حسب الفكرة المذكورة.

**عن أسئلة التفكير النقدى المرتبطة بقطع الفهم**

- تعتمد أسئلة التفكير النقدى على الفكرة الرئيسية للنص أو رأى / وجهة نظر القارئ.
- لا تطلب هذه الأسئلة معلومات مباشرة موجودة في النص.
- لابد أن تكون إجابة سؤال التفكير النقدى كما يلى :

١. تدل على فهم الموضوع والسؤال.
٢. منطقية أو عقلانية.
٣. صحيحة من الناحية اللغوية.

- What do you think of / about ........... ? - ماذا تعتقد فى ........... ؟
- Why do you think ........... ? Why / Why not ........... ?
  - لماذا تعتقد ........... ؟ لما / لما لا ........... ؟
- What was the writer's opinion about ........... ? - ما رأى الكاتب عن ........... ؟
- What's your opinion about ........... ? - ما رأيك فى ........... ؟

بعد تعلم كيفية التعامل مع مهارة القراءة اتباع الخطوات الآتية :

1 الخطوة الأولى

## 1 Read and learn

### Read the following, then answer the questions :

Last week, Fatma who was seven years old, went to her father's room to take some books. Fatma's father was happy because he thought that his daughter was **interested in** reading. Fatma took the books and carried them to the garden where there were some fruit trees and beautiful flowers. She put them under an apple tree. Fatma's parents followed her to see what she would do with the books. **They** saw her putting the books on the ground and standing on them. She began picking some apples off the branches above her head. They said to her, "Next time, you'll have to use the ladder to get the apples".

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

**Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** تخمين معنى مفردة لغوية فى النص

1. The underlined phrase "**interested in**" means that Fatma ............... reading.
   a. **likes** b. dislikes c. leaves d. hates

**Understanding reference** فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

2. The underlined pronoun "**They**" refers to ............... .
   a. Fatma's sisters b. Fatma's grandparents
   c. **Fatma's parents** d. Fatma's uncles

**Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

3. Fatma's father advised her to use a ............... .
   a. pencil b. book c. **ladder** d. tree

**B. Answer the following questions :**

**Extracting information** استخراج المعلومات

4. What did Fatma do to get some apples ?
   **- She put the books on the ground and stood on them.**

**Giving the main idea** إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

5. What's the suitable title for the passage ?
   **- Fatma's idea to get the apples.**

**Critical thinking skill** مهارة التفكير النقدي

6. Why do you think Fatma's father was happy at first ?
   **- As he thought that his daughter was interested in reading.**

٢ الخطوة الثانية

**2 Practise by yourself** تدرب بنفسك

**⊙ Read the following text, then answer the questions :**

١ قطع الفهم من كتاب الطالب

### 1. The Ancient Egyptian Temples

A temple is a place where people come together to pray. You can visit amazing temples in Egypt. For example Luxor Temple, Kom Ombo Temple, and Edfu Temple.

The temple of Edfu is an Ancient Egyptian temple in the town of Edfu. The town is on the west bank of the River Nile between Luxor and Aswan. The temple is about 2,250 years old. It is important for understanding life in Ancient Egypt because the writing on its walls gives us very interesting and useful information about language and religion over 2,000 years ago.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The town of Edfu is between Luxor and ............ .
   a. Cairo b. Aswan c. Sohag d. Assuit
2. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to " ............ ".
   a. Luxor Temple b. Kom Ombo Temple
   c. Egypt d. Edfu Temple
3. The underlined word "useful" means " ............ " .
   a. strange b. lazy c. helpful d. usual

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the main idea of the text ?
   ...................................................................................................
5. How old is the Edfu Temple ?
   ...................................................................................................
6. Why do you think the Ancient Egyptians built temples ?
   ...................................................................................................

## 2. An email to a friend

**From** : malak@gmail.com
**To** : tamara@gmail.com
**Subject** : Some family photos

Hi Tamara,

How are you ?

I'm sending you a photo of me at my grandma's birthday party last week. The party was at my grandparents' house and our whole family was **there**. We all had a lot of fun together!

The party showed me that sending messages to your friends and family is **fine**, but it's not as good as spending time with them. You can laugh with them, hug them, and look in their eyes and really listen to them.

Do you have time to meet up with me one afternoon next week ? Maybe on the weekend ? We could go to the shopping mall. There's a shop there that has some beautiful clothes. I could ask my parents for some money for the cinema or to go to a restaurant. My dad's friend Ali opened a new restaurant last month and it looks great. What do you think ?

Write soon and tell me about your family.

Love,

Malak

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. Malak could ask her parents for some money for the ............ .
   a. bike  b. mobile phone  c. camera  d. cinema
2. The underlined word "**fine**" means "............".
   a. clean  b. bad  c. dirty  d. nice
3. The party was at the house of Malak's ............" .
   a. grandparents  b. parents  c. uncle  d. aunt

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

..............................................................................................................

5. What does the underlined word " <u>there</u>" refer to ?

..........................................................................................................

6. When does Malak want to meet up with Tamara ?

..........................................................................................................

### 3. An unusual hobby

When Nermine's family move to Oxford for her dad's job, she misses her hometown, Alexandria. She decides to use her favorite hobby, geocaching, to explore the city. Geocaching is a special sort of outdoor treasure hunt. Just like a normal treasure hunt, you solve clues to help you find something interesting - the treasure. But in geocaching, the clues come from an app on your phone. When you solve the clues, you get coordinates, which are pairs of numbers. These help you find the treasure - the geocache, a box with small, interesting things in <u>it</u>. In Alexandria, Nermine loved geocaching with her friends. She's worried that her new classmates might think geocaching is geeky, so she doesn't tell them about it.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. ............ is a special sort of outdoor treasure hunt.
   a. Painting b. Watching TV c. Geocaching d. Chess
2. You use ............ to find a geocache.
   a. books b. coordinates c. hobbies d. logbooks
3. The underlined pronoun "<u>it</u>" refers to the " ............ ".
   a. job b. clue c. box d. city

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the best title to the text ?

..........................................................................................................

5. What is the hometown of Nermine's family ?

..........................................................................................................

6. Do you think Nermine likes geocaching ? Why ?

..........................................................................................................

## 4. Digital life

Our world has many problems. We need new ways to help us take care of our planet and fix some of the problems it faces. Eco-friendly ATMs are a new invention which will help us save our planet.

We use regular ATMs to take money out or put money into our banks. Eco-friendly ATMs help us recycle old electronic devices. When you put your old device in it, the machine tells you how much money you can have for **it**. You can **keep** the money or give it to a charity !

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The main idea of the text is about "............".
   - a. Money
   - b. Eco-friendly ATMs
   - c. Old devices
   - d. Our planet
2. The opposite of the underlined word " **keep**" is "............".
   - a. put
   - b. save
   - c. spend
   - d. enjoy
3. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the "..........." .
   - a. charity
   - b. money
   - c. ATM
   - d. old device

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What do we use ATMs for ?

   ................................................................................................................................

5. Why do you think Eco-friendly ATMs are good for the environment ?

   ................................................................................................................................

6. What does the Eco-friendly ATM give you for your old device ?

   ................................................................................................................................

٢ قطع فهم عن موضوعات متنوعة للتدريب

## 5. Technology

New technology means that forms of communication are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have developed over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to type messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages.

Now phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are using their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our **facial** expressions before **they** send a message !

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The underlined word "**facial**" means on the ........................ .
   a. brain  b. arm  c. hand  d. face
2. Phones are able to understand people's ........................ now.
   a. shapes  b. forms  c. voices  d. messages
3. The underlined word "**they**" refers to ........................ .
   a. messages  b. phones  c. people  d. scientists

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What is the best title for the passage ?

   ..............................................................................................

5. How did people use to send messages on phone ?

   ..............................................................................................

6. Do you think that phones will know what we think in the future ?

   ..............................................................................................

## 6. Sea animals

Dolphins are very interesting animals. They look like fish, but they aren't fish. Fish can live under water all the time, but dolphins cannot. They can stay underwater for a long time, but they have to come out of the water to breathe air. Fish lay eggs, but dolphins give birth to babies. Dolphins have big mouths, and lots of small sharp teeth. They use their teeth for catching fish to eat. Everyone likes dolphins because they are **clever** and learn to do many things fast. They can jump high in the air. Some dolphins have been taught to pull a boat.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The underlined word "**clever**" means ........................ .
   a. lazy  b. ugly  c. intelligent  d. happy
2. Dolphins can ........................ high in the air.
   a. swim  b. jump  c. throw  d. walk
3. Dolphins look like ........................ .
   a. fish  b. snakes  c. monkey  d. giraffes

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What's the main idea of the passage ?

..............................................................................................................

5. What do dolphins use their sharp teeth for ?

..............................................................................................................

6. Do you like dolphins ? Why ?

..............................................................................................................

## 7. Desert

A desert is a very dry place. It has very little rain. Some deserts are sandy. Some deserts are rocky. Other deserts have mountains. In the desert, it is very hot during the day and very cold at night. Sometimes you can find water underground. It can be very windy in the desert, too. In sandy deserts, the wind blows the sand and makes big shapes like mountains. People often travel in the desert on camels. These animals can drink a lot of water very quickly and **they** don't need to drink for a very long time because they **store** water in their bodies.

**a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to "........................".
   a. shapes  b. camels  c. people  d. mountains
2. The underlined verb "**store**" means "........................".
   a. keep  b. spend  c. buy  d. lose
3. The weather in the desert at night is very ........................ .
   a. rainy  b. windy  c. hot  d. cold

**b. Answer the following questions :**

4. What does the passage talk about ?

..............................................................................................................

5. What are the kinds of deserts ?

..............................................................................................................

6. Do you like to go on a trip to the desert ? Why ?

..............................................................................................................

# 3 Writing Skill

## مهارة الكتابة



## 1 Punctuation

١. علامات الترقيم مهمة فى مهارة الكتابة [كتابة الفقرات الانشائية] لأنها تجعل قراءة النصوص أسهل وأوضح.

### Capital Letters : الحروف الكبيرة

تستخدم مع

1. بداية الجملة...
   - الخبرية → He is tall.
   - الاستفهامية → What is your name?
   - الأمرية → Open your bag.
2. أسماء المدن والبلاد والأماكن المشهورة → Egypt, Cairo, the Egyptian Museum
3. أسماء البحار والانهار → the Red Sea, the River Nile
4. أيام الأسبوع وشهور السنة → Friday, May
5. أسماء الأشخاص → Ahmed, Mona
6. اللغات والجنسيات → English, Arabic, Egyptian
7. الضمير "I" فى أى مكان فى الجملة → I can swim. Can I swim?

## Full stop

توضع النقطة فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

* I am Kareem.
* Open the door, please.

## Question mark

توضع علامة الاستفهام فى نهاية السؤال.

How are you?

## Exclamation mark

تستخدم علامة التعجب فى حالة الترحيب أو التعجب.

Wow!

Hello!

How wonderful!

Help!

What a nice car!

## Apostrophe

١. تستخدم الفاصلة العليا (') فى الاختصارات مثل (is = 's / are = 're / have = 've)

It's a puppet.

٢. تستخدم مع ('s) الملكية.

That is Heba's car.

## Comma

١. تستخدم الفاصلة السفلية ( , ) بعد Yes أو No.

٢. تستخدم للفصل بين مجموعة من الأشياء من نوع واحد.

٣. توضع الفاصلة ( , ) بعد المخاطب فى أول الجملة وقبل المخاطب فى آخر الجملة.

٤. توضع قبل كلمة (please) فى آخر الكلام وبعد (please) أول الكلام.

* Yes, I am.
* No, I am not.
* I met Samya, Heba and Nabila.
* Come here, Noha.
* Noha, come here.
* Please, keep quiet.
* Pass the cake, please.

**1. Learn :** ١. تعلم :

**• Punctuate the following texts :**

When Hana Goda first started playing table tennis at the age of four, her talent for the sport quickly became clear. However, there was a problem. The table was too high for her!

**2. Practice :** ٢. تدريب :

**A Punctuate the following sentences :**

1. the coach asked hatem to join the team

   ..................................................................................................

2. how often does eyad help at his dad s workshop

   ..................................................................................................

3. first always use a well-known website to buy things

   ..................................................................................................

4. where did sama and marwa meet

   ..................................................................................................

5. he s playing with mazen s brother

   ..................................................................................................

**B Punctuate the following texts :**

1. in some countries around the world, not having enough clean water is a big problem In fact almost two thirds of the world s population face water scarcity at some points during the year

2. in this picture my family and I were having lunch at my grandparents house my aunt salwa and her kids were there

3. i feel great when I m helping others My mom s a teacher and i help her teach adults to read and write

## 2 Writing Topics ٢. كتابة فقرات إنشائية

### 1. How to write a paragraph : ١. كيفية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية :

**القواعد العامة لكتابة فقرة إنشائية :**

١. اترك مسافة تعادل خمسة أحرف (تقريبًا اسم) فى السطر الأول فقط من الموضوع.
٢. أن تبدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
٣. أن تضع (.) واضحة فى نهاية كل جملة.
٤. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.

٥. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونّوع بدايات الجمل.
٦. استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
٧. عليك باستخدام الجمل البسيطة وأن يكون لكل جملة معنى واضح.
٨. اجتهد فى تحسين خطك وذلك بترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
٩. استخدم القواعد بالشكل الصحيح.

## 2. How to write an email

٢. كيفية كتابة رسالة بريد إلكترونى :

### A Writing informal emails

كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الودية (غير الرسمية)

- رسالة البريد الإلكترونى (email) هى الصيغة العصرية للخطاب التقليدى (letter).
- يُستخدم البريد الإلكترونى غير الرسمى (informal email) فى المراسلات بين الأقارب والأصدقاء.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المُرسَل إليه (recipient) فى سطر المُرسَل إليه (To-line)
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكترونى فى سطر الموضوع (Subject line) أو (About-line).
- فى بداية موضوع الرسالة، يتم كتابة اسم المُرسَل إليه بعد كلمة (Dear/ Hello/Hi) فى البريد غير الرسمى (informal email) مثل:

Dear Sama, Hello Fatma, Hi Youssef,

يبدأ الخطاب غير الرسمي بأحد تعبيرات التحية مثل:

How are you? كيف حالك؟ I hope you are OK! أتمنى أن تكون على ما يرام!

I am very happy to send you this email! أنا سعيد جدًا لارسال هذا البريد الالكترونى لك!

- يمكن استخدام الاختصارات مثل: (It's , she'd, we've)
- يمكن استخدام ضمائر المتكلم (I / We)
- قبل توقيع المُرسل فى نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

Yours, Talk soon, All the best, Lots of love,

## How to write an informal email

| | |
|---|---|
| From : | عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للراسل |
| To : | عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمرسل إليه |
| Subject : | موضوع الرسالة |

Hi / Hello + اسم المرسل إليه ⟶ Greeting and name :

Introduction المقدمة

main part

الجزء الرئيسى

Please write back soon! ⟶ closing sentence جملة ختامية

Lots of love,

Adam ⟶ signature التوقيع

## B Writing formal emails كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني الودية الرسمية

- يُستخدم البريد الإلكتروني الرسمي (**formal email**) في مجالات العمل والتعليم والمراسلات بين الجهات الرسمية.
- يتم كتابة عنوان المُرسل إليه في سطر المُرسل إليه (**To-line**)
- يتم كتابة عنوان موضوع رسالة البريد الإلكتروني في سطر الموضوع (**Subject line**) أو (**About-line**).
- يتم كتابة اسم المُرسل إليه مسبوقاً باللقب الخاص به مثل (**Mr, Mrs, Ms ...**) بعد كلمة (**Dear**) في البريد الرسمي (**formal email**) مثل :

**Dear Mr Mohammed,**

عند عدم معرفة اسم المُرسل إليه في الخطاب الرسمي، يتم مخاطبته بإحدى الطرق التالية:

**Dear Sir,** **Dear Madam,** **Dear Sir or Madam,**

- الأصل في رسائل البريد الالكتروني أن تكون قصيرة، لكن عند الحاجة إلى الإطالة يتم تقسيم الرسالة إلى فقرات إنشائية مستقلة مثل المقال تماماً.
- غالباً لا يحتوي موضوع رسائل البريد الالكتروني الرسمية على تعبيرات تحية.
- في البريد الرسمي لا تُستخدم الاختصارات والتعبيرات الدارجة.
- في الرسائل الإلكترونية الرسمية، يتم إنهاء موضوع الرسالة بطلب القيام بشيء حسب موضوع الرسالة، وهو ما يُعرف بـ (**Call-to-action**).
- قبل توقيع المُرسل في نهاية الرسالة تُستخدم بعض تعبيرات التحية الختامية مثل:

**Yours sincerely** **Yours faithfully** **Best wishes** **Best regards**

## How to write a formal email

| | |
|---|---|
| From : | عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للراسل |
| To : | عنوان البريد الإلكترونى للمرسل إليه |
| Subject : | موضوع الرسالة |

Dear + Sir or Madam ⟶ Greeting and name :

Introduction المقدمة

main part

الجزء الرئيسى

Please write back soon! ⟶ closing sentence جملة ختامية

Best regards,

Ali Omar ⟶ signature التوقيع

## 3. How to write a biography

٣. كيفية كتابة سيرة ذاتية :

**1.** Introduce the person, giving their names. - قم بتقديم الشخص (ذاكرا اسمه).

- (Name of a person) is ............ .
- He/She was born on + تاريخ الميلاد .
- She/He began ............ .

**2.** Say why they are famous and give details about them.

- اذكر لماذا هم مشهورين واعط تفاصيل عنهم.

- She / He was the first ............ .
- She / He was / is successful because ............ .
- She / He won ............ .

**3.** Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.

- اعط تفاصيل أكثر عن نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام وهامين.

- He / She won ............ .
- He / She is also ............ / Moreover / As well as this , he / she is ............ .

**4.** Say what you think could happen next in their career.

- اذكر ما تعتقد أنه سيحدث لهم فى حياتهم العملية فيما بعد.

- I think he / she will become the most ............ .

## 4. Blog post

## ٤. منشور فى مدونة :

### A blog features سمات المدونة

1. Catchy title
عنوان جذاب للمدونة
→ The title should be exciting and eye-catching.
يجب أن يكون العنوان مشوق وجاذب للعين.

2. Question to get attention
سؤال لجذب الانتباه
→ Ask an interesting question.
أسأل سؤالًا يثير الاهتمام.

3. Introduction مقدمة
→ Provide clear information in your first paragraph.
دعم الفقرة الأولى الخاصة بك بمعلومات واضحة.

4. List of examples
قائمة من الأمثلة
→ Use images and lists to make reading easy.
استخدم صور وقوائم لتجعل القراءة أسهل.

5. Call-to-action
دعوة للقيام بفعل
→ Ask readers to respond.
اطلب من القراء الرد.

## B How to write a blog post كيف تكتب منشور المدونة

1. Write about something you like and enjoy.

اكتب عن شيء تحبه وتستمتع به.

2. Write to your readers as if you are speaking to them. Use contractions (I'm, It's) and words like "awesome" and "cool".

اكتب لقراءك كما لو كنت تتحدث إليهم.
استخدم الاختصارات (I'm, It's) وكلمات مثل (awesome) و (cool).

3. Use exclamation points (!) and emojis 🙂 🙁.

استخدم علامات التعجب [!] ورموز تعبيرية.

4. Give your opinion and invite your readers to give theirs.

اعطِ رأيك ودع قراءك ليعطوا آرائهم.

5. Check that your spelling is correct. تأكد من أن الهجاء صحيح.

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD < > ⋮ X

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

..................................................................................................

## 5. How to write a social media post ٥. كيفية كتابة منشور على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

- Write short phrases - you don't need whole sentences.

اكتب عبارات قصيرة - لا تحتاج إلى جمل كاملة.

- Use emojis and symbols to show how you are feeling, like funny or smiley faces and hearts to show you like something.

استخدم الرموز التعبيرية والرموز التي توضح مشاعرك، مثل وجوه وقلوب مضحكة أو مبتسمة لتظهر إنك تحب شيئًا ما.

- Use exclamation points and question marks for emphasis or to show you are joking.

استخدم علامات تعجب وعلامات استفهام للتأكيد أو لتوضح أنك تمزح.

- **Use these useful expressions.** **استخدم تلك التعبيرات.**
  - Congratulations! مبروك / تهانينا !
  - Well done! أحسنت !
  - I'm so proud of / happy for you! أنا فخور بك / سعيد لأجلك !
  - Have a great day! أتمنى لك يومًا رائعًا !



.....................

1 d •

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

.....................................................................................................

Like    Comment

## 6. Forum post ٦. منشور فى منتدى :

**An online forum** is when you come together with other people online to discuss a topic that you're all interested in.

المنتدى الإلكترونى: عندما تلتقون مع أشخاص آخرين عبر الإنترنت لمناقشة موضوع يحوز على اهتمام الجميع.

- **How to write a forum post** **كيفية كتابة منشور فى منتدى**

1. Start with greetings. ابدأ بالتحية.
2. The forum post should include information about the topic.
   يجب أن يتضمن المنشور معلومات عن الموضوع.
3. Explain why you are writing. اشرح لماذا تكتب (المنشور).
4. Use spelling and punctuation correctly.
   استخدم الهجاء وعلامات الترقيم بطريقة صحيحة.



Like Comment

## 7. How to summarize a story ٧. كيفية تلخيص قصة :

- **To summarize a story, use these notes to help you :**

لتلخيص قصة، استخدم تلك الملاحظات لتساعدك.

### 1. The main idea الفكرة الرئيسية

(هى الفكرة التى تدور عنها الأحداث فى القصة)

### 2. The main events الأحداث الرئيسية

- beginning بداية القصة
- middle منتصف القصة
- end نهاية القصة

### 3. The characters الشخصيات

الشخصيات هى التى تقوم بالأحداث فى القصة ولابد أن تتطور مع تطور الأحداث فى القصة

### 4. Setting المكان والزمان

لابد من تحديد المدى الزمنى والمكان الذى تدور فيه الأحداث.

### 5. Key words and phrases الكلمات والعبارات الأساسية

يقوم الطالب أو الطالبة باستخدام الكلمات والعبارات الأساسية عند تلخيص القصة.

## 3 How to write about certain topics

٣. كيفية كتابة الفقرات الإنشائية

**اتباع الخطوات التالية بساعدك على تكوين فقرة إنشائية :**

١. تكوين حصيلة من المفردات اللغوية. ٢. إتقان تكوين الجمل.

٣. بعد اتباع الخطوات السابقة يمكنك كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية.

### Unit 1

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية | Step 2 Sentences<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل | Step 3 Writing<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| Your summer holiday | **Write the meaning :**<br>مسابقة ..........<br>تعلم ..........<br>انضم - التحق بـ<br>..........<br>رائع ..........<br>مجتمع - مجتمعي<br>..........<br>أنشطة ..........<br>بطولة / مسابقة .......... | **Fill in using vocabulary :**<br>1. I volunteered to help at the .......... garden.<br>2. The summer holiday was .......... .<br>3. I .......... a sports team.<br>4. I .......... how to plant flowers.<br>5. I did a lot of interesting .......... .<br>6. My team took part in a sports .......... and we won. | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>"Your summer holiday"<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>.......... |
| A sports champion | موهبة ..........<br>جائزة ..........<br>قومي - وطني<br>..........<br>لاعب ..........<br>منافسين ..........<br>يحقق - ينجز<br>..........<br>انتصارات .......... | 1. Hana Goda is an Egyptian table tennis .......... .<br>2. She became Egypt's youngest ever .......... champion in 2019.<br>3. Hana is still much younger than many of her .......... .<br>4. When she started playing this sport, her .......... became clear.<br>5. She thinks it's always possible to .......... your dreams.<br>6. She won a top .......... at the ITTF African Cup in 2022. | **Write a biography on :**<br>"A sports champion"<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>.......... |

<table>
<tr><th>Topic</th><th>Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية</th><th>Step 2 Sentences<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل</th><th>Step 3 Writing<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة</th></tr>
<tr><td>A wedding party</td><td>Write the meaning :<br>مصور ..................<br>حفل زفاف ..................<br>ضيوف ..................<br>يتزوج ..................<br>عقد - وثيقة ..................<br>العروس ..................<br>عريس ..................</td><td>Fill in using vocabulary :<br>1. The signing of the marriage .................. took place at 6:00.<br>2. I knew most of the wedding .................. .<br>3. My cousin Ashraf's .................. was yesterday.<br>4. The .................. took amazing photos at the wedding.<br>5. The .................. was wearing a beautiful wedding dress.<br>6. The bride and the .................. cut the wedding cake.</td><td>Write a social media post about :<br>"A wedding party"<br>..................</td></tr>
<tr><td>Birthday celebrations</td><td>مميز - خاص ..................<br>مطعم ..................<br>يضحك ..................<br>هدية ..................<br>حفلة ..................<br>يحتفل ..................<br>فخور ..................</td><td>1. The party was at the new .................. .<br>2. My cousin was surprised when he opened my .................. .<br>3. My brother's birthday .................. was last weekend.<br>4. We had our .................. meal, chicken pizza there.<br>5. We .................. and had a lot of fun.<br>6. I like how we .................. birthdays in my country.</td><td>Write a paragraph on :<br>"Birthday celebrations"<br>..................</td></tr>
</table>

## Unit 3

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية | Step 2 Sentences<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل | Step 3 Writing<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة |
|---|---|---|---|
| How to spend your free time | Write the meaning :<br>الطبيعة ..........<br>ينظم ..........<br>حدائق ..........<br>مهارات ..........<br>وقت الفراغ ..........<br>الإسعافات الأولية ..........<br>طاهى .......... | Fill in using vocabulary :<br>1. It's important to spend your .......... well.<br>2. I like to learn new .......... in my free time.<br>3. I spend my free time in .......... .<br>4. At the moment, I'm learning .......... to help in emergencies.<br>5. I write a "To do" list to .......... my time.<br>6. I like to enjoy .........., lakes and other green spaces. | Write an email on :<br>"How you spend your free time"<br>.......... |
| Geocaching | نصائح ..........<br>هواية ..........<br>سجل ..........<br>صيد ..........<br>برنامج - تطبيق على الهاتف ..........<br>دليل - مفتاح اللغز ..........<br>إضافي .......... | 1. You write your name in a .......... then you put the treasure back.<br>2. Geocaching is a special sort of outdoor treasure .......... .<br>3. The clues come from an .......... on your phone.<br>4. My favorite .......... is geocaching.<br>5. .......... helps you to solve the puzzle.<br>6. The teacher gave us some useful .......... . | Write a paragraph on :<br>"Geocaching"<br>.......... |

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية | Step 2 Sentences<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل | Step 3 Writing<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة |
|---|---|---|---|
| Inventions for a sustainable future | **Write the meaning :**<br>مخلفات ..........<br>اختراعات ..........<br>العلماء ..........<br>إعلانات ..........<br>يعيد تدوير ..........<br>طائرات ..........<br>بطارية .......... | **Fill in using vocabulary :**<br>1. .......... are developing batteries that are better for the environment.<br>2. Eco-friendly ATMs help us .......... old electronic devices.<br>3. Ocean clean-up projects collect .......... in water.<br>4. Our world has many problems, so we need new .......... to help us solve them.<br>5. Solar powered - .......... fly using power from solar panels.<br>6. Some search engines give money from .......... to help plant trees. | **Write a social media post on :**<br>"Inventions for a sustainable future"<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>.......... |
| Staying safe online | ردىء - بغيض ..........<br>يبقى آمنًا ..........<br>يقبل - يوافق على ..........<br>كلمة السر ..........<br>شخصى ..........<br>التنمر عبر الإنترنت ..........<br>شخص بالغ .......... | 1. To do this, choose a strong .......... that is hard to guess.<br>2. Never share your .......... information with anyone.<br>3. When you go online, it's important to be careful to .......... .<br>4. Don't .......... friend requests from people you don't know.<br>5. Don't post anything .......... or false.<br>6. If you have any problem, tell an .......... . | **Write an email on :**<br>"Staying safe online"<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>..........<br>.......... |

## Unit 5

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية | Step 2 Sentences<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل | Step 3 Writing<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة |
|---|---|---|---|
| The effects of climate change | **Write the meaning :**<br>آثار - نتائج ..................<br>يشرب ..................<br>يؤثر على ..................<br>مشكلة ..................<br>يحل (مشكلة) ..................<br>تكنولوجيا .................. | **Fill in using vocabulary :**<br>1. Climate change is a serious .................. we face today.<br>2. Water scarcity .................. our crops.<br>3. Water scarcity is one of the .................. of climate change.<br>4. It's not simple to .................. the problem of water scarcity.<br>5. It means we don't have enough water to .................. . | **Write a blog post on :**<br>"The effects of climate change"<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>.................. |
| How to be eco-friendly | مصادر ..................<br>صديق للبيئة ..................<br>يغلق - يطفيء ..................<br>يوفر ..................<br>كهرباء ..................<br>يعيد تدوير ..................<br>يستهلك .................. | 1. Making electricity uses a lot of the planet's .................. .<br>2. Showers are a great way to .................. water and energy.<br>3. All the electronic devices in our homes use a lot of .................. .<br>4. We can .................. or reuse lots of things in our trash.<br>5. We should save energy to be more .................. .<br>6. To save energy, always .................. your electronic devices when they aren't in use. | **Write an email on :**<br>"How to be eco-friendly"<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>.................. |

| Topic | Step 1 Vocabulary<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية | Step 2 Sentences<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لتكوين الجمل | Step 3 Writing<br>اختبر مدى إتقانك لمهارة الكتابة |
|---|---|---|---|
| The traditional food in Egypt | **Write the meaning :**<br>نوع ..................<br>فرن ..................<br>دافئ ..................<br>يضيف ..................<br>تقليدى ..................<br>الشرق الأوسط ..................<br>مقبلات .................. | **Fill in using vocabulary :**<br>1. Hawawshi is a .................. Egyptian dish.<br>2. It is a .................. of bread with meat, vegetables, and spices inside.<br>3. Some people like to .................. cheese to it, too.<br>4. We can bake it in the .................. .<br>5. It's better to eat it .................. .<br>6. You can find it in some parts of the .................. . | **Write a paragraph on :**<br>"The traditional food in Egypt"<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>.................. |
| Your favorite dessert | فراولة ..................<br>طعم ..................<br>تحلية (الحلو بعد الأكل) ..................<br>غير صحى ..................<br>حار - ساخن ..................<br>محل حلويات ..................<br>طبق رئيسى .................. | 1. My favorite dessert is .................. cheesecake.<br>2. It is my favorite .................. in summer.<br>3. I know it is .................., so I don't eat it often.<br>4. I love eating it in .................. days.<br>5. I usually buy it from a nearby .................. .<br>6. I love the .................. of strawberries in it. | **Write an email on :**<br>"Your favorite dessert"<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>..................<br>.................. |



PART TWO

# Dictation

- Dictation on Lessons
- Dictation on Unit

Unit 1

# 1. Dictation on Lessons

ا. إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete باستخدام الكلمات أكمل الجمل. |
|---|---|
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| موهوب ................ | 1. Many volunteers helped pick up ............... from the street. |
| بطولة/مسابقة رياضية ................ | 2. When I was young, I learned the ............... . |
| يتخيل ................ | 3. We don't have any milk, the bottle is ............... . |
| فارغ ................ | 4. The boys ate the chocolate and threw the chocolate bar ............... in the recycle bin. |
| غُلاف ................ | 5. Many players took part in a ............... . |
| الحروف الأبجدية ................ | 6. Nora is a ............... singer. Everyone likes her voice. |
| القمامة ................ | |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| تمثال ................ | 1. There are many high ............... in my city. |
| كسول ................ | 2. Moms should give their little babies a lot of ............... . |
| مباني ................ | 3. I saw a ............... of an animal. It's made of stone. |
| عناية / رعاية ................ | 4. Omar is very ..............., so everyone in our company likes him. |
| سائحين ................ | 5. ............... students never go to their school on time. |
| مسلة ................ | 6. Many ............... visit historical places in Egypt every year. |
| متعاون ................ | |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| خصم / منافس ................ | 1. A ............... is the person who wins a competition. |
| مندهش ................ | 2. She faced a strong ............... in the karate match. |
| جائزة ................ | 3. He won an ............... in the writing competition. |
| موهبة ................ | 4. After the school concert, the students were ............... . |
| إنجاز ................ | 5. His great ............... was a result of hard work. |
| بطل ................ | |

or

## Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|---|---|
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| مدرب ................ | 1. It's very ............... to work for more than eight hours a day. |
| بركل ................ | 2. The football player could ............... two goals in the match. |
| مُجهِد / مُرهِق ................ | 3. The ............... gave his instructions to the players to play well. |
| يحرز - يسجل هدف ................ | 4. My cousins ............... in a competition for creative projects. |
| يشارك فى ................ | 5. We like spending our summer ............... in Alexandria. |
| إجازة / عطلة ................ | 6. They love to ............... the ball in the park. |
| نشاط ................ | |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| ضفة نهر ................ | 1. My brother solves math problems very quickly. He is very ............... . |
| معبد ................ | 2. The mechanic did a lot of ............... on my car. |
| نشيط ................ | 3. Our town is on the west ............... of the River Nile. |
| ذكى ................ | 4. Yara is very ............... . She always gets up early. |
| إصلاحات ................ | 5. Many tourists like visiting the ............... of Karnak in Luxor. |
| سرداب الموتى ................ | 6. ............... are rooms for burying the dead. |
| ودود ................ | |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| يركز ................ | 1. I always play ............... in the club on the weekends. |
| انتصار ................ | 2. My ............... is to be a famous doctor. |
| تنس الطاولة ................ | 3. I'm trying to ............... on my studies to get good results. |
| نجم صاعد ................ | 4. The driver drives his car at a ............... of 180. |
| سرعة ................ | 5. He could be a ............... because of his sports achievements. |
| حلم ................ | |

# 2. Dictation on Unit 1

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

## 1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .................... | راشد - بالغ | community garden | .................... |
| .................... | أهداف | tunnel | .................... |
| .................... | ملصقات | talented | .................... |
| .................... | يلاحظ | pick up | .................... |
| .................... | مسلة | vacation | .................... |
| .................... | جدران | burying | .................... |
| .................... | دين | smart | .................... |
| .................... | صعوبات | help out | .................... |
| .................... | عصبى - متوتر | come true | .................... |
| .................... | تصنيف / مرتبة | speed | .................... |
| | | rising star | .................... |

## 2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---|---|---|
| .................... | taught | taught |
| write | .................... | written |
| grow | grew | .................... |
| .................... | became | become |
| speak | .................... | spoken |
| win | won | .................... |

## 3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

**ORAL TEST**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. .................... | 5. .................... |
| 2. .................... | 6. .................... |
| 3. .................... | 7. .................... |
| 4. .................... | 8. .................... |

## 4. Read and match.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | catacombs |
| 2 | champion |
| 3 | temple |
| 4 | opponents |
| 5 | focus |
| 6 | achievement |
| 7 | victories |
| 8 | statue |

- ☐ a place where people come together to pray.
- ☐ the person who wins a competition.
- ☐ successes in competitions.
- ☐ the people you play against in a competition.
- ☐ giving special attention to something you do.
- ☐ a thing that someone has done very well.
- ☐ underground tunnels and rooms for burying the dead.
- ☐ a model of a person, animal, or object, sometimes made of stone.

## 5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|---|---|---|---|
| start | .............................. | win | .............................. |
| strange | .............................. | safe | .............................. |
| difficult | .............................. | clear | .............................. |
| interesting | .............................. | active | .............................. |
| ancient | .............................. | useful | .............................. |

## 6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| play ........... | لاعب | clear ........... | بوضوح |
| talent ........... | موهوب | teach ........... | مُعلم |
| lead ........... | قائد | achieve ........... | إنجاز |
| build ........... | مبنى | help ........... | خدوم / متعاون |

Unit **2**

# 1. Dictation on Lessons

## ١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|---|---|
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| حفل زفاف ................ <br> أقارب ................ <br> يضحك ................ <br> عقد - قلادة ................ <br> يرسل ................ <br> عروسة ................ <br> عقد الزواج ................ | 1. The ................ wore a beautiful dress on her wedding day. <br> 2. She ................ all the invitations to all the guests. <br> 3. The bride and the groom signed the ................ before their wedding. <br> 4. My ................ gave me nice presents on my birthday. <br> 5. My brother always makes me ................ . He is very funny. <br> 6. Women like wearing ................ and bracelets. |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| قرية ................ <br> تزلج على الجليد ................ <br> قواعد السلامة ................ <br> عبر الإنترنت ................ <br> أمين / صادق ................ <br> عنوان ................ | 1. There are many ................ we should follow on the road. <br> 2. I couldn't visit her. I don't know her ................ . <br> 3. I don't like ................ shopping. I think it's not safe. <br> 4. It's important to be ................ with your friends. <br> 5. My grandparents moved to live in a ................ in the countryside. |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| موقع إلكتروني ................ <br> تعليق ................ <br> أهداف ................ <br> لاعب ................ <br> الدردشة ................ <br> موضوع - فكرة ................ <br> أهمية ................ | 1. She enjoys ................ online with her friends. <br> 2. He gets a lot of information from different ................ . <br> 3. He received a lot of ................ on his photo on social media. <br> 4. He scored a lot of ................ in the last match. <br> 5. Many people couldn't realize the ................ of water. <br> 6. Water pollution is the ................ of her research. |

or

## Model B

| Write the meaning | | Complete |
|---|---|---|
| | **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| ضيف | ..................... | 1. The ................ was so happy when he saw his bride. |
| مصور | ..................... | 2. There were many ................ at my birthday party. |
| رسالة | ..................... | 3. The ................ takes a lot of photos with the camera. |
| سينما | ..................... | 4. The bride's ................ is amazing. |
| جلابية | ..................... | 5. My friend sent me a ................ to tell me about his birthday. |
| فستان الزفاف | ..................... | 6. We went to the ................ to watch the new movie. |
| عريس | ..................... | |
| | **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| شقة سكنية | ..................... | 1. He rides his ................ to work every day. |
| يبيع | ..................... | 2. My friend lives in a big ................ . |
| شخصى | ..................... | 3. He enjoys flying ................ at the park. |
| أثاث | ..................... | 4. Chairs and tables are types of ................ . |
| طائرات ورقية | ..................... | 5. I want to ................ my mobile phone and buy a new one. |
| دراجة بخارية | ..................... | 6. Never share your ................ information like your address with anyone. |
| تفاصيل | ..................... | |
| | **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| فن التصوير | ..................... | 1. Climbing mountains is a great ................ for many people. |
| قلق | ..................... | 2. The ................ is the art or practice of taking pictures with a camera. |
| رد | ..................... | 3. She feels ................ before a job interview. |
| فخور | ..................... | 4. I was waiting for his ................ after sending him many messages. |
| موسم | ..................... | 5. I'm very ................ of my sister's success. |
| صداقة | ..................... | 6. It is not a good idea to have a ................ with strange people. |
| تحدى | ..................... | |

## 2. Dictation on Unit 2

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

### 1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | |
|---|---|
| ........................ إسورة | meaningful ........................ |
| ........................ رسالة | top student ........................ |
| ........................ موقع إلكترونى | groom ........................ |
| ........................ دراجة بخارية | relatives ........................ |
| ........................ يرسل | goals ........................ |
| ........................ تحدى | sell ........................ |
| ........................ موسم | communication ........................ |
| ........................ عبر الإنترنت | wedding reception |
| ........................ منشور | laugh ........................ |
| ........................ صديق للبيئة | go skiing ........................ |

### 2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---|---|---|
| ........................ | fed | fed |
| send | ........................ | sent |
| sell | sold | ........................ |
| ........................ | bought | bought |
| let | ........................ | let |
| know | knew | ........................ |

### 3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

**ORAL TEST**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. ........................ | 5. ........................ |
| 2. ........................ | 6. ........................ |
| 3. ........................ | 7. ........................ |
| 4. ........................ | 8. ........................ |

## 4. Read and match.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | bride |
| 2 | website |
| 3 | communication |
| 4 | marriage contract |
| 5 | challenge |
| 6 | groom |
| 7 | guests |
| 8 | chatting |
| 9 | wedding dress |

- [ ] is something that is difficult and tests your ability.
- [ ] are the people who come to the wedding.
- [ ] the act of talking or writing to share information with others.
- [ ] is the paper that people who are getting married sign.
- [ ] talking to someone in a friendly way, often online.
- [ ] is a special outfit that a woman wears at her wedding.
- [ ] is a place on the internet where you can find information or do activities.
- [ ] is the man who gets married.
- [ ] is the woman who gets married.

## 5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|---|---|---|---|
| large | ............................ | beautiful | ............................ |
| true | ............................ | strong | ............................ |
| fetch | ............................ | safe | ............................ |
| fantastic | ............................ | happy | ............................ |
| delicious | ............................ | worried | ............................ |
| personal | ............................ | old | ............................ |

## 6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| tradition............... | تقليدى | sign............ | توقيع |
| understand......... | فهم | safe............ | أمان |
| communicat........ | تواصل | ............understanding | سوء فهم |
| amaz.................... | مدهش / رائع | meaning............ | ذو معنى |
| marri.................... | الزواج | photograph............ | فن التصوير |

Unit 3

# 1. Dictation on Lessons

## ١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|---|---|
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| مهارات ................ | 1. This ............... serves delicious dishes. |
| منتظم ................ | 2. The guests in the hotel can relax and swim in the ............... . |
| دفتر يوميات ................ | 3. He wants to be fit so he always takes ............... exercise. |
| مطعم ................ | 4. Last summer vacation, I learned new computer ............... to get a better job. |
| الإسعافات الأولية ................ | 5. Learning ............... helps her save many people in the accident. |
| حمام سباحة ................ | |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| هادى ................ | 1. It's very hot. I want to have fresh ............... . |
| عصير الليمون ................ | 2. Rings, necklaces, and earrings are kinds of ............... . |
| مجوهرات ................ | 3. Our ............... organizes many activities for us to improve our skills and talents. |
| مكونات ................ | 4. Students should be ............... and relaxed before their exams. |
| خيط ................ | 5. My mother used fresh ............... and prepared us delicious dinner. |
| كشك (لبيع السلع) ................ | 6. She used scissors, ............... and paper to make this beautiful kite. |
| مدير مدرسة ................ | |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| مسقط رأس ................ | 1. ............... is an unusual hobby. Not many people know about it. |
| كنز ................ | 2. Cairo is her ............... . She was born there. |
| صدفة / قوقعة ................ | 3. The archaeologists found many ............... in the tombs. |
| نصائح ................ | 4. She found many wonderful ............... on the beach. |
| البحث عن الكنوز ................ | 5. His manager gave him some useful ............... to improve his work. |
| يحسن / يطور ................ | |

or

## Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
| --- | --- |
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| الطبيعة .................... | 1. Her favorite sport is ............... . |
| وصفة طهي .................... | 2. We should ............. our time to achieve our goals. |
| طباخ / طاه .................... | 3. Many students are playing football on the ............... . |
| ينظم .................... | 4. The ............... prepared all ingredients for his recipe. |
| تنس الطاولة .................... | 5. He likes going for walks in ............... and enjoying green spaces. |
| ملعب رياضي .................... | |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| مجهد / متوتر .................... | 1. I like the ............... jam which mom makes for us. |
| صناعة منزلية .................... | 2. She used ............... and string to make beautiful bracelets. |
| بازار .................... | 3. Mona was ............... before her exams. |
| وقت الفسحة / الراحة .................... | 4. He is an ............... in history. He is interested in reading historical books. |
| حبات الخرز .................... | 5. Her ............... is made of gold. |
| سوار / أسورة .................... | 6. Tourists buy souvenirs from ............... . |
| خبير .................... | |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| دليل .................... | 1. I share my books with my ............... at school. |
| زميل دراسة .................... | 2. My favorite ............... is drawing pictures. |
| وقت الغداء .................... | 3. This restaurant is always busy during ............... . |
| سجل .................... | 4. She gave him some ............... to help him solve his problem. |
| هواية .................... | 5. Children at art club ............... a group to share the paintings and drawings. |
| يؤسس .................... | |

# 2. Dictation on Unit 3

# ٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

## 1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| .............................. | مركز تسوق | beads | .............................. |
| .............................. | مساحات خضراء | focus on | .............................. |
| .............................. | أنشطة وقت فراغ | sports field | .............................. |
| .............................. | يوم رياضى | cupcakes | .............................. |
| .............................. | خبير | stressed | .............................. |
| .............................. | إضافى | included | .............................. |
| .............................. | الإحداثيات | geocachers | .............................. |
| .............................. | تحدى | geeky | .............................. |
| .............................. | كابتن (قائد) | logbook | .............................. |
| .............................. | اهتمامات | relaxing | .............................. |

## 2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---|---|---|
| .............................. | wrote | written |
| take | .............................. | taken |
| sell | sold | .............................. |
| .............................. | gave | given |
| find | .............................. | found |
| know | knew | .............................. |

## 3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

**ORAL TEST**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. .............................................. | 5. .............................................. |
| 2. .............................................. | 6. .............................................. |
| 3. .............................................. | 7. .............................................. |
| 4. .............................................. | 8. .............................................. |

PART TWO

## 4. Read and match.

| 1 | coordinates |
|---|---|
| 2 | logbook |
| 3 | geocache |
| 4 | clues |
| 5 | geeky |
| 6 | treasure hunt |

- ☐ a written record of events.
- ☐ pairs of numbers used to find the location of something.
- ☐ a hidden box with small, interesting things in for people to find.
- ☐ a game which you play to find something that has been hidden.
- ☐ not cool, very interested in a particular thing.
- ☐ information that helps you solve a problem or find something.

## 5. Read and complete (synonyms / antonyms).

| Word | Synonym | Word | Antonym |
|---|---|---|---|
| lovely | ............................ | start | ............................ |
| stressed | ............................ | regular | ............................ |
| normal | ............................ | calm | ............................ |
| organize | ............................ | true | ............................ |
| quickly | ............................ | disagree | ............................ |

## 6. Read and complete (prefixes / suffixes).

| Prefix / Suffix | Meaning | Prefix / Suffix | Meaning |
|---|---|---|---|
| ............agree | يرفض / يعارض | relax............ | مريح |
| worri............ | قلق | interest............ | مهتم بـ |

Unit 4

# 1. Dictation on Lessons

## ١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
| --- | --- |
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| اختراع ................ | 1. When I wear my ................, other people can't hear my music. |
| مستدام ................ | 2. Many people use ................ to put money into banks. |
| بطارية ................ | 3. Solar-powered airplanes and EcoATMs are inventions for a ................ future. |
| جمعية خيرية ................ | 4. Modern ................ can have some bad effects on all of us. |
| سماعات الأذن ................ | 5. They volunteer in a ................ that helps sick animals. |
| ألواح الطاقة الشمسية ................ | 6. ................ use the energy from the sun to make electricity. |
| ماكينة صرف نقود ................ | |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| كلمة مرور ................ | 1. You shouldn't post ................ comments on social media. |
| يحمل (تطبيق) ................ | 2. You should create a strong ................ for your account. |
| يبرد ................ | 3. He ................ some apps on his mobile phone. |
| يثبت - يبرهن ................ | 4. We use air conditioning to ................ the room. |
| بكفاءة ................ | 5. His exam results ................ that he is very clever. |
| بذئ / بغيض ................ | 6. The science teacher explains the experiment ................. All the students understand well. |
| التنمر الإلكترونى ................ | |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| الفائز ................ | 1. He is a ................ boy. He does everything carefully. |
| ينقذ ................ | 2. The little boy fell in the water, and the swimmer could ................ him. |
| سترة النجاة ................ | 3. The ................ of the competition got the gold medal. |
| ذات الإصدار المحدود ................ | 4. ................ is one of the swimming equipment. |
| حذر / حريص ................ | |
| محرج / مرتبك ................ | |

or

## Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|---|---|
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| شاشة .................... | 1. I saw an ............... in the magazine. |
| لياقة بدنية .................... | 2. My brother loves posting his pictures on ............... . |
| ينتج .................... | 3. You can download many ............... on your phone. |
| وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي .................... | 4. A camera is a ............... for taking photos. |
| تطبيق .................... | 5. Having healthy foods is important for our ............... . |
| جهاز .................... | 6. The Egyptian factories ............... high-quality clothes from cotton. |
| إعلان .................... | |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| يوافق / يقبل .................... | 1. Use strong passwords to protect your accounts from ............... . |
| يتنمر .................... | 2. Don't ............... friend requests from people you don't know. |
| هدف .................... | 3. You should tell an adult if someone is ............... you. |
| يجمد .................... | 4. The football team's ............... is to win all the matches. |
| قاسي / وقح .................... | 5. When water ..............., it turns into ice. |
| مخترق الإنترنت .................... | 6. Because of his ............... behavior, his friends don't talk to him. |
| يحذف .................... | |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| جوائز .................... | 1. She entered a ............... in singing. |
| يشارك .................... | 2. He won many ............... such as gold and silver medals. |
| مسابقة / منافسة .................... | 3. Many students ............... in the school event. |
| محتال / نصاب .................... | 4. It is a very ............... car. It costs a lot of money. |
| غالي (الثمن) .................... | |
| مدخرات .................... | |

## 2. Dictation on Unit 4

## ٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

### 1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| ............................ | جهاز | nasty | ............................ |
| ............................ | محتال | click | ............................ |
| ............................ | مستدام | efficiently | ............................ |
| ............................ | يثبت / يبرهن | profile | ............................ |
| ............................ | يتحقق / يتصفح | search engine | ............................ |
| ............................ | منصة | awesome | ............................ |
| ............................ | يُبرد | cyberbullying | ............................ |
| ............................ | هدف | ATM | ............................ |
| ............................ | ذات الإصدار المحدود | post | ............................ |
| ............................ | اختراعات | solar panels | ............................ |

### 2. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

**ORAL TEST**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. ............................ | 3. ............................ |
| 2. ............................ | 4. ............................ |

### 3. Read and match.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | hacker |
| 2 | nasty |
| 3 | aim |
| 4 | efficiently |
| 5 | device |
| 6 | embarrassed |
| 7 | prove |
| 8 | cyberbullying |
| 9 | hide behind |

- ☐ treating someone badly either online or through electronic messaging.
- ☐ to show that something is true.
- ☐ to put yourself in a position where you cannot be seen.
- ☐ someone who feels ashamed by something they did.
- ☐ very bad or unkind.
- ☐ a small electronic machine.
- ☐ a person who uses computers to get hold of private information.
- ☐ what you want to achieve when you do something.
- ☐ quickly and with good results.

Unit 5

# 1. Dictation on Lessons

## ١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من [A] or [B] لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|---|---|
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| لحسن الحظ ................ | 1. The heavy rain caused ................ in many parts of the town. |
| فيضان ................ | 2. Because of ................, many people can't find enough water for drinking and washing. |
| أوراق الأشجار ................ | 3. Giraffes can eat the ................ of the tall trees. |
| يحرق ................ | 4. Would you please turn on the ................ ? It's really hot. |
| مكيف هواء ................ | 5. The wildfire ................ all the trees of the forest. |
| ندرة المياه ................ | 6. Playing too much computer games has ................ effects on our children. |
| سلبى ................ | |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| إلكترونى ................ | 1. Sara is interested in different kinds of rocks, so she wants to study ................ . |
| كمبيوتر لوحى ................ | 2. Ali ................ the plastic bottles and made a bird feeder. |
| يستهلك ................ | 3. Yara always does her homework on her ................ . |
| يعيد استخدام ................ | 4. Mobile phones and laptops are ................ devices. |
| حجر الرخام ................ | 5. People ................ a lot of water during their bath. |
| علم طبقات الأرض ................ | |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| كوكب الأرض ................ | 1. The ................ wrote a poem about his country. |
| يقترح ................ | 2. She had a hard ................ because of his parents' death. |
| حياة ................ | 3. ................ is the planet we live on. |
| بشرى ................ | 4. My cousin ................ having lunch in a restaurant. |
| تغييرات ................ | 5. Ali wants to make some ................ in his daily routine to have a healthier life. |
| شاعر ................ | |

or

## Model B

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|---|---|
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| جفاف .................... | 1. Gold is one of the most expensive ................. |
| ضربة شمس .................... | 2. Climate change is one of the most ................ problem. |
| حريق غابات .................... | 3. She walked for too long in the sun so she had ................ . |
| صحة .................... | 4. Some countries have lack of water because of the ................ . |
| مزعج .................... | 5. People in poor countries ................ from serious illnesses. |
| معادن .................... | 6. The ................ destroyed many trees and plants. |
| يعانى .................... | |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| كهرباء .................... | 1. She puts food for birds in the ................ . |
| مصادر .................... | 2. Coal, stone, and metals are ................ we can get from nature. |
| وحدة تغذية الطيور .................... | 3. We have a beautiful ................ for plants in our balcony. |
| أصيص معلق (للنبات) .................... | 4. Most devices need ................ to work. |
| حجر بركانى (بازلت) .................... | 5. ................ and marble are common kinds of rocks. |
| طبقات .................... | |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| صنبور المياه .................... | 1. I watch a ................ about the effects of human activities on the planet. |
| قصيدة .................... | 2. Close the ................ if you're not using the water. |
| مصابيح الإضاءة .................... | 3. My brother ................ to school. |
| يركب الدراجة .................... | 4. We use ................ to make rooms bright. |
| قابل لإعادة التدوير .................... | 5. Plastic bottles are ................ . We can make other things from them. |
| فيلم وثائقى .................... | |

## 2. Dictation on Unit 5

٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

### 1. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---|---|---|
| fight | .................................... | fought |
| pay | paid | .................................... |
| set | .................................... | set |
| .................................... | became | become |
| leave | .................................... | left |
| mean | meant | .................................... |

### 2. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

**ORAL TEST**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. .................................................... | 5. .................................................... |
| 2. .................................................... | 6. .................................................... |
| 3. .................................................... | 7. .................................................... |
| 4. .................................................... | 8. .................................................... |

### 3. Read and match.

| | |
|---|---|
| 1 | save energy |
| 2 | look after |
| 3 | air conditioning |
| 4 | worth |
| 5 | on stand-by |
| 6 | dive |
| 7 | bird feeder |
| 8 | Earth |
| 9 | consume |
| 10 | hanging basket |

- ☐ a machine to cool your home.
- ☐ not switched on but still using power.
- ☐ not waste electricity or fuel.
- ☐ a garden container of food for birds.
- ☐ the value of something.
- ☐ take care of.
- ☐ to use something.
- ☐ a container for plants.
- ☐ jump into water.
- ☐ the planet we live on.

# Unit 6 1. Dictation on Lessons

١. إملاء على دروس الوحدة



يقوم المعلم باختيار نموذج واحد من (A) or (B) لكل طالب لقياس وتقييم استيعابه للمفردات اللغوية.

## Model A

| Write the meaning | Complete |
|---|---|
| **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| فرن ..................<br>مذاق / يتذوق ..................<br>وجبة ..................<br>قائمة طعام ..................<br>نادل / جرسون ..................<br>حواوشي .................. | 1. ............... is a type of bread with meat, vegetables and spices inside it.<br>2. The chef baked delicious cakes in the............... .<br>3. Cakes and chocolate have a sweet............... .<br>4. My favorite ............... is fish with rice.<br>5. The ............... at the restaurant served us the food kindly. |
| **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| بحث ..................<br>مهمة ..................<br>يسكب / يصب ..................<br>مشوى ..................<br>لذيذ .................. | 1. She ............... syrup over qatayef before serving it.<br>2. ............... food is healthier than fried one.<br>3. He is doing some ............... on the importance of water.<br>4. Egypt is famous for its ............... food. |
| **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| سقف ..................<br>سماد عضوى ..................<br>نفايات / فضلات ..................<br>أعشاب ..................<br>حاوية / وعاء ..................<br>فراولة .................. | 1. My favorite dessert is ............... cheesecake.<br>2. They use ............... to grow good crops.<br>3. Spices and ............... give food a better taste.<br>4. The ............... of the room is high.<br>5. Noha put her old toys in a ............... . |

or

## Model B

| Write the meaning | | Complete |
|---|---|---|
| | **Lessons 1 & 2** | |
| زبون | .................... | 1. We add ............... to the food to make it delicious. |
| حلوى / تحلية | .................... | 2. There are many ............... at the restaurant. |
| الطبق الرئيسى | .................... | 3. Every Friday, I go to a ............... to drink coffee. |
| مقبلات | .................... | 4. Chocolate cakes are my favorite ............... . |
| توابل | .................... | 5. I ordered special fish kebabs for the ............... . |
| مقلاه | .................... | 6. We had a salad as a ............... before the main course. |
| مقهى | .................... | |
| | **Lessons 3 & 4** | |
| احتفال | .................... | 1. There are four ............... in the year. |
| مشروع | .................... | 2. We pour ............... over the basbousa to make it sweet. |
| شراب السكر | .................... | 3. My mother ............... eggs for breakfast. |
| فصل / موسم | .................... | 4. Sham El-Nessim is a famous Egyptian ............... . |
| يقلى | .................... | |
| | **Lessons 5 & 6** | |
| أملس / ناعم | .................... | 1. The sea water is very ............... . |
| مقرمش | .................... | 2. The fries were hot and ............... . |
| معاد تدويره | .................... | 3. They use ............... glass to make new bottles. |
| متحمس | .................... | 4. The students were very ............... about the school concert. |
| أنبوب بلاستيكى لشرب السوائل | .................... | 5. We use ............... to drink juice through it. |
| مالح | .................... | |

## 2. Dictation on Unit 6

## ٢. إملاء على الوحدة بالكامل

### 1. Write the meaning of these words.

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| reader | .................... | مالح | .................... |
| dish | .................... | حلوى / تحلية | .................... |
| sweet potatoes | .................... | وجبة خفيفة | .................... |
| river fish | .................... | مميز / خاص | .................... |
| festival | .................... | سماد عضوى | .................... |
| coffee grounds | .................... | توابل | .................... |
| traditional food | .................... | شراب السكر | .................... |
| soft | .................... | طحينة الحمص | .................... |
| sweet | .................... | عملة معدنية | .................... |
| fry | .................... | مكونات / مقادير | .................... |

### 2. Read and complete the conjugation.

| Present | Past | P.P. |
|---|---|---|
| bring | .................... | brought |
| think | thought | .................... |
| .................... | ate | eaten |

### 3. Listen, repeat and write.

يقوم المعلم بقراءة بعض الكلمات من الوحدة ليستمع إليها الطالب ويرددها ثم يكتبها داخل الجدول.

**ORAL TEST**

| | |
|---|---|
| 1. .................... | 3. .................... |
| 2. .................... | 4. .................... |

### 4. Read and match.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | waste | ☐ the leftover part of coffee beans. |
| 2 | compost | ☐ something not wanted or no longer used. |
| 3 | recycled | ☐ a thin paper or plastic tube you drink through. |
| 4 | coffee grounds | ☐ old plant material used to grow new plants. |
| 5 | straw | ☐ used again in a different way. |

# Notes